环球卓越
www.geedu.com

英语周计划系列丛书
ENGLISH WEEKLY PLAN SERIES

大学英语

新六级翻译、写作周计划

大学英语四六级考试命题研究组 ◎ 编著

CET6
WEEKLY
PLAN FOR TRANSLATION
AND WRITING

挑战我的方法，引爆你的潜力！逐周挑战，日渐升级！

新题型
第7版

机械工业出版社
CHINA MACHINE PRESS

英语周计划系列丛书

大学英语新六级翻译、写作周计划

第 7 版

大学英语四六级考试命题研究组　编著

机械工业出版社
CHINA MACHINE PRESS

“英语周计划系列丛书”是针对我国读者的英语学习特点开发的、以“周”为谋篇布局单位、以“日”为具体实施单元的极具特色的英语辅导用书，具有思维创新、规划科学、目标明确、讲练结合、直击实战等特点。《大学英语新六级翻译、写作周计划》是本系列针对 CET6 的一个分册。

自 2013 年 12 月 CET 考试改革后，翻译被提到前所未有的重要程度上来。而英语写作一直以来都是一个让考生头疼的难题，很多考生都觉得写作复习既耗费时间和精力，又不易见成效。编者依据多年阅卷经验和对各档次真题作文的对比分析，为考生提供了一个完整的 CET6 翻译、写作 4 周复习方案，帮助考生把握命题方向，确保在考场上胸有成竹。

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

大学英语新六级翻译、写作周计划 / 大学英语四六级考试命题研究组编著. —7 版. —北京：机械工业出版社，2015. 7

（英语周计划系列丛书）

ISBN 978 - 7 - 111 - 50729 - 1

Ⅰ. ①大… Ⅱ. ①大… Ⅲ. ①大学英语水平–考试翻译–自学参考资料 ②大学英语水平考试– 写作– 自学参考资料 Ⅳ. ①H315

中国版本图书馆 CIP 数据核字（2015）第 144482 号

机械工业出版社（北京市百万庄大街 22 号 邮政编码 100037）

策划编辑：孙铁军 责任编辑：王庆龙

版式设计：张文贵

责任印制：

印刷厂印刷（×××装订）

2015 年 7 月第 7 版 · 第 1 次印刷

148mm × 210mm · 9. 875 印张 · 371 千字

0 001 - 册

标准书号：ISBN 978 - 7 - 111 - 50729 - 1

定价： 元

凡购本书，如有缺页、脱页，由本社发行部调换

电话服务 网络服务

服务咨询热线（010）88361066 机 工 官 网：www. cmpbook. com

读者购书热线（010）68326294 机 工 官 博：weibo. com/cmp1952

（010）88379203 教育服务网：www. cmpedu. com

封面无防伪标均为盗版 金 书 网：www. golden-book. com

丛书序

“英语周计划系列丛书”的大学英语四级和六级两个系列自出版以来，以其科学的时间安排、精练的考点讲解、实用的技巧点拨、充足的针对性练习、细致的名师点评和贴心的版式编排，赢得了广大读者的好评。同时，各种真诚的建议和中肯的意见也纷至沓来。读者提出的建议都非常实用和贴心，让我们真切地体会到了广大读者对本丛书的厚爱，但也加深了心中的那份不安，因为我们深知，我们肩负着广大读者对我们的期望。

我们深知肩上的这份期望的分量，因此结合出版以来使用本书的考生的反馈意见，根据四、六级考试委员会2013年12月的最新考试题型，本着精益求精的宗旨，我们对丛书进行了精心的改版，目的是最大限度地满足读者的使用需求，让读者最终能够自信、从容地走进四、六级考场。

新版四、六级周计划系列主要有以下几个特点：

1. 紧跟变化、更具专业性

自2013年12月考次起，全国大学英语四、六级考试委员会对四、六级考试的试卷结构和测试题型做出了局部调整。编者对样题及近几次的真题进行了全面分析，针对各题型所做的调整，对丛书内容进行了及时的补充和更改，使得考生在短时间内充分了解新题型的特点和考查方式，从容应对一切变化。

2. 例题更新、更具实用性

各分册中的例题均紧跟考试，各题型均删去了陈旧的例题，换之以最新真题，让考生了解最新的试题形式和难度，也能更深入地领会书中所讲的知识和技巧。《大学英语新四级听力周计划》和《大学英语新六级听力周计划》两本书的真题录音部分也更新为最新真题录音，这样，考生不仅能边看讲解边听录音，还能通过最新录制的真题音频感受考场气氛。

3. 讲解更精、更突出重点

针对考生的弱点和考试的重点，本次改版对部分考点进行了更加细致的讲解，并对部分知识的讲解进行了重新编排，听力周计划和阅读周计划由原来的每周6天缩减至每周5天，写作周计划由原来的每周7天缩减至每周6天，讲解更精练，重点更突出。根据新题型的命题规律，听力周计划中短文

听写由单词和句子听写全部更换为单词和词组听写；阅读周计划中我们删去了快速阅读，替换成了长篇阅读，且六级阅读周计划中删去了简答，替换成了词汇理解；写作周计划更改为翻译、写作周计划，加入了新的汉译英题型，进行了全新编排。这样的安排方便考生在有限的时间里更彻底地掌握重点知识和技巧，更高效地备战考试。可以说，考生只要跟着周计划走过3～5周，在阅读中理解，在练习中体会，那么听力、阅读、翻译、写作各个环节的重点和难点自然便可迎刃而解。

4. 练习更强、更具针对性

对于练习材料中比较陈旧的题目和过时的设题进行了替换，按照最新真题的标准重新选材、设题，以期让考生在有限的时间里最大限度地熟悉考试的题型和答题的技巧，时刻和考试动态保持同步。

5. 解析更细、更加标准化

不管是书中的例题还是练习，改版后的解析都更加细致入微。同时，统一了解析模式，使考生使用起来更方便、更容易理解并掌握所学知识和技巧。

6. 录音更全、更便于备考

《大学英语新四级听力周计划》的录音时长达到420分钟，《大学英语新六级听力周计划》的录音时长更是达到了460分钟。超长的听力训练时间，不仅便于考生对讲解的知识点更深入地了解，而且也能让考生在备考中一直保持足够的量的积累，最终产生质的飞跃。

本丛书在出版前已经多个辅导班学生使用，结果证明，考生如按照本丛书的规划认真复习备考，定能有效提高复习效率，取得更加理想的考试成绩！本丛书是一线辅导教师的倾力之作，凝结了我们的大量心血，辅导精华尽现书中，可谓辅导和图书出版的完美结合。编者衷心希望本丛书能让更多考生受益，如是，将深感欣慰！

编　　者

2015年6月于中国人民大学

前　言

一直以来，英语中的翻译和写作都让考生十分头疼，很多考生都觉得复习翻译和写作既耗费时间和精力，又不容易见到成效。很多考生平时也做了不少练习，背了不少词汇和句式，但进入考场之后依旧是苦苦思索，难以下笔，写出来的句子也是错误百出。

翻译、写作失分原因

根据多年的一线教学和阅卷经验以及对学生复习和答题中存在的问题的深入分析，我们发现考生在翻译和写作中主要的失分原因有以下几点：

1. 平时训练不规范

很多同学在平时做翻译和写作训练时，由于没有考试氛围，往往不注意译文或作文的规范性，对自己的答题时间也没有限制，甚至边写边查字典或看答案，训练十分随意，不仅导致训练效果不明显，也使得考生走上考场后不能很快进入答题状态，也很难在规定的时间内进行规范作答。

2. 对英汉语言的差异了解不够

英汉语言有很大的差异，如果不了解这些差异，不管是在翻译中，还是在写作中，都容易出现中式英语的问题，还会出现很多表达不当或错误。比如，汉语多用主动，英语多用被动；汉语是动态语言，善用动词词组，英语是静态语言，善用介词词组和名词词组；汉语习惯用简短句子，英语习惯用复杂句子；汉语注重意合，英语注重形合。这些语言特点我们都要铭记于心，这样才能写出地道的英文句子和文章。

3. 缺乏框架和结构意识

不管是翻译还是写作，都要有框架结构意识。尤其是写作，在下笔之前一定要规划好文章包括几部分，各部分的主要内容是什么，各部分之间是一种什么样的关系，每一部分的详略如何安排。这些都要考虑清楚，否则写出的文章结构混乱，分不清主次，这样就算语言水平再高，也不可能得到高分。

4. 不擅长变换句式

很多同学在翻译和写作时，都只会大量地使用“主谓宾”的简单句式，即使偶尔使用从句，也不太擅长变换句式，只会盯着一两种从句反复用，这样写出的文章会比较死板，也不符合英文表达习惯，肯定无法让阅卷老师给出高分。

5. 对句子结构和句子成分重视不够

很多同学都清楚，句式过于简单或单一，是无法得到高分的，所以他们会有意识地在翻译或写作时使用长难句。但虽然很多同学在表达意思方面没有多大问题，却在使用长句时，经常出现结构和成分错误，这与大家平时在阅读、写作时不关注句子结构、不分析句中各词语充当的成分有很大关系。

我们的对策

我们结合翻译和写作两个题型的特点，针对考生经常遇到的问题和主要的失分原因，精心编写了本书。本书主要具有以下特色：

一、6 周时间，规划科学合理

本书内容安排在 6 周进行，每周学习 6 天，共 36 天。第一至二周针对翻译题型：第一周讲解翻译技巧和高频语法，带学生快速掌握词语、句子翻译的基本技巧，扫清高频语法和常用句式的翻译障碍；第二周预测翻译热点，进行实战演练，把握翻译命题方向。第四到六周针对写作题型：第四至五周，每周攻克一个高分作文要素，从 9 分 – 11 分 – 14 分稳步提升；第六周预测作文热点，帮助考生把握作文命题方向，确保走进考场时胸有成竹。

6 周的时间，每天一项明确的任务，讲透练透，目标明确，安排科学，让考生轻松实现翻译和写作高分梦想。

二、典型自测，进行自我诊断

在进入具体讲解之前，先给出典型的翻译和写作试题供考生自我检测，对答案给出详细的点评分析，并给考生提出合理的复习建议，让考生通过模拟自测，找出自己的弱点，明确努力方向。

三、翻译技巧，涵盖各个层面

第一周星期一至星期三，首先让同学们明确汉译英的基本步骤，然后带领同学们逐一学习词、句各类常用翻译技巧，掌握段落汉译英的高分策略。

四、各类句式，扫清汉译英语法结构障碍

第一周星期四至星期五，教同学们掌握 5 种基本句型的基本结构和基本

成分，了解定语从句、非谓语动词等常见的句式结构和语法规则，确保翻译出符合英语语言习惯的地道句式。

五、从单句翻译到段落翻译，带你将翻译练透练精

第一周每天的讲解都配有汉译英的专题演练，第一周复习结束时还配有8篇翻译练习，检验一周的复习效果。第二周配有40篇热点翻译预测，让考生熟悉热点，体验实战。

六、高频公式，轻松驾驭写作结构

第三周给出六类四级作文的高频结构公式，让考生通过套用公式熟悉各类作文的基本框架结构和行文思路，实现高分作文的第一步。

七、基本功能句，搞定各类作文段落

第四周熟悉四级写作中常见的段落类型，让考生了解各类段落类型的句型叙述，学会撰写各类段落的基本功能句。这样，在考场上无论碰上何种提纲，考生都能做到快速成段、自然过渡。

八、遣词造句，制造写作出彩亮点

第五周学习灵活变换长句短句、主动被动、强调倒装句等各类句式，巧妙运用限定词语、动态动词、抽象名词等亮点词语，谙熟并牢记100个四级写作闪光句式和用词，为考生的作文锦上添花，博得高分。

九、100篇作文，带你将写作练透练精

第三到五周每天的讲解都配有专题作文演练，每天结束时都配有佳作赏析；每周复习结束时都配有8篇作文练习，检验一周的复习效果，让考生学完一个，练透一个，彻底吃透所学的知识。第六周配有30篇预测作文。全书约100篇作文，让考生真正练透、练精。

编　者

目　录

丛书序
前言

第一部分　翻　译

翻译导学 …… 2

一、六级翻译透视 …… 2
二、典型试题自测 …… 3
三、译文及点评 …… 4
四、给考生的复习建议 …… 7

第一周　掌握翻译技巧，扫清语法障碍，确保超10分 …… 8

星期一　翻译基本步骤 …… 8
一、基本步骤 …… 8
二、专题演练 …… 9
星期二　词的翻译技巧 …… 12
一、词义选择 …… 12
二、词语增译 …… 13
三、词语减译 …… 14
四、词性转换 …… 15
五、专题演练 …… 16
星期三　句子翻译技巧 …… 19
一、主干的确定 …… 19
二、顺译或逆译 …… 20
三、合译或分译 …… 21
四、无主句的翻译 …… 22
五、语态的选择 …… 23
六、“使”字句和“让”字句的译法 …… 24

七、专题演练 …… 25
星期四　高频语法扫雷 …… 28
一、5 种基本句型 …… 28
二、名词性从句 …… 29
三、定语从句 …… 31
四、状语从句 …… 33
五、非谓语动词 …… 36
六、时态 …… 39
七、专题演练 …… 41
星期五　高分句式突破 …… 44
一、it 做形式主语或形式宾语 …… 44
二、强调句型 …… 46
三、比较句式 …… 47
四、并列结构 …… 48
五、专题演练 …… 49
星期六　一周复习效果检验 …… 52

第二周　预测翻译热点，进行实战演练 …… 63

一、热点演练 40 篇 …… 63
二、热点演练 40 篇参考答案 …… 80

第二部分　写　作

写作导学 …… 118
一、六级写作透视 …… 118
二、典型试题自测 …… 126
三、范文及点评 …… 127
四、给考生的复习建议 …… 129

第三周　套用高频公式，驾驭三段结构，轻松拿 9 分 …… 130

星期一　说明现象类作文结构 …… 130
一、什么是说明现象类作文 …… 130
二、常见结构公式陈列 …… 130

三、结构公式真题演示 …… 132
四、典型作文操练 …… 133
五、每日佳作赏析 …… 135

星期二　对策方法类作文结构 …… 136
一、什么是对策方法类作文 …… 136
二、常见结构公式陈列 …… 136
三、结构公式真题演示 …… 137
四、典型作文操练 …… 138
五、每日佳作赏析 …… 139

星期三　对比分析类作文结构 …… 140
一、什么是对比分析类作文 …… 140
二、常见结构公式陈列 …… 141
三、结构公式真题演示 …… 142
四、典型作文操练 …… 143
五、每日佳作赏析 …… 144

星期四　道理阐释类作文结构 …… 146
一、什么是道理阐释类作文 …… 146
二、常见结构公式陈列 …… 146
三、结构公式真题演示 …… 147
四、典型作文操练 …… 148
五、每日佳作赏析 …… 150

星期五　应用类作文结构 …… 151
一、常见结构公式陈列 …… 151
二、典型作文操练 …… 161
三、每日佳作赏析 …… 165

星期六　一周复习效果检验 …… 166

第四周　熟悉段落构成，掌握基本功能句，确保 11 分 …… 174

星期一　如何写概述现象段和描写图表段 …… 174
一、段落基本句型构造 …… 174
二、各类功能句常规写法 …… 176
三、典型段落操练 …… 181

四、每日佳作赏析 …… 183

星期二　如何写说明原因段和说明方法段 …… 185
一、段落基本句型构造 …… 185
二、各类功能句常规写法 …… 186
三、典型段落操练 …… 192
四、每日佳作赏析 …… 194

星期三　如何写说明危害段和说明好处段 …… 195
一、段落基本句型构造 …… 195
二、各类功能句常规写法 …… 196
三、典型段落操练 …… 200
四、每日佳作赏析 …… 202

星期四　如何写提出观点段和总结观点段 …… 203
一、段落基本句型构造 …… 203
二、各类功能句常规写法 …… 205
三、典型段落操练 …… 211
四、每日佳作赏析 …… 212

星期五　如何写论证观点段和对比论证段 …… 214
一、段落基本句型构造 …… 214
二、各类功能句常规写法 …… 215
三、典型段落操练 …… 218
四、每日佳作赏析 …… 220

星期六　一周复习效果检验 …… 221

第五周　灵活变换句式，瞄准用词亮点，突破 14 分 …… 230

星期一　把握组句技巧和用词原则 …… 230
一、组句技巧 …… 230
二、用词原则 …… 232
三、典型真题词句点评 …… 233
四、每日佳作赏析 …… 234

星期二　如何合理搭配长短句 …… 236
一、长句的用法 …… 236

二、短句的用法 …… 236
三、长短句变换练习 …… 237
四、每日佳作赏析 …… 238

星期三　如何制造亮点句式 …… 240
一、倒装句和强调句 …… 240
二、含有插入语的句子 …… 240
三、含有平行结构的句子 …… 241
四、含有非谓语动词的句子 …… 242
五、含有谚语格言的句子 …… 242
六、亮点句式改写练习 …… 243
七、每日佳作赏析 …… 245

星期四　如何制造亮点词语 …… 246
一、选用具体的词 …… 246
二、恰当使用限定词 …… 246
三、注意区分近义词 …… 247
四、学会使用动态动词 …… 247
五、学会活用不同的词性 …… 247
六、学会使用介词短语 …… 248
七、亮点词语改写练习 …… 248
八、每日佳作赏析 …… 250

星期五　100 个闪光词语和 100 个闪光句式 …… 252
一、100 个闪光词语 …… 252
二、100 个闪光句式 …… 261
三、每日佳作赏析 …… 269

星期六　一周复习效果检验 …… 271

第六周　预测作文热点，进行实战演练 …… 278
一、热点演练 30 篇 …… 278
二、热点演练参考范文 …… 284

第一部分

翻　译

翻译导学 >>>

一、六级翻译透视

（一）翻译命题方向

自 2013 年 12 月考次起，六级考试中原来的单句汉译英调整为段落汉译英，段落长度为 180 ~ 200 个汉字。翻译部分的分值也由原来的 5% 提升到 15%，考试时间由原来的 5 分钟延长至 30 分钟。

1. 翻译题材

翻译的题材涉及中国的历史、文化、经济、社会发展等。比如，2014 年 12 月六级三套试卷的翻译题材分别是关于“传统国画”“中国教育公平”“北京治理环境污染”；2013 年 12 六级三套试卷的翻译题材分别是关于“丝绸之路”“中国园林”“中秋节”。翻译的汉语原文中经常会给出几个较难单词或短语的英文注释，比如，关于“传统国画”的翻译中给出的注释有：道家（Jaoist）、儒家（Confucian）；关于“中国园林”的翻译中给出的注释有：中国园林（the Chinese garden）、园林景观（landscape）、假山（rockwork）、卷（scroll）。

2. 翻译考查重点

翻译题型由原来的句子翻译变成现在的段落翻译，其考查重点以及要使用的技巧也有所变化。原来的句子翻译主要考查语法现象或是某个短语的用法，而段落翻译并不专注于语法问题的考查，而是更看重翻译的整体流畅性和用词的准确性。比起原来的单句翻译，段落翻译有些类似写作，更加考验考生对语言的整体运用能力，除了对词汇的要求更高外，汉语和英语的逻辑转换、如何选用最合适的词来将抽象的中文意义表达清楚、如何在结构和意义上使前后句子有效地衔接从而形成连贯的篇章，这是对考生的最大挑战。

（二）翻译评分标准

按百分制计算，翻译部分满分 15 分，评分标准共分为五个等级：1 ~ 3 分、4 ~ 6 分、7 ~ 9 分、10 ~ 12 分、13 ~ 15 分。各档次的具体评判标准如下：

13 ~ 15 分——译文准确表达了原文的意思。用词贴切，行文流畅，基本上无语言错误，仅有个别小错。

10 ~ 12 分——译文基本上表达了原文的意思。文字通顺、连贯，无重大语

言错误。

7～9 分——译文勉强表达了原文的意思。用词欠准确，语言错误相当多，其中有些是严重语言错误。

4～6 分——译文仅表达了一小部分原文的意思。用词不准确，有相当多的严重语言错误。

1～3 分——译文支离破碎。除个别词语或句子，绝大部分文字没有表达原文意思。

0 分——未作答，或只有几个孤立的词，或译文与原文毫不相关。

从评分标准来看，翻译考试的要求并不苛刻，只要译文基本表达了原文的意思，文字通顺、连贯，无重大语言错误，就可以得到 10～12 分，表达如果再准确一些，就可以得到更高的分数。所以考生在翻译时不必过于苛求使用难词和复杂句式，尽量选取自己有把握的词语或句式，将原文意思表达清楚即可。当然，如果用词地道准确，句式富于变化，也会给阅卷老师留下好印象，增加得高分的机会。

即使基础不是很好，也不必有畏难情绪。只要加以适当的学习和专项训练，掌握了翻译的基本原则和基本步骤，拿到 10 分以上并不是难事。

二、典型试题自测

自测一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国新年是中国最重要的传统节日，在中国也被称为春节。新年的庆祝活动从除夕开始一直延续到元宵节（the Lantern Festival），即从农历（lunar calendar）最后一个月的最后一天至新年第一个月的第十五天。各地欢度春节的习俗和传统有很大差异，但通常每个家庭都会在除夕夜团聚，一起吃年夜饭。为驱厄运、迎好运，家家户户都会进行大扫除。人们还会在门上粘贴红色的对联（couplets），对联的主题为健康、发财和好运。其他的活动还有放鞭炮、发红包和探亲访友等。

自测二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

闻名于世的丝绸之路是一系列连接东西方的路线。丝绸之路延伸6 000多公里，得名于古代中国的丝绸贸易。丝绸之路上的贸易在中国、南亚、欧洲和中东文明发展中发挥了重要作用。正是通过丝绸之路，中国的造纸、火药、指南针、印刷术等四大发明才被引介到世界各地。同样，中国的丝绸、茶叶和瓷器（porcelain）也传遍全球。物质文化的交流是双向的，欧洲也通过丝绸之路出口各种商品和植物，满足中国市场的需求。

三、译文及点评

自测一

①中国新年是中国最重要的传统节日，在中国也被称为春节。②新年的庆祝活动从除夕开始一直延续到元宵节（the Lantern Festival），即从农历（lunar calendar）最后一个月的最后一天至新年第一个月的第十五天。③各地欢度春节的习俗和传统有很大差异，④但通常每个家庭都会在除夕夜团聚，一起吃年夜饭。⑤为驱厄运、迎好运，家家户户都会进行大扫除。⑥人们还会在门上粘贴红色的对联（couplets），对联的主题为健康、发财和好运。⑦其他的活	①Chinese New Year is the most important traditional Chinese holiday. In China, it is **also known as** the Spring Festival. ②New Year celebrations **run from** Chinese New Year's Eve, **the last day of the last month of the lunar calendar**, **to** the Lantern Festival **on the 15th day of the first month**. ③Customs and traditions **concerning the celebration of the Chinese New Year vary** widely **from place to place**. ④However, **New Year's Eve is usually an occasion** for Chinese families to **gather for** the annual reunion dinner. ⑤It is **also traditional** for every family to thoroughly clean the house **in order to** sweep away ill fortune and to bring in good luck. ⑥**And** doors will **be decorated with** red couplets **with themes of**

动还有放鞭炮、发红包和探亲访友等。	health, wealth and good luck. ⑦ Other activities include **lighting** firecrackers, **giving** money in red envelopes, **and visiting** relatives and friends.

主题：中国传统文化——春节习俗

难点及词汇注释：

句①：尽管本句中前后两个分句由逗号隔开，但为了表达简洁明了，我们将两个分句分译成两个简单句。“被称为”不一定要直译成 be called as，在这里译成 be known as 更符合其要表达的含义。

句②：有些同学一看到“开始”就会想到用 begin 或 start，而此处用 run from… to…表达“从……开始一直延续到……”的含义，既简洁又准确。“农历最后一个月的最后一天”和“新年第一个月的第十五天”分别用来解释“除夕”和“元宵节”的具体时间，故我们按照其各自的关系将其分别译成“除夕”的同位语和“元宵节”的定语，更加符合英文的表达习惯。

句③：表达“各地有很大差异”用惯用短语 vary from place to place；“欢度春节的”译成现在分词短语 concerning the celebration of the Chinese New Year 做后置定语，而很多同学可能会译成定语从句 people celebrate the Chinese New Year，这显然是中式英语，customs and traditions people… Year 是一个错误的表达。

句④：本句对汉语原句进行的意译，考生要学会借鉴。“团聚”和“一起吃年夜饭”并不是并列的两个活动，因此不要用 and 连接。另外注意，“吃年夜饭”的“吃”不需要译出来。

句⑤：“家家户户都会”隐含出这也是一种传统，故我们在英文译文中用 traditional 将其表达出来。我们使用了英文中一个典型的句式“It is + *adj.* + for… to do sth.”来表达本句，因此“为驱厄运、迎好运”作为目的状语被调整到了句末。

句⑥：本句仍然是描述春节期间的习俗，我们通过 And 来体现出前后句子的并列关系。此处的“人们”是范指，所以译文中我们将其省略，直接将该句译成被动句。此处的“粘贴”我们将其意译为 be decorated with “装饰”。“对联的主题为……”我们将其处理成介词短语 with themes of…，而不是译成定语从句，这样就使表达更加简洁地道。

句⑦：“有”不要直译成 have，后面是列举活动，故应该用 include 表达。并列的三项活动都用动名词短语表达。

自测二

①闻名于世的丝绸之路是一系列连接东西方的路线。②丝绸之路延伸 6 000 多公里，得名于古代中国的丝绸贸易。③丝绸之路上的贸易在中国、南亚、欧洲和中东文明发展中发挥了重要作用。④正是通过丝绸之路，中国的造纸、火药、指南针、印刷术等四大发明才被引介到世界各地。⑤同样，中国的丝绸、茶叶和瓷器（porcelain）也传遍全球。⑥物质文化的交流是双向的，欧洲也通过丝绸之路出口各种商品和植物，满足中国市场的需求。	① The **world-renowned Silk Road** is a series of routes **connecting the East and the West**. ②**Extending** more than 6,000 kilometers, the Silk Road **got its name from** the silk trade of ancient China. ③ The trade **which was carried out along this route played an important role** in the civilization development of China, South Asia, Europe and the Middle East. ④**It was** through the Silk Road **that** the four great inventions of ancient China, **namely papermaking, gunpowder, compass and printing**, were introduced to the world. ⑤**Similarly**, Chinese silk, tea and porcelain were spread all over the world. ⑥ **As the exchange of material culture is a two-way process**, various goods and plants were also exported through the Silk Road from Europe to China to **meet the needs of** the Chinese market.

主题：中国传统文化——丝绸之路

难点及词汇注释：

句①："闻名于世"译为 world-renowned；"丝绸之路"类似专有名词，译为"Silk Road"；"连接东西方"为动宾结构，可以将其译为现在分词短语，做后置定语，修饰"路线"。

句②：句中含有两个谓语"延伸"和"得名于"。为了使句子结构更加简洁，可以将"延伸……"译为现在分词短语，在句中做伴随状语。"得名于"可译为 get one's name from 或 be named after。

句③："丝绸之路上的贸易"增译为"The trade which was carried out along this route"，此处使用"this route"以避免多次重复出现"Silk Road"。"发挥了重要作用"译为"play an important/a significant role"，该短语为常考点，考生应重点记忆。

句④："正是……才……"为强调句式，可用 It was… that…表达。"造纸、火药、指南针、印刷术等"处理为插入语"namely papermaking, gunpowder, compass and printing"。

句⑤："同样"译为 similarly。

句⑥：句中包含两个分句，将第一个分句“物质文化的交流是双向的”处理为状语从句“As the exchange of material culture is a two-way process”。“满足……的需要”译为“meet the needs of…”，该短语为常考点，考生应重点记忆。

四、给考生的复习建议

我们相信，同学们在做完了上面的两个典型真题段落翻译并将自己的译文与所给译文进行对比以后，一定已经对自己在翻译方面的弱势有所体会。

从这两段翻译中，我们不难发现翻译的主题经常涉及中国的历史、文化和社会发展，尽管大多数考生对这些话题并不陌生，但却对其中很多对应的英文主题词汇并不熟悉，再加上我们平时很少进行规范的翻译训练，也不了解翻译的基本技巧，因此即使自己的语法功底和词汇都没有问题，也不能很好地将话题内容切换成地道的英文表达。

对此，我们给考生的复习建议是：

1. 掌握翻译的基本技巧。

汉语和英语两种语言在词语和句式的使用上存在很大不同，词性、词语的省略、增补习惯以及句式结构上都会有差别，因此我们在进行翻译训练的同时要注意了解这些不同，掌握汉译英中常用的一些技巧，以使我们的训练更有针对性，更快地提高我们的翻译能力。

2. 学会利用教材。

其实，我们的教材中就有很多涉及历史、文化等方面内容的段落，考生在今后的学习中要多加留意，熟悉相关话题和词汇，并将其译成汉语来理解，以熟悉中英文的切换表达。

3. 平时要有意识地进行段落翻译的训练。

找一些地道的中英文对照材料（比如中、高级翻译教材），对书中涉及中国历史、文化、经济、社会发展等话题的段落进行汉译英训练，然后比对标准译文找出错误和问题，最终提高翻译的准确性，并提升翻译的速度，确保在规定的时间内完成。

第一周

掌握翻译技巧，扫清语法障碍，确保超10分

段落翻译与单个的句子翻译不同，它涉及对词、句、篇三个层面上翻译能力的考查，考查考生对语言的整体运用能力，因此我们对段落翻译的复习也要从词、句、篇三个层面上逐一进行，学会各个层面上的基本翻译技巧，掌握段落翻译的高分策略。

星期一　翻译基本步骤

比起单句翻译，段落翻译有些类似写作，更加考验考生对语言的整体运用能力。因此，在进行段落翻译时，我们应该有一个清晰的做题思路，不能简单地将所给汉语逐句翻译出来了事。

一、基本步骤

汉译英段落翻译通常应该采用如下解题步骤：

第一步：通读所给汉语段落。

汉译英考查的段落意思和结构都比较完整，都会有一个明确的主题和中心，下笔翻译之前，要首先通读该段落，明确段落的中心，熟悉各句的内容，并确定整个段落的基本时态。

第二步：逐句进行分析翻译。

翻译每句之前要判断该句是简单句还是复杂句，考虑该句与前后句子在意思和结构上的衔接，是否需要分译或合译。分析句子结构，划分句子成分以及分析各成分之间的关系，选取恰当的词语表达。

第三步：将译文与汉语原文进行对照检查。

将翻译出的段落与汉语段落逐句进行对照检查，确保译文与汉语在意思和时态上相符，并检查是否有漏译或多译，是否有词语使用不当。

第四步：再次通读译文，确保译文的完整连贯。

最后再次通读译文，确保译文是一个完整连贯的段落，而不是对汉语句子的生硬翻译。

二、专题演练

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

练习一

在中国，很多女性都喜欢穿旗袍（cheongsam）。结婚的时候，新娘不仅要定做一件中式旗袍作为结婚礼服，还要穿着漂亮的旗袍拍一套婚纱照，作为永久的纪念。在中国漫长的服装文化历史中，唯有旗袍跨越了国界，走进了国际时装市场，成为代表中国传统文化的时尚服装，并受到了很多外国女性的喜爱。如今，不论是在各大电影节上还是在世界模特大赛上，旗袍已经成为一种中国服饰的代名词。

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

风筝是中国人在 2 000 多年前发明的。大约在公元 12 世纪，中国风筝传到了西方，经过多年的发展，东、西方风筝文化逐渐形成。在这个过程中，传统文化和风筝工艺相结合，最终形成独特的风筝文化。历史上，风筝的用途有几次转变。据历史记载，风筝首先是被用在军队。在唐代中期，社会安定和平，风筝的使用逐渐从军事转到娱乐。随着造纸术的创新，风筝的原材料也由原来的丝绸变成了纸张。风筝的种类和形式越来越丰富，深受百姓们的喜爱。

参考答案

练习一

①在中国，很多女性都喜欢穿旗袍（cheongsam）。②结婚的时候，新娘不仅要定做一件中式旗袍作为结婚礼服，还要穿着漂亮的旗袍拍一套婚纱照，作为永久的纪念。③在中国漫长的服装文化历史中，唯有旗袍跨越了国界，走进了国际时装市场，成为代表中国传统文化的时尚服装，并受到了很多外国女性的喜爱。④如今，不论是在各大电影节上还是在世界模特大赛上，旗袍已经成为一种中国服饰的代名词。	① In China, many females are fond of wearing a cheongsam. ②When getting married, a bride not only places an order for a Chinese style cheongsam as her wedding gown, but also takes wedding photos in her beautiful cheongsam, providing long lasting memories. ③ Throughout the long history of Chinese clothing culture, only the cheongsam has gone beyond national borders and entered the international fashion arena. ④It has become the fashion style representing Chinese traditional culture and has become popular with many foreign ladies. ⑤ Today, the cheongsam has become synonymous with Chinese fashion, whether it be film festivals or global model contests.

主题：中国传统文化——旗袍

难点及词汇注释：

句①“喜欢……”可译为“be fond of…”。

句②“不仅……还要……”连接并列的成分，可译为“not only… but also…”。“作为永久的纪念”做“拍一套婚纱照”的伴随状语，可译为现在分词短语“providing long lasting memories”。

句③ 句子较长，为了避免译成英语时句子结构凌乱，可以“成为代表……”为界，将其分译为两个独立的句子。“超越国界”可译为“go beyond national borders”。“代表中国传统文化”可译为现在分词短语“representing Chinese traditional culture”，修饰“时尚服装”。

句④“……的代名词”可译为“be synonymous with…”。

练习二

①风筝是中国人在 2 000 多年前发明的。②大约在公元 12 世纪，中国风筝传到了西方，经过多年的发展，东、西方风筝文化逐渐形成。③在这个过程中，传统文化和风筝工艺相结合，最终形成独特的风筝文化。④历史上，风筝的用途有几次转变。⑤据历史记载，风筝首先是被用在军队。⑥在唐代中期，社会安定和平，风筝的使用逐渐从军事转到娱乐。⑦随着造纸术的创新，风筝的原材料也由原来的丝绸变成了纸张。⑧风筝的种类和形式越来越丰富，深受百姓们的喜爱。	① Kites were invented by the Chinese people over 2,000 years ago. ②About in the 12th century, Chinese kite was spread to the West and the oriental and Western kite culture was gradually formed after years of development. ③In this process, the traditional culture was integrated with the kite craft, and finally the kite culture was formed with unique characteristics. ④ Uses of kite have been changed several times in history. ⑤According to historical record, kite was first used in military. ⑥ In the mid Tang Dynasty when the society was stable and peaceful, the use of kites was gradually changed from military to entertainment. ⑦ With the innovation of papermaking, the raw material of kite changed from silk to paper. ⑧Kite became popular among civilians with a richer variety of forms.

主题：中国传统文化——风筝

难点及词汇注释：

句②“东方的”可译为“oriental”。

句③“独特的风筝文化”可译为“the kite culture with unique characteristics”。

句⑥“社会安定和平”为修饰“唐代中期”的定语，可译为 when 引导的定语从句。

句⑦“造纸术”可译为“papermaking”。

句⑧“风筝……深受百姓们的喜爱”为句子主干成分，“种类和形式越来越丰富”可译为伴随状语 with…。

星期二　词的翻译技巧

一、词义选择

正确的选词是保证译文质量的重要环节。英语和汉语中都存在大量的一词多义现象，在不同的语境下词语所表达的含义也会不同，所以我们在翻译时要根据上下文确定词语的确切含义，再来选择合适的英语译文。具体来说，有以下几点要注意：

1. 小心字面意思的陷阱，要结合语境分析汉语所表达的确切含义。

例 1：汉语：发展是**硬**道理。

译文：Development is the **primary** principle.

分析：汉语中的“硬”字一般对应英文中的 hard，但这里的“硬”并非与“软”相反，而是具有“最基本的，最重要的”之意，因此用 primary“主要的，基本的”或 absolute“绝对的”都可以体现出“发展的重要性”这一含义。

例 2：汉语：生产生活条件**明显**改善。

译文：Production and living conditions have **remarkably** improved.

分析：汉语中“明显”一词一般对应英文中的 obviously，但该词强调的是“清楚，显而易见”之意，而本句中的“明显”是强调改善的程度，故选用 remarkably 或 markedly 更加恰当。

2. 注意词语的修饰和搭配关系。

例 1：汉语：国企和外企的**差距**正在**缩小**。

译文：The **gap** between the state-owned enterprises and the foreign-funded enterprises is **narrowing**.

分析：此处的“差距”强调的是距离，而非“不同”，故选用 gap，而不是 difference。而 gap 的加大或缩小要符合英文的搭配习惯，不能用 bigger 或 smaller，而要用 widening 或 narrowing。

例 2：汉语：新兴产业所占比重还不大。

译文：The **proportion** of emerging industries is **low**.

分析：表示“占有的比重”一般用 proportion，而 proportion 的“大小”在英文中应该用 high 或 low 来表达，而不用 big 或 small。

3. 注意词语的语体色彩和感情色彩。

例 1：汉语：赌博在中国是被**禁止**的。

译文：Gambling is **prohibited** in China.

分析：我们经常可以看到表示“禁止”字样的一些标语，比如 no smoking“禁止吸烟”，no parking“禁止停车”，但这是一种非正式的语体，在正式的翻译中不能随意使用，故此处的“禁止赌博”不能译为 no gambling，而应该用 prohibit“禁止”一词来表达。

例 2：汉语：黄金荣是旧社会上海**有名的**大流氓。

译文：Huang Jinrong was a **notorious** rogue in Shanghai in the old times.

分析：表示“有名的”我们可以用 famous，well-known，notable，renowned，但这几个词都更倾向于表示褒义，尤其是 notable 和 renowned，而此处明显是表示贬义，故用表示贬义的 notorious“臭名昭著的”表达最为合适。

二、词语增译

增译法是汉译英中十分常用的一种翻译技巧，它是指在将汉语原文中省略或缺少的表示语法结构的词语增补上，从而使英文译文结构完整，表达准确。

1. 结构增补

汉语注重“意合”，有很多省略，比如无主句。而英语注重“形合”，必须具备完整的主谓结构，且出现两个及以上的主谓结构时必须使用连词。因此，在汉译英的过程中，我们经常需要进行结构上的词语增补。此外，冠词、代词、介词在汉语中经常省略，在英语中我们必须把它们增译出来，才能确保结构的完整性。

例 1：汉语：货收到后应立即付款。

译文：**You** are supposed to pay right after the goods are received.

分析：所给汉语是一个无主句，翻译时增补出主语 You，明确了动作的实施者，确保英文句子结构完整。

例 2：汉语：剪纸最常用的颜色是红色，象征健康和兴旺。

译文：The color most frequently used in paper cutting is red，**which** symbolizes health and prosperity.

分析：“象征健康和兴旺”的逻辑主语是“红色”，故翻译时应该将主语增译出来；但前面已经是一个完整的句子，逗号后面就应该译成从句，用 which 引导，代替 red 在从句中做主语。

2. 语义增补

有时候我们将汉语原文正常译出后，句子意思的表达还不够清晰或完整，这时我们就要进行适当的词语增补。需要注意的是，增补的内容必须是原文中本身有的，只是没有明确表达出来，切不可无中生有，随意增补。

例 1：汉语：中国有 13 亿人口，占全球的五分之一。

译文：China has a population of 1.3 billion, accounting for one-fifth of the **population** of the world.

分析：后半句“占全球的五分之一”的完整意思是“占全球人口的五分之一”，如果按照汉语对应译成 accounting for one-fifth of the world 则会导致表达不合逻辑，因此需增译出 population。

例 2：汉语：要提倡顾全大局。

译文：**We** should advocate the **spirit** of taking the whole situation into consideration.

分析：汉语中所说的“顾全大局”是一种要提倡的“精神”，在英文中要将其增译出来，即译成 the spirit of taking… consideration 才能够和 advocate 构成合理的搭配关系，才能够构成准确的表达。

三、词语减译

减译法与增译法相反，是指将原文中某些词语略去不译，从而使译文更加简洁、流畅，更符合英文表达习惯。减译时要注意不能影响原文的意思表达。

1. 略去汉语中意义或形式重复的词语

汉语中为了表达明确、生动，经常采用排比或重复等手段，而英语讲究简练、紧凑，经常采用省略或替代的方式来处理重复信息。

例 1：汉语：在饮食方面，中国各省的习惯**不一样**，口味也**不一样**。

译文：Eating habits and tastes **differ** from province to province in China.

分析：“不一样”在原文中出现两次，为了符合英语表达简洁的习惯，我们将“口味”和“习惯”放到一起充当主语，省略了一个“不一样”。

例 2：汉语：有机食品的**发展壮大**给农民、食品生产者和消费者带来了很多好处。

译文：The **growth** in the organic food sector has brought many benefits to farmers, food producers and consumers.

分析：原文中“发展”“壮大”两个词语意思相同，故只译成 growth 一词即可。

2. 略去汉语中表示范畴的词语

汉语中有一些表示范畴的词语，比如工作、情况、现象、水平、局面、态度等，当这些词语前面有了明确内容的时候它们就不表示具体意义，而只是对前面内容所属范畴的说明，译成英文的时候通常可以将这类范畴词省略不译。

例 1：汉语：中国政府历来重视**环境保护工作**。

译 文：The Chinese government has always attached great importance to **environmental protection**.

分析："工作"在这里是起到说明范畴的作用，不具有实际意义，故不需要译出。

例 2：汉语：无论一个人的地位有多高，他都不应该用**傲慢、粗鲁的态度**去对待他人。

译文：No matter how high his position is, one should not treat others **arrogantly and rudely**.

分析："傲慢""粗鲁"本身就表示态度，译成英文时如果把"态度"一词也对应译出来，不符合英文的表达习惯。

四、词性转换

汉语和英语在词性使用上存在较大差别，汉语中动词使用较多，而英语中名词、介词、形容词使用频率都比动词要高。另外，二者有关词性使用的语法规则也不尽相同，因此在汉译英时要进行适当的词性转换，以使译文更符合英语的表达习惯。

1. 动词的词性转换

在汉译英中，动词的词性转换最为频繁，最常见的是转换成名词、形容词、介词短语。

例 1：汉语：孩子们**看**电视过多会大大地**损坏**视力。

译文：Too much **exposure** to TV programs will do great **harm** to the eyesight of children.

分析：汉语中的动词"看"转换成英语中的名词 exposure"暴露"，汉语中的动词"伤害"转换成了英语中的名词 harm。

例 2：汉语：通常每个家庭都会在除夕夜团聚，一起**吃**年夜饭。

译文：New Year's Eve is usually an occasion for Chinese families to gather **for** the annual reunion dinner.

分析：汉语中的动词短语"吃年夜饭"转换成了英语中的介词短语 for the

annual reunion dinner。

2. 其他词性的转换

除了动词的词性转换，汉语中的名词转换成动词、形容词转换成名词或动词等现象在汉译英中也时有发生。

例 1：汉语：由于我们**实行**了改革开放政策，我国的综合国力有了明显的**增强**。

译文：Thanks to the **introduction** of our reform and opening policy, our comprehensive national strength has greatly **improved**.

分析：汉语中的动词“实行”转换成了英语中的名词 introduction，汉语中的名词“增强”转换成了英语中的动词 improved。

例 2：汉语：在中国人的文化中，酒和茶是**不可缺少的**。

译文：Liquid and tea are **necessities** in the life of Chinese people.

分析：汉语中的形容词“不可缺少的”转换成英语中的名词 necessities。

五、专题演练

1. **汉语**：人们庆祝清明节大约始于东周时代，距今已有两千五百多年的历史。

   译文：_____

2. **汉语**：凡是使用过筷子的外国人，都因其使用方便、物美价廉而赞叹不绝。

   译文：_____

3. **汉语**：孟子（Mencius）的母亲曾经三度迁居，只为了帮助她的孩子找到一个合适的成长环境。

   译文：_____

4. **汉语**：北京烤鸭是北京的招牌菜，它的独到之处在于不仅味道鲜美，而且含有丰富的营养价值。

   译文：_____

5. **汉语**：中国的四大发明，在人类科学文化史上留下了光辉灿烂的一页，推动了人类历史的前进。

   译文：_____

6. **汉语**：四千多年前，中国人就开始有饮茶的习惯了。

   译文：_____

7. **汉语**：几千年来，端午节的特色在于吃粽子（glutinous dumplings）和赛龙舟，尤其是在一些河湖密布的南方省份。

   译文：_____

8. **汉语**：近代以来，亚洲经历了曲折和艰难的发展历程。
   译文：_____
9. **汉语**：今天，人们所看到的亚洲发展成就，是勤劳智慧的亚洲人民不屈不挠、锲而不舍奋斗的结果。
   译文：_____
10. **汉语**：戒烟贵在坚持，坚持下去就是收获。
   译文：_____
11. **汉语**：中国的崛起，让这些人充分认识到孩子掌握双语的好处。
   译文：_____
12. **汉语**：随着中国逐渐崛起成为政治的经济强国，海外人士学习汉语的现象与日俱增。
   译文：_____
13. **汉语**：一个民族的优秀文化遗产，不仅仅属于一个民族，它会逐渐传播到世界而成为人类的共同财富。
   译文：_____
14. **汉语**：自从改革开放以来，中国发生了巨大的变化。
   译文：_____
15. **汉语**：在参加宴会、出席音乐会、观看乒乓球表演之后，他还得起草报告。
   译文：_____

参考答案

1. **译文**：The celebration for the Qingming Festival can be traced back to the Eastern Zhou Dynasty, with a history of over 2,500 years.
   分析：原文中的动词“庆祝”转换成了译文中的名词 celebration；“人们”是泛指，不需要译出；“距今”的含义已经包含在“历史”当中，也不需要译出。
2. **译文**：Those foreigners who have ever used chopsticks marvel at their convenience, excellent quality and reasonable price.
   分析：汉语中的“动词＋副词”短语“使用方便”和“名词＋形容词”短语“物美”和“价廉”都转译成了英文中的“形容词＋名词”短语。
3. **译文**：Mencius' mother moved home three times only to find an environment that she felt suitable for the child's upbringing.
   分析：这里的“合适”是孟母认为的合适，故我们增译出 she felt，使译文表达更加准确。
4. **译文**：As a specialty of Beijing cuisine, Beijing roast duck is unique in not only its delicious taste but also its rich nutritional value.

分析：原文中的名词短语“独到之处”转换成了形容词 unique；主谓结构“味道鲜美”和动宾结构“含有丰富的营养价值”都转换成了“形容词＋名词”短语，二者通过 not only… but also 连接成并列结构。

5. **译文**：The Four Great Inventions of ancient China are brilliant in human science and culture history and promote the progress of human history.

   分析：“留下光辉灿烂的一页”直接减译成一个形容词 brilliant 即可。

6. **译文**：Ancient Chinese people formed a habit of drinking tea early in about 4,000 years ago.

   分析：“中国人”前面增译出 ancient“古代的”，表达更加明确；“就”字强调时间的“早”，故我们增译出 early；“开始”已经包含在译文当中，不需要再对应译出，故省去不译。

7. **译文**：For thousands of years, the Duanwu Festival has been marked by glutinous dumplings and dragon boat races, especially in the southern provinces where there are many rivers and lakes.

   分析：原文中的名词“特色”转译成动词 mark 的被动结构 be marked by；动词短语“吃粽子”和“赛龙舟”在此并不强调动作，故都转译成了名词短语；动词“密布”转译成了形容词 many。

8. **译文**：In modern times, Asia experienced twists and turns in its development.

   分析：如果按照原文直接将“曲折的”和“艰难的”译为“发展历程”的定语，则不符合英文的表达和搭配习惯。原文的意思其实就是“亚洲在发展历程中经历了曲折和艰难”，故我们将形容词“曲折的”和“艰难的”转译成名词 twists and turns；而 in its development 就含有“发展历程”之意，不需要将“历程”翻译出来。

9. **译文**：Asia's development achievements today are the result of the persistent efforts of the industrious and talented Asian people.

   分析：“人们所看到的”并不具备实际含义，没有它也不影响原文的表达，为了表达的简洁，我们将其略去不译。“不屈不挠”与“锲而不舍”含义接近，故我们只需译出一个。

10. **译文**：To quit smoking requires persistence and so long as one persists, he'll be rewarded.

    分析：“贵在”就是“在于”的意思，不需要再将“贵”字翻译出来；“坚持下去”是一种条件，故增译条件状语从句的引导词 as/so long as，表示“只要”，并增译出表示泛指的主语 one。原文中“收获”是名词，但“就是收获”直译成英文不能形成合理的搭配，故我们将“收获”转译成动词 reward 的被动形式 be rewarded。

11. **译文**：China's rise has fully awakened these people's awareness of the fact that their kids can benefit from their bilingual ability.

分析：翻译时，我们将动词“认识到”转换成名词 awareness；将名词“好处”转换成动词 benefit；将动宾短语“掌握双语”转译成“形容词＋名词”短语 bilingual ability。

12. **译文**：As China is rising as a political and economic world power, more and more people in overseas countries start to learn Chinese.

    分析：as 引导时间状语从句，本身就含有逐渐之意，故我们可以将“逐渐”一词略去不译。“现象与日俱增”如直译成英文，则逻辑不通，故我们将“现象”略去不译，而将动词短语“与日俱增”转换成形容词短语 more and more，修饰 people。

13. **译文**：The fine culture of a nation doesn't belong to the nation alone and it will be spread to the rest of the world and shared by all humanity.

    分析：形容词“共同的”转译成动词 share 的被动结构 shared by。

14. **译文**：Great changes have taken place in China since the introduction of the reform and opening policy.

    分析：原文中的动词“改革开放”转译成了名词；另外，“改革开放”是一种政策，为了表达准确，我们增译出名词 policy；而这里说的“改革开放以来”其实是指“改革开放政策实施以来”，故我们又增译了 introduction。

15. **译文**：After the banquet, the concerts and the table tennis exhibitions, he would work on the drafting of the report.

    分析：原文表达的是“在一系列活动之后”，并不强调动作行为，故我们将“参加”“出席”“观看”这几个动词都省去不译。

星期三　句子翻译技巧

一、主干的确定

汉语注重“意合”，英语注重“形合”，因此汉语的句子结构经常比较松散，而英语句子往往严格遵循“主语＋谓语”的主干结构。因此，在汉译英时，不管汉语句子复杂与否，我们首先都要结合英语的特点考虑英语句子的基本主干结构，然后再去考虑时态和定语、状语等成分。

确立英语句子主干的核心在于主语的选择，汉译英时，如果完全按照汉语的主语来确定译文的主语，很多时候可能会显得逻辑不通或生硬晦涩。选择主语、确立主干时要注意以下几点：

1. 主谓的合理搭配

英语句子的主语和谓语要求具有合理的逻辑关系，确定主干时，要考虑谓语的动作是否能由主语来实施，谓语是否能合理描述主语的特征。

例：汉语：现在世界各地都在学习中国功夫。

译文：Nowadays, Chinese *kung fu* is being learned all across the world.

分析："世界各地"不能"学习功夫"，翻译时如果直接按照汉语的主谓去译，就会造成英语的主谓逻辑混乱。我们可以像译文中一样译成被动语态，也可以维持原文的主动语态，增译出主语 people。

2. 句子主题的突出

确定英语句子主干时，要考虑句子陈述的主题是什么，译文应突出句子主题，不能一味地按照汉语的主谓结构来直译。

例：汉语：十二生肖代表动物的性格特点各不相同。

译文：The twelve symbolic animals have their own characteristics.

分析：按照原文的结构，主语应该是"性格特点"，但句子陈述的主题其实是"12 个动物有不同的性格特点"，陈述对象应该是"动物"而不是"特点"，因此我们在译文中将 animals 而不是 characteristics 作为主语，既突出了陈述的主题，又避免了句子结构的失衡。

3. 句子结构的平衡

英语句子一般要避免头重脚轻，有时候严格按照汉语的结构进行翻译，会出现句子结构失衡的情况，此时可以根据实际情况选择适合英语表达习惯的主谓结构，也可以采取形式主语、被动语态等来达到句子结构的平衡。

例：汉语：那些曾经向我们学习过的人现在已经超过了我们，这对我们确实是一个挑战。

译文：It was a real challenge that those who have learned from us now excelled us.

分析：如果严格按照汉语的语序结构进行翻译，主语就会显得过长，所以我们将前一个句了译成主语从句，置于句末，用 it 来充当形式主语。

二、顺译或逆译

顾名思义，顺译就是按照汉语原文的顺序进行翻译的方法，逆译就是打破汉语原文的语序、按照英文的表达习惯进行翻译的方法。

1. 顺译

有些汉语句子结构与英语表达方式一致，在翻译时就可以按照原文顺序来

译，这种方法多用于单一主语的句子，且句子结构一般比较简单。

例：汉语：四合院是中国的一种传统合院式住宅，如今已经成为观光景点。

译文：The quadrangle is a traditional courtyard residence in China, and has now become a tourist attraction.

分析：原文两个并列句的主谓结构均比较简单，与英文表达方式基本一致，故直接顺译即可。

2. 逆译

更多的时候，我们在翻译时需要根据英语表达习惯来适当调整语序。这种语序的调整主要涉及两种类型：

1）定语、状语等个别成分顺序的调整

汉语中定语一般都放在中心词之前，而英语中如果是单个单词做定语，则放在中心词前，如果是较长的短语或句子做定语，则放在中心词之后。

汉语中的状语一般都是放在被修饰成分之前，而英语中状语位置则比较灵活，翻译时要酌情处理状语的位置。

例：汉语：中国功夫**因其悠久的历史、丰富的内涵以及浓厚的神秘色彩**而越来越受中外所瞩目。

译文：Chinese *kung fu* is drawing more and more attention at home and abroad **for its long history, rich connotation and deep mysterious color**.

分析：原因状语“因……色彩”译到句末，以避免主语 Chinese *kung fu* 与谓语 is drawing more and more attention 间隔太远，更符合英文表达习惯。

2）因与果等句间语序的调整

汉语中往往是原因在前，结果在后；条件或假设在前，结论在后；先叙事或阐述细节，后表态或评论，也就是说汉语往往把重心放在后面。而英语则比较灵活，但在大多数情况下正好与汉语相反，因此我们在汉译英时要注意根据英语的表达习惯来调整句子陈述的语序。

例：汉语：站在桌边等待顾客点菜时需要容忍很多事情，这已经**不足为奇**了。

译文：**It is common** that there's a lot to put up with when waiting tables.

分析：原文先叙事，后给出评论，按照英文习惯调整语序，先做出评论，将“不足为奇”译到句首，这既符合了英文的表达习惯，同时也实现了句子结构的平衡。

三、合译或分译

1. 合译

有时候汉语原文中会出现一些形散意合的短句，为了符合英文表达习惯，

我们在汉译英时往往需要通过从句、非谓语动词短语等方式将汉语中的两个或多个句子合译成逻辑关系紧密的英文长句。

例 1：汉语：物质具有一定的特征，我们可以根据这些特征来识别它们。

译文：Matter has certain features or prosperities **that enable** us to recognize it easily.

分析：我们将原文的两句话进行了合译，将第二句译成了第一句的定语从句，使句子结构更加紧凑。

例 2：汉语：中国是一个发展中的海洋大国。中国高度重视海洋的开发和保护。

译文：**As a major developing country with a long coastline**, China attaches great importance to marine development and protection.

分析：我们将原文的两句话进行了合译，第一个句子通过介词 as 译成了主语的同位语。

2. 分译

有时候汉语原文中会出现某个短语很难用单个的英文词或短语表达出来的情况，此时可以将其译成一个句子，也就是说将汉语中的一句话拆分成两句话来译。这种情况在四、六级汉译英中虽然并不常见，但偶尔也会出现。

例 1：汉语：她的一身灰色服装简单而**合身**。

译文：Her dress was grey and plain, **but is fitted her body nicely**.

分析：原文中主要表达两层意思，一层是“她的服装简单”，另一层是“但很合身”，所以我们将其进行了分译，将“合身”译成了一个单句。

例 2：汉语：我们**要干**就要干好。

译文：**If we do a thing,** we should do it well.

分析：“要干”在汉语中虽然只是一个简单的词，但它含有一种假设，故我们在英文中将其译成一个 if 引导的条件状语从句。

四、无主句的翻译

汉语中有很多没有主语的句子，而英语则讲究主谓结构的完整，除了祈使句和省略句以外，英语句子通常都有主语，而六级段落翻译一般都是比较正式的语体，很少会出现祈使句和省略句。因此，我们在汉译英时，需要采用合适的方式将汉语的无主句译成主谓结构完整的英文句子。

1. 将无主句译成被动句

汉语中的无主句要么施动者未知，要么不强调施动者，但一般情况下都会

有受动者或宾语，这种情况下，用英文的被动句表达往往十分合适。

例：汉语：每逢佳节庆典到处都可以看到灯笼。

译文：On festivals and celebrations，lanterns can **be seen** everywhere.

分析：汉语原文是个无主句，不强调施动者，故我们将宾语提前作为主语，译成被动句。

2. 将无主句译成存在句

英文中的存在句即 there be 句型使用也比较频繁，当汉语中的无主句含有类似这种“存在”含义的时候，往往可以处理成 there be 句型。该句型中 be 的方式比较灵活，可以是 happen to be，seem to be，occur 等形式，表达出更丰富的含义。

例：汉语：关于酒的发明有许多种说法，最著名的是杜康的传说。

译文：__There are__ many legends concerning the invention of alcohol. The popular one is about Du Kang.

分析：汉语原文是个无主句，含有存在含义，故译成 there be 句型。

3. 根据上下文为无主句增添主语

有时候，汉语无主句中宾语较长，或是含有多个宾语，这时就不太适合将其译成被动句，这时我们可以根据上下文来挖掘句子的隐含主语，将其补充出来。大多数情况下，这些无主句的主语都是 one，we，you 等表示泛指含义的代词。

例：汉语：中国古人不断告诉读书人，要想替国家做事，必须先把家庭治理好。

译文：Chinese ancients kept warning scholars that **they** should run their families well before they could work for the country.

分析：原文中后面两句都是无主语句，但是由上一句可知，此处隐含的主语都是 scholars，故增译出代词 they，代替 scholars 充当主语。

有时我们根据句子的含义转换句子的主谓结构，主语可能会是从句或是不定式短语，这种情况下我们会用 it 充当形式主语。

例：汉语：每当客人来访时，都需要泡茶给客人喝。

译文：Whenever guests visit，**it** is necessary to make and serve tea to them.

分析：原文中的后半句是个无主句，我们将其主谓结构进行了转换，译成“泡茶给客人喝是必需的”，不定式短语是真正的主语，it 充当形式主语。

五、语态的选择

在英语中，被动语态的使用远远高于汉语，英语中被动语态的使用或是为了强调受动者，或是因为没有明显的施动者。如果一味简单地按照汉语的语态

来进行对译，就可能会导致译文不合逻辑，读起来十分别扭生硬。

汉语中有时候被动语态会带有明显的“被”“受”等标记，但更多的时候句中并没有标记词，而是隐含被动意义，我们在翻译时要注意识别。

例 1：汉语：目前，全世界成千上万人练习太极拳，主要是由于它对于人类健康的神奇作用。

译文：**Tai Chi is practiced** by thousands of people around the world mostly because of its miraculous effects on human's health.

分析：原文用的是主动语态，但本句主要陈述的是“太极拳”的普及和神奇作用，因此我们将“太极拳”译为主语，将原文的主动语态转译成被动语态。

例 2：汉语：在古代，人们用中国结来记录事件，但现在主要用于装饰的目的。

译文：In ancient times, the Chinese knot **was used** to record events, but now it **is used** mainly for decorative purposes.

分析：原文用的是主动语态，但主语“人们”其实是泛指概念，此处主要陈述的是中国结的用途，在英语中当不强调施动者的时候，更习惯于用被动语态。

六、“使”字句和“让”字句的译法

碰到“使”字句和“让”字句，很多学生会很自然地将其译为 make…和 let…，而其实这在很多情况下并不符合英文表达习惯，而是带有浓厚的中式英语味道。所以我们在碰到“使”字句或“让”字句的时候，尽量不要使用 make…和 let…结构，而是要根据句子的具体含义选择更加地道的方式来表达。

1. 译成被动语态

汉语中的“使”或“让”（尤其是“让”）经常暗含着被动意义，我们在汉译英时可以将其译成被动语态。

例：汉语：尊重别人，才能**让**别人尊重。

译文：If you respect others, you will **be respected** by others.

分析：原文中的“让别人尊重”含有“被别人尊重”之意，故可译为被动语态。

2. 采用具有“使动”意义的动词或其他及物动词

英语中除了 make, let 以外，还有很多具有“使动”意义的词，比如 enable, allow, permit 等，我们要学会根据具体情况灵活选用。此外，有很多及物动词本身就含有“使某人……”或“让某人……”之意，不需要再用 make sb…或 let sb…的结构来表达，比如 convince“使某人信服”，surprise“让某人吃惊”，因此，我们在遇到“使”字句或“让”字句的时候，要注意根据“使”或“让”

之后的内容选择更地道准确的词语表达。

例：汉语：教育的目的不只是**让**学生掌握必要的知识，更应该提高学生的整体素质。

译文：Education should aim not only to **enable** students to master basic knowledge, but to improve their overall quality.

分析：原文中“让学生掌握知识”含有“使学生能够……”之意，故可译成 enable sb. to do sth. 结构。

3. 将“使”或“让”通过逻辑关系体现出来

有时候“使”或“让”体现了前后的一种逻辑关系，我们可以通过在译文中增加关联词或其他方式将这种逻辑关系表现出来。

例：汉语：近几年来香港购物旅游热，**使**香港成为世界上旅游业发展最快的城市之一。

译文：**With** the craze for shopping and touring in Hong Kong, the city has become one of the fastest developing tourist destinations in the world.

分析：原文中的“使”字表示前后的一种原因和结果的关系，我们将前一部分译成 with 介词短语，将这种因果关系体现出来。

七、专题演练

1. **汉语**：应该采纳新规则的建议是主席提出的。
   译文：_____
2. **汉语**：必须立即采取有效措施消灭沙尘暴。
   译文：_____
3. **汉语**：他刚上车，就发现忘了带钱包了，这令他十分恼火。
   译文：_____
4. **汉语**：中国是个大国，百分之八十的人口从事农业，但耕地只占土地面积的十分之一。
   译文：_____
5. **汉语**：在那个地区进行了一次关于新生儿死亡率的调查，调查结果令人吃惊。
   译文：_____
6. **汉语**：直到所有的证据摆在他面前他才承认他的罪行。
   译文：_____
7. **汉语**：春节是中国最重要的古老节日之一。春节象征着团结、兴旺以及对未来寄予的希望。

译文： _____

8. **汉语：**赛龙舟是端午节的一项重要活动，在中国南方尤为流行。

   译文： _____

9. **汉语：**通常，若是用茶杯泡的茶，在茶喝完一半之后就应该加开水。

   译文： _____

10. **汉语：**京剧脸谱（Peking Opera facial makeup）是广大戏曲爱好者非常喜爱的一门艺术，国内外都很流行，被大家公认为是中国传统文化的标志之一。

    译文： _____

11. **汉语：**早在战国时期就已经出现了杂质的雏形（embryonic form）。

    译文： _____

12. **汉语：**五四爱国运动于 1919 年 5 月 4 日在北京发生。中国工人阶级作为政治舞台上的一支力量首次被唤醒。

    译文： _____

13. **汉语：**西湖位于杭州市中心的西部，它是江南三大名湖之一。

    译文： _____

14. **汉语：**中国人过春节或其他节日，饺子是必不可少的。

    译文： _____

15. **汉语：**筷子的出现使我们的祖先不再用手抓食物吃，因此它象征着文明的到来。

    译文： _____

参考答案

1. **译文：**The suggestion that the new rule be adopted came from the chairman.

   分析：“采纳新规则”应该是“建议”的同位语，该部分是一个无主句（没有动作的发出者），因此应翻译成英语中的被动句。需要注意的是像 suggestion，order，demand 等表示建议、命令、要求等含义的名词后面接同位语从句时，从句的谓语动词用 should do 的形式，should 常省略。

2. **译文：**Effective measures must be taken immediately to eliminate sandy storms.

   分析：汉语的无主句通常翻译成英语的被动语态。

3. **译文：**It annoyed him that no sooner had he got on the bus than he found he forgot to take the wallet with him.

   分析：如果严格按照汉语语序进行翻译，就会造成头重脚轻，故我们将前面部分译成主语从句，置于句末，而用 it 代替其充当形式主语。no sooner… than 和 hardly(scarcely)… when 都表示“刚一……就……”，注意其中连词的区别。该句型有两个特点：一是主句中一般使用过去完成时，而从句中一般使用一般过去时；二是 no sooner 或 hardly(scarcely)位于句首时，紧跟其后的句子应采用部分倒装。

4. **译文：**China is a large country with eighty percent of the population engaged in agriculture, but only one tenth of the land is farmland.
   分析：本句使用了合译，将“百分之八十的人口从事农业”译成了 with 独立主格结构，充当前一句的状语。另外，“耕地只占土地面积的十分之一”进行了逆译，以实现与前一句结构的对称。
5. **译文：**A survey was carried out on the death rate of new-born babies in that region, the results of which were surprising.
   分析：汉语原文的第一句是个无主句，我们将其译成被动语态。后一句是说明前一句调查的结果，故可以将两句进行合译，将后一句译成非限制性定语从句，由 which 引导，代替 survey 在从句中做 of 的宾语。
6. **译文：**Not until he was showed all evidence did he confess his crime. / It was not until he was showed all evidence that he confessed his crime.
   分析：原文为主动语态，但如果直译成 all evidence was before him 会显得十分生硬别扭，不符合英文表达习惯，故我们将其转换成被动语态。not… until 意为“直到……时，才……”，为了起到强调作用，经常将 not until 提前构成倒装。另外，该句型还常用于强调句型。
7. **译文：**In China, the Spring Festival is one of the most significant ancient festivals, which symbolizes unity, prosperity and new hopes for the future.
   分析：原文中两个句子衔接紧密，主语一致，故我们可以将其进行合译，第二句译成 which 引导的非限制性定语从句。
8. **译文：**Dragon boat racing is an important activity of Duanwu Festival, and is particularly popular in the south of China.
   分析：原文中的前置定语“端午节的”按照英文习惯译成介词短语，做后置定语，状语“在中国南方”也按照英文习惯放到句末。
9. **译文：**Usually, if the tea is made in a teacup, boiling water should be added into the cup when half of the tea in it has been consumed.
   分析：原文都是无主句，不强调施动者，按照英语习惯都译成了被动语态。
10. **译文：**As one of the favorite arts of the traditional opera lovers at home and abroad, Peking Opera facial makeup has been regarded as one of the symbols of Chinese traditional culture.
    分析：为了句子表达简洁和结构严谨，我们将原文中几个句子进行了合译。首句译成 as 引出的介词短语做状语，第二句中的“国内外”直接合并到 as 介词短语中充当状语，“都很流行”的意思已经在前面体现出来，故略去不译。
11. **译文：**As early as the Warring States Periods, there appeared embryonic form of acrobatics.
    分析：原文是一个无主句，含有“存在”之意，故我们将其译成 there be 句

型，为了表现出“出现”之意，这里的 be 换成了 appear。

12. **译文**：The patriotic May 4th Movement took place on May 4th, 1919 in Peking. For the first time, the Chinese working class was awakened as an independent force in the political stage.

    分析：时间状语“首次”按英文习惯译到了句首；“作为……力量”译成介词短语 as…做状语，置于句末。

13. **译文**：The West Lake, located in the western area of Hangzhou's center, is one of the top three lakes in the regions south of the Yangtze River.

    分析：我们将两句合译为一句，第一句译成过去分词短语，做后置定语。

14. **译文**：Jiaozi is absolutely necessary when the Chinese people celebrate the Spring Festival and other festivals.

    分析：英语习惯把重心放在前面，先做出评判，再阐述细节，故我们在翻译时将时间状语从句译到了后面。

15. **译文**：Thanks to the invention of chopsticks, our ancestors no longer grabbed food to eat, so chopsticks are the signal of civilization.

    分析：此处的“使”含有因果关系，故我们通过 thanks to 将这种因果关系体现出来。

星期四　高频语法扫雷

一、5 种基本句型

英语句子的基本结构可以归纳成 5 种基本句型及其扩大、组合、省略或倒装，掌握这 5 种基本句型，是掌握各种英语句子结构的基础，也是提高翻译和写作能力的基础。

下笔翻译前，应首先确定英文句子的基本句型框架，确定句子主干，然后再确定定语、状语等句子成分。翻译时一定要厘清句子结构，搞清所译的各项内容在句中充当什么成分，分析各成分之间的修饰关系，以确保译出结构正确、表达地道的英文句子。

1. 主语（S）＋谓语（不及物动词 V）

该句型中的谓语动词要用不及物动词或相当于不及物动词的动词短语，后面不需要宾语，但可以跟副词、介词短语、状语从句等做句子的状语。

如：**He died** three years ago.

When I invited her to play with us, **she didn't take part**.

2. 主语（S）＋谓语（及物动词 V）＋宾语（O）

该句型中的谓语动词需要用及物动词或相当于及物动词的短语，后面必须要跟宾语，即动作的承受者。

如：**We** should **take good care of the old**.

He is using the pen that I bought for him yesterday.

3. 主语（S）＋系动词（V）＋表语（P）

该句型也可以称为主系表结构，侧重说明主语是什么或怎么样，表语是表示主语身份、状态的形容词、名词、介词短语、不定式或分词等。

系动词常分为以下五类：① 判断类：be，prove 等；② 持续类：keep，remain，stay，lie，stand 等；③ 表象类：seem，appear，look 等；④ 感官类：feel，look，smell，sound，taste 等；⑤ 变化类：become，grow，turn，fall，get，go 等。

如：Though I called him several times，**he remains still**.

They are short of money.

4. 主语（S）＋谓语（及物动词 V）＋间接宾语（IO）＋直接宾语（DO）

该句型中的谓语动词比较特殊，必须跟两个宾语，即指物的直接宾语和指人的间接宾语，句子意思才能表达完整，有时候直接宾语也可以是从句。

如：**She gave me a story book** that I hope for a long time.

Please **fetch me some water**.

通常情况下双宾语的结构是间接宾语在前，直接宾语在后；如果直接宾语在前，间接宾语在后，则间接宾语前需要用介词 to 或 for。

如：My mother **bought me three novels**.

My mother **bought three novels for me**.

5. 主语（S）＋谓语（及物动词 V）＋宾语（O）＋宾语补足语（OC）

该句型中的谓语动词虽然是及物动词，但是只跟一个宾语还不能表达完整的意思，所以必须加上一个补充成分即宾语补足语来说明宾语，才能使句子意思完整。宾语补足语是用来补充说明宾语的情况的，能做宾语补足语成分的有：名词、形容词、副词、介词短语、不定式、现在分词、过去分词等。

如：**Keep the door open** please.

I found him seated there all the day.

二、名词性从句

名词性从句就是在句中起名词作用的从句，根据其在句中语法功能的不同，可分为主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句。

当主语、宾语、表语较复杂时，我们可将其译成名词性从句。名词性从句的引导词主要包括从属连词 that，whether，if（只起连接作用）；连接代词 who（ever），whom（ever），what（ever），which（ever），whose（在句中充当主语、宾语或定语）；连接副词 when，where，why，how（在句中充当状语）。使用名词性从句时应主要注意以下几点：

1. It 充当形式主语或形式宾语

英语句子讲究结构的平衡，一般要避免头重脚轻，因此我们经常需要使用 it 充当形式主语或宾语，而将主语从句或宾语从句置于句末。

如：**It** goes without saying **that** in order to speak good English，we must first of all learn good pronunciation. 不言而喻，为了讲好英语，首先必须学好发音。

2. that 和 what

that 引导名词性从句时，只起连接作用，不充当成分；what 引导名词性从句时，既起连接作用，又要在从句中充当成分（主语、宾语或表语），表示“……的”之意，且 what 引导的名词性从句，一般不用 it 做形式主语或形式宾语。

如：**That** they are good at English is known to us all. 他们擅长英语我们都知道。（that 引导主语从句，不充当任何成分）

What some people regard as drawback is seen as a plus by many others. 一些人眼中的不利因素在许多其他人看来却是有利因素。（what 引导主语从句，在从句中做宾语）

3. what 和 whatever

whatever/ whoever/ whichever/ however 表示“无论什么/……”，注意它们与 what/ who/ which/ how 在含义上的区别。另外，whatever 等词引导的名词性从句，也不能用 it 做形式主语或形式宾语。

如：The how-to book can be of help to **whoever** wants to do the job. 无论谁想做这份工作，这个手册都会有所帮助。

It is not decided **who** does the job. 谁来做这份工作还没有决定。

4. whether 和 if

if 和 whether 表示“是否”，引导宾语从句时可以互换，但下列情况下一般只能用 whether：

whether 可以做介词宾语，if 不能。如：It depends on **whether** they will come back. 这取决于他们是否会回来。

whether 可以与 or not 连用，if 不能。如：I don't know **whether or not** he had known the news. 我不知道他是否已经知道了那个消息。

whether 可以与 or 连用表示一种选择，if 不能。如：Anyone，**whether** men

or women, the young or the old, may buy lottery tickets. 任何人，无论男女老少，都可以买彩票。

whether 可以与不定式连用，if 不能。如：There are two problems for you to consider in deciding **whether** to move. 要决定是否搬家，有两个问题你要考虑。

whether 可以引导主语从句和表语从句，if 不能。如：**Whether** the meeting will be put off has not been decided yet. 会议是否被推迟还没有决定。

鉴于 whether 使用的广泛性，我们在翻译时如需表示“是否”之意，应尽量使用 whether。

5. 区分同位语从句和定语从句

同位语从句是对先行词起补充和解释作用，多由 that 引导，that 没有实际意义，在从句中不充当任何成分。定语从句是对先行词起修饰和限定作用，引导词要在从句中充当一定的成分。

如：The news that our team won the game made me excited. （同位语从句，that 不做成分）

The news that they told me made me exited. （定语从句，that 充当宾语）

例 1：汉语：开始看起来模糊不清的事情再看一次可能就会变得清晰并有逻辑。

译文：What seems confusing at first might well become clear and organic a second time.

分析：“开始看起来模糊不清的事情”是陈述的主体，what 引导的主语从句常用来表示“……的事情”，what 在从句中充当主语。

例 2：汉语：两本书中没有一本持这种观点：核战争的危险正在加剧。

译文：Neither of the two books holds the opinion that the danger of nuclear war is increasing.

分析：冒号后面是解释“观点”的内容，故译成 that 引导同位语从句。

三、定语从句

定语从句相当于形容词，其作用是做定语修饰主句中的某个名词性成分。汉译英时使用定语从句要注意以下几点：

1. 确定先行词和关系词

使用定语从句，我们要抓住两个最关键的词：先行词和关系词。先行词是被修饰的中心词，它在主句中，但它又要在定语从句中充当成分，我们要根据其性质和形式以及其在从句中充当的成分来判断使用什么样的关系词去代替它。

2. 只能用 that 充当关系代词的情况

①当先行词是 all，everything，anything，nothing，none，few，some，little 等不定代词，或当先行词被 every，any，all，no，little，few，much 等修饰时。如：In spite of all **that** has been said，quite a lot of people are still uncertain about the prices of housing in China. 尽管已经说了很多，但很多人对于中国的房价仍然不确定。

②当先行词被序数词、形容词最高级、the very/ the only 等修饰时。如：Nowadays，when people talk about magicians，the first one **that** comes into their mind is Liu Qian. 现在，当人们谈论到魔术师的时候，第一个想起的魔术师就是刘谦。

③当先行词既指人又指物时。如：The famous scientist said it was his primary school teachers and their lessons **that** he was fond of that influenced his whole life. 那位著名的科学家说，正是那些他喜欢的小学老师及他们所教授的知识影响了他的一生。

3. 只能用 which 充当关系代词的情况

①引导非限制性定语从句时。如：After graduating from college，I took some time off to go travelling，**which** turned out to be a wise decision. 大学毕业以后，我花了一些时间去旅行，事实证明那是明智的决定。

②关系代词前有介词时。如：Gun control is a subject **about which** Americans have argued for a long time. 枪支控制是美国人争论已久的话题。

4. as 和 which 在引导定语从句时的区别

as 和 which 引导定语从句，先行词可以是一个词，也可以是主句整个句子。as 有“正如，正像”之意，引导的定语从句可以出现在句首、句中或句尾。which 没有具体含义，引导的定语从句不能放在句首。

如：**As** is mentioned above，the number of the students in senior high school is increasing. 正如上面提到的，高中生的人数正在增长。

The number of the students in senior high school is increasing rapidly，**which** is a challenge to the local education department. 高中生的人数正在快速增长，这对当地的教育部门是个挑战。

5. whose 的用法

whose 在定语从句中做定语，可指人（的），也可以指物（的）。指物（的）时可以用 of which 代替。如：The prize will go to the writer **whose** story shows the most imagination. 得奖的将是故事最具想象力的作家。

6. 其他特殊用法

①先行词是 the way，常用 that/ in which 来引导定语从句，也经常将关系词省略。如：We are not purely selfish creatures in the way **that** Hobbes had thought.

我们并不是像霍布斯描述的那样是绝对自私的生物。

②一些表示抽象空间概念的名词如 atmosphere（气氛），case（情况），situation（形势），position（位置），stage（舞台），point（地步）等做先行词时，一般用关系副词 where 引导定语从句。如：The Olympics are like a huge stage **where** everyone makes every effort to achieve their dreams. 奥运会就像是一个大舞台，每个人都在这个舞台上为实现梦想而竭尽全力。

③先行词是表示时间、地点或原因的名词，但其在定语从句中不是做状语，而是做主语或宾语，此时定语从句要用关系代词引导，而不用关系副词。如：I will never forget those days **that/ which** we spent together. 我永远也不会忘记我们一起度过的那些日子。

例 1：汉语：这个男人被留在一个孤岛上，他在那里待了半年之久。

译文：The man was left on an isolated island, where he stayed for as long as half a year.

分析：先行词 island 为地点名词，故其定语从句应该用关系副词 where 来引导。表示“长达……之久”，可用“as long as + 时间”的结构。

例 2：汉语：一些路被洪水淹了，这使我们的旅程更为艰难。

译文：Some of the roads were flooded, which made our journey more difficult.

分析：分析句子结构可知，汉语部分应该是一个非限制性定语从句，引导非限制性定语从句，代替前面整个句子应该用关系代词 which。注意从句中的谓语动词应该用过去式，保持时态一致。

四、状语从句

当前后两个句子之间存在某种从属性的逻辑关系时，为了体现出这种逻辑关系，我们在汉译英时要用到状语从句。使用状语从句的关键就是搞清上下文之间的逻辑关系，选用恰当的逻辑关系词。

逻辑关系词本身词义并不复杂，也没有词形变化，它的语法功能就是在词与词、短语与短语或句子与句子之间起连接作用，按照一定的逻辑关系使前后两部分连成一体。因此，只要按照逻辑关系将连词进行分类记忆即可。

常见的引导状语从句的逻辑关系词：

逻辑关系	常用连接词语
时间	when，whenever，as，since，till，until，before，after，the moment/day/instant/minute/second，every time，no sooner … than，hardly… when

（续）

逻辑关系	常用连接词语
地点	where，wherever，anywhere
比较	（not）as… as，not so… as，（not）such… as，（not）the same as，than，while
条件	if，unless，as/so long as，on condition that
原因	because，since，as ，now that，seeing that，considering that，in that，for
结果	so that，so… that，such… that
目的	in case，for fear that，lest，so that，in order that
方式	as，just as，as if，as though
让步	though，although，even if/though，as，while，whatever，wherever，whoever，however，no matter what/how/…，whether… or

下面是几组容易混淆的逻辑关系词：

1. 表示原因的连词：since，as，for

since 常意为“既然”，表示已知、显而易见的原因，语气比 because 稍弱。引导的从句一般置于句首。如：**Since** food is crucial to health，a good chef is always trying to seek balance among cereals，meat and vegetables. 由于食物对健康至关重要，好的厨师总是努力在谷物、肉类和蔬菜之间取得平衡。

as 引导的原因状语从句主要是对主句进行附带说明，一般位于句首，语气较 because 要弱。如：**As** I had a cold，I was absent from school. 因为我感冒了，所以没去上课。

for 是对主句的意思加以补充，引导的从句不能位于句首，并且要用逗号与主句断开。如：It must have rained，**for** the ground is wet.

2. 表示时间的连词：before，since，until

before 引导的时间状语从句表示主句动作发生在从句动作之前，前面常与一段时间连用，并常译为“在……之后才”。如：Several days had gone **before** I knew my watch was lost. 几天以后我才发现我的表丢了。

since 常用于“It is/ has been + 一段时间 + since…”句式中，表示“自从……以来已经多长时间”。如：It is two years **since** we came here. 自从我来这儿已经两年了。

until 引导时间状语从句主要有两种情况：①主句是肯定句，谓语为延续性动词，表示主句谓语动作一直持续到从句谓语动作发生时为止，意为“直到”，如：I waited for him **until** he finished his class。我一直等到他上完课。②主句是否定句，谓语为短暂性动词，表示主句谓语动作直到从句谓语动作发生时才开始，意为“直到……才”，如：He didn't go to bed **until** his father came back. 直到他父亲回来他才上床睡觉。

3. 表示让步的连词：whatever，no matter what，as

whatever，however 等既可引导让步状语从句，还能引导名词性从句；no matter what，no matter how 等只能引导让步状语从句。

如：**Whatever/ No matter what** you do，you must do it well. 无论你做什么，都必须要做好。

You must do **whatever** the boss requires. 老板要求什么，你就得做什么。（此处不能用 no matter what）

as 引导让步状语从句时，需使用倒装。如：**Child as he is**，he knows a lot. 尽管他还是个孩子，但他知道很多。

4. 表示条件的连词：unless，so/as long as，in case

unless 相当于 if… not，意为“除非，如果……不”。如：You'll fail the exam **unless** you study hard. 如果你不努力学习，你考试就不会通过。

so/as long as 意为“只要”。如：**As long as** she did this，all would be well. 只要她这么做，一切都会好起来。

in case 意为“万一”。如：**In case** I forget，please remind me of my promise. 万一我忘了，请提醒我我所做出的承诺。

5. 表示结果的连词：so… that…，such… that…

so 为副词，修饰的是形容词或副词；such 为形容词，修饰的是名词。注意 so 和 such 后面所接的不同的结构：

①so + 形容词/副词 + that 从句。如：The town is so beautiful that it attracts lots of tourists every year. 这个小镇如此美丽以至于每年都会吸引很多游客的到来。

②so + 形容词 + a/an + 可数名词单数 + that 从句，必须有形容词修饰，才能用 so，要注意冠词的位置。如：It is so beautiful a town that it attracts lots of tourists every year. 这是如此美丽的一个小镇以至于每年都会吸引很多游客。

③such + a/an +（形容词 +）可数名词单数 + that 从句，此处也可以没有形

容词修饰，要注意冠词的位置。如：It is such a beautiful town that it attracts lots of tourists every year. 这是如此美丽的一个小镇以至于每年都会吸引很多游客的到来。

④so + many/ much/ few/ little + 名词 + that 从句，当名词前有 many/ much 等数量词修饰时，只能用 so，不能用 such。如：There are so many scenic spots in the town that lots of tourists visit it every year. 这个小镇上有如此多的名胜以至于每年有很多游客前来参观。

⑤such + （形容词 + ）可数名词复数/ 不可数名词 + that 从句，后面是复数名词或不可数名词时，不管前面有没有形容词修饰，都只能用 such。如：There are such beautiful scenic spots in the town that lots of tourists visit it every year. 这个小镇上有如此多的美丽的景点以至于每年有很多游客前来参观。

例 1：汉语：无论多么频繁地演奏，贝多芬的作品总是会吸引大批的听众。

译文：No matter how frequently performed, the works of Beethoven always attract large audiences.

分析：no matter 经常与疑问词连用，引导让步状语从句，表示“无论……”；本句中 frequently“频繁”是一个副词，修饰动词 perform，故应该用疑问词 how 来修饰副词 frequently；而 the works 与 perform 之间是被动的关系，故状语从句应该采用被动语态。而且，由于从句主语与主句主语一致，因此可将 they are 省略，直接用过去分词 performed 做状语。另外，no matter how frequently 也可以用 however frequently 来替换。

例 2：汉语：单独一个人在荒芜的房子里，他如此地忙于研究工作以至于感觉不到孤单。

译文：Alone in a deserted house, he was so busy with his research work that he didn't feel lonely.

分析：so… that…意为“如此……以至于……”，that 引导结果状语从句。由主句的时态可知 that 从句也应该采用一般过去时。

五、非谓语动词

非谓语动词包括不定式、分词和动名词，考生在复习时首先要了解这几种非谓语动词的基本用法。一般来说，不定式常表示目的或将要发生，过去分词常表示完成和被动，现在分词常表示进行和主动，动名词则相当于名词的作用，常做宾语或主语。

非谓语动词的基本语法功能及基本形式如下：

非谓语动词	基本语法功能	基本形式
不定式	主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语、宾语补足语	一般式：to do/ to be done 进行式：to be doing 完成式：to have done/ to have been done
动名词	主语、宾语、表语、定语	一般式：doing/ being done 完成式：having done/ having been done
现在分词、过去分词	表语、定语、状语、宾语补足语	现在分词基本形式同动名词 过去分词只有一般式 done

考生在使用非谓语动词时，应注意以下几点：

1. 非谓语动词同其所修饰的名词或逻辑主语的一致关系

根据非谓语动词与其逻辑主语的关系来确定使用主动语态还是被动语态，从而确定是采用现在分词还是过去分词。

如：After **being interviewed** for the job，**you** will be required to take a language test. 面试以后，你得被要求参加一项语言测试。(interview 与其逻辑主语 you 之间是被动关系)

2. 非谓语动词同主句谓语动词动作发生的先后关系

动作正在进行的用现在分词进行式，同时发生或不分先后发生的用现在分词一般式或过去分词；在主句谓语动词之前发生的用现在分词完成式、不定式完成式；发生在主句谓语动词之后的多用不定式一般式。

如：The man confessed to **having told** a lie to the judge. 那个人承认之前对法官说了谎。(动名词的完成式表示动作发生在主句动作之前)

3. 动名词的复合结构

动名词的复合结构是由形容词性物主代词或名词的 's 所有格加上动名词构成。

如：All his friends suggest **his quitting** that job as early as possible. 他所有的朋友都建议他尽早辞掉那份工作。

4. 独立主格结构

非谓语动词做状语时，其逻辑主语应与句子主语一致，即句子主语就是非谓语动词所表示动作的发出者或承受者。但有时候非谓语动词的逻辑主语并不是句子主语，而是带有自己的逻辑主语，即构成“名词/代词＋非谓语动词”的

独立结构。独立主格结构一般要用逗号与主句隔开，而且经常会由介词 with 引出。

如：With his glasses broken, the man couldn't see the road clearly.（动作已经结束）

With some books to buy, he went into the bookstore on his way home.（动作没有发生）

5. 不定式的完成式表示“原计划或打算要做的事而没做”

下列动词后常接不定式的完成式 to have done 结构，表示“原计划要做的事而没做”：claim, desire, mean, promise, hope, plan, wish, expect, intend, pretend 等。

如：He **planed to have gone** fishing but he suddenly had an important meeting to attend. 他本来计划去钓鱼的，结果他突然有个会议要参加。

6. 一些只能接动名词或不定式做宾语的动词

只能接动名词、不能接不定式做宾语的动词主要有：abandon, admit, advocate, allow, appreciate, avoid, bear, complete, consider, delay, deny, deserve, dislike, enjoy, escape, fancy, favor, finish, forgive, imagine, keep, mind, miss, postpone, prevent, practice, quit, recommend, resist, risk, suggest 等。

如：That young man still **denied having started** the fire behind the store. 那个年轻人仍然否认他在商店后面放了火。

只能接不定式、不能接动名词的动词主要有：agree, afford, arrange, appear, attempt, choose, claim, decide, expect, fail, hope, plan, prepare, offer, pretend, promise, tend, intend, happen, determine 等。

如：He **pretended not to see** me as he passed me in the street. 他从我身边走过去的时候，假装没有看到我。

7. 既可接动名词又可接不定式的动词

有些动词既可接不定式也可接动名词，二者的区别主要分为两种情况：一是接动名词强调动作正在进行或当时的状态，接不定式强调过程，如 see, watch, hear 等；二是接动名词表示动作已经发生，接不定式表示动作还没发生，如 remember, forget, regret, stop, try 等。

如：We **regret to inform** you that the books you ordered are out of stock. 我们很遗憾地通知你，你订的书现在缺货。

He **regretted not going** to the meeting last week. 他很后悔上周没去参加那个会议。

例 1：汉语：看到他的朋友在遭受病痛的折磨，他感到非常难过。

译文：Watching his friend suffering the illness, he felt very sad.

分析：“看到……”的逻辑主语和后面句子的主语一致，故可译成现在分词短语做状语，即 watching…；watch 后面既可以接动名词做宾补，也可以接不定式做宾补，动名词强调动作和当时的状态，不定式则强调过程和结果。此处是表示正在遭受痛苦，强调当时的状态，故应该用动名词 suffering。

例 2：汉语：新政府被指控没能实现其降低失业率的承诺。

译文：The new government was accused of failure to fulfill its promise to reduce the unemployment rate.

分析：本句中“降低失业率的”应该是充当“承诺”的定语，可以用不定式短语充当后置定语来表达。

六、时态

英语中一共有 16 个时态，考生在复习时要注意各个时态的主要用法，翻译时要注意抓住句子中的时间状语，判断其是表示现在、将来还是过去？是短暂时间还是延续性时间？从而确定译文的时态。

1. 一般过去时和现在完成时

区分关键：一般过去时表示的事情发生在过去，与现在情况没有联系，常与确定的过去时间状语连用。现在完成时则强调过去的动作在现在产生的结果或对现在的影响，或是动作从过去某个时间开始，一直延续到现在，不与表示过去的时间状语连用。

如：He served in the army from 1965 to 1968.（过去服过兵役）

He has served in the army for 5 years.（从 5 年前开始服兵役，到现在还是在役军人）

2. 一般过去时和过去完成时

区分关键：一般过去时和过去完成时虽然都是发生在过去，但是两种时态的时间参照点不同，一般过去时是对现在说话的时刻而言；过去完成时则是对过去某一时刻而言，是“过去的过去”，有过去的时间参照点，常与“by + 过去的时间”或“before + 过去的时间”连用。

如：He wrote many plays when he was at college.（单纯讲过去上大学时候的事）

He had written many plays by the time he graduated from college.（大学毕业是过去的时间点，写了许多剧本是到过去某一时刻的结果）

3. 现在完成时与过去完成时

区分关键：两种时态都常与表示一段时间的状语连用，现在完成时表示的

是延续到现在的动作或状态，句中不可以有表示过去特定时间的状语；过去完成时表示的是过去某时之前已经完成或延续到过去某时的动作，句中常有表示过去特定时间的状语。

如：He has been ill for a week.（到现在，他已经病了一个星期）

He had been ill for a week by the time he came here.（到他来这儿之前，他已经病了一个星期）

4. 现在完成时与现在完成进行时

区别关键：现在完成进行时强调过去发生、开始的动作持续到现在，并且还在进行。现在完成进行时不能与表示次数的状语连用，而现在完成时则可以连用。

如：I have been writing the essay.（表示一直在写，暗示没有写完，还要写下去）

I have written the essay.（表示论文已经写完了）

5. 注意一些惯用句式的时态

①“It will（not）be ＋一段时间＋before 从句”句式中，从句中的谓语动词用一般现在时。肯定时意为“要过多久才……”，否定时意为“过不了多久就……”。如：It will be quite a long time before we find the way out.

②“It was（not） ＋一段时间＋before 从句”句式中，从句中的谓语动词用一般过去时。如：It was several days before we got the news.

③“It is/has been＋一段时间＋since 从句”句式中，从句中的谓语动词用一般过去时。如：It's been six years since we last saw each other.

④“It was/had been＋一段时间＋since 从句”句式中，从句中的谓语动词用持续性动词的过去完成时。如：It was three years since Jack had been a teacher.

⑤“This/It is ＋the first/ second/… time ＋that…”句式中，that 后的从句用现在完成时。如：This is the first time that I have visited this city.

⑥“It/ This/ That was＋the first/ second/… time＋that…”句式中，that 后的从句用过去完成时。如：It was the second time that he had made the same mistake.

⑦“hardly/ scarcely… when…”和“no sooner… than…”句式中，主句用过去完成时，从句用一般过去时，常用倒装结构。如：Hardly had the sports meeting started when it started to rain.

⑧hope，expect，think，intend，want，suppose 等用于过去完成时，表示未实现的愿望、打算或意图，意为“原本……”。如：We had expected that you would be able to win the match.

例 1：汉语：科学家一致认为我们还需要很长时间才可以找到治愈癌症的方法。

译文：Scientists agree that it will be a long time before we find a cure for cancer.

分析：表示“还需要很长时间才……”习惯于用句式“It will be ＋一段时间＋before…”表达。主句用一般将来时，从句用一般现在时。

例 2：汉语：一项全面的科学普查表明，地球气候正在明显变暖。

译文：A broad scientific census says that the earth is experiencing significant global warming.

分析：所给汉语部分中的“正在”提示此处应用进行时态，且主句中使用的是一般现在时，所以从句的时态应是现在进行时。

七、专题演练

1. **汉语：**除非政府提供更多的资金，否则医院就得关门。
   译文：_____
2. **汉语：**仔细调查发现多达百分之五十的病人没有按指示服药。
   译文：_____
3. **汉语：**据说艾滋病在过去十年中已经对当地妇女构成了最大的健康威胁。
   译文：_____
4. **汉语：**玛丽每次违反交通规则的时候都想逃脱惩罚。
   译文：_____
5. **汉语：**英国人不是很熟悉其他文化和做事方式，这种情况经常在别的国家也存在。
   译文：_____
6. **汉语：**要想帮助朋友解决困扰他的问题，一个人应该具备所需要的知识。
   译文：_____
7. **汉语：**据推测古埃及已向月球发射过火箭。
   译文：_____
8. **汉语：**只有那些不怕困难的人，才有可能在工作中取得杰出的成绩。
   译文：_____
9. **汉语：**压岁钱是长辈们送给孩子的护身符（amulet），代表着长辈对孩子的美好祝福。
   译文：_____
10. **汉语：**近年来，重阳节（the Double Nine Festival）被赋予了新的含义，逐渐成为开展各种敬老活动、一年一度的“老年节”。
    译文：_____

11. **汉语**：从汉朝开始，荡秋千逐渐成为一种在清明节（the Tomb-sweeping Day）和其他一些节日时进行的民间活动。
    译文：_____
12. **汉语**：孔子品格中的优点，几千年来影响着中国人，特别是影响着中国的知识分子。
    译文：_____
13. **汉语**：10 世纪初，北京成为辽代的第二个都城。从那时起，北京先后成为金、元、明、清四朝的首都，直至 1911 年。
    译文：_____
14. **汉语**：由于春节标志着新的一年的开始，人们选择吃饺子来表达他们对新年的美好祝愿。
    译文：_____
15. **汉语**：我们一直在研究一种新药，其药力强大到足以改变大脑化合物的组成。
    译文：_____

参考答案

1. **译文**：Unless the government agrees to provide extra money, the hospital will have to close.
   分析：unless 表示“除非……否则”，相当于“if… not”，常用于引导条件状语从句。
2. **译文**：Careful surveys have indicated that as many as 50 percent of patients do not take drugs as (they are) directed.
   分析：表示“按指示”可以用 as 引导方式状语从句，从句的主语与前面句子的主语一致，故我们可以将其简化成分词形式。
3. **译文**：AIDS is said to have been the greatest healthy challenge to the local women in the past decade.
   分析：主语为 AIDS，表示“据说……”用被动结构 be said to do sth.，根据后面的时间状语 in the past decade 可知，此处所表达的动作是发生在过去，故应该用不定式的完成式来表达。
4. **译文**：Mary often attempts to escape being fined whenever she breaks traffic regulations.
   分析：所给汉语部分的“每当……时候”，也含有“不论何时”之意，所以此处的时间状语从句的连词最好用 whenever。
5. **译文**：The British are not so familiar with different cultures and other ways of doing things, as is often the case in other countries.
   分析：后半句可以译成 as 引导的非限制性定语从句，as 代替前面整个句子，

在从句中充当主语，表示后面的情况也跟前面的一样。我们可以把 as is often the case 当作固定句型来记。

6. **译文**：To help a friend solve the problem troubling him, a man should be equipped with the kind of knowledge required.
   分析：不定式短语常用在句首表示目的，表示“帮助某人做某事”一般用 help sb.（to）do sth. 的结构。
7. **译文**：The ancient Egyptians **are supposed to have sent rockets** to the moon.
   分析：表示“据推测……”，常用短语 be supposed to；其次，“已发射过火箭”这一动作发生在过去，明显是在谓语动词“are supposed”的动作之前，故应该用不定式的完成式来表达。
8. **译文**：Only those who are not afraid of any difficulties have the chance of achieving outstanding results in their work.
   分析：代指“那些人”，直接用“those”即可，后面无需再加 people；关系代词 who 引导的定语从句，修饰 those，who 在从句中充当主语。
9. **译文**：Lucy money is an amulet the elders give their kids, representing the elders' fine wishes for the kids.
   分析：原文中后一句是对前一句的进一步说明，为了句子表达的简洁和结构的紧凑，我们可以将后一句译为现在分词短语做状语。
10. **译文**：In recent years, a new meaning has been given to the Double Nine Festival, and it gradually becomes an annual Seniors' Day, on which various activities are held in honor of senior people.
    分析：“开展各种活动”“一年一度”都是“老年节”的定语，为了避免定语太长，我们将“开展各种敬老活动”译成非限制性定语从句，由 which 引导，因为活动是“在节日那一天”开展，故用 on which。
11. **译文**：Since the Han Dynasty, swinging has gradually become a folk activity performed on the Tomb-Sweeping Day and some other festivals.
    分析：since 表示“自……起”，与现在完成时连用。“在……时进行的”是“民间活动”的定语，译成现在分词短语做后置定语。
12. **译文**：The shining points in Confucius' characteristics have been influencing the Chinese people, especially the Chinese intellectuals for thousands of years.
    分析：“几千年来”译成 for thousands of years，表示“几千年来至今一直持续”用现在完成进行时。
13. **译文**：At the beginning of 10th century, Beijing became the second capital of the Liao Dynasty. From then on, Beijing had been the capital of the Jin, Yuan, Ming and Qing Dynasties until 1911.
    分析：“10 世纪初”是过去的时间点，故第一句用了一般过去时。第二句描述的是“从过去的某个时间开始一直到过去的某个时间为止”的情况，故用

过去完成时。

14. **译文：**As the Spring Festival marks the start of a new year, people choose to eat jiaozi to express their best wishes for the New Year.

分析：此处的原因并不是直接的因果关系，主要是对主句的附加说明，故不用 because 来表达，而用 as。as 引出的原因，没有 because 强烈，且常位于句首。

15. **译文：**Our research has focused on a drug which is so powerful as to be able to change brain chemistry.

分析：“强大到足以……”可用 so… as to…“如此……以至于……”结构表达。

星期五　高分句式突破

一、it 做形式主语或形式宾语

为了使句子结构更加清晰对称，经常会用 it 代替不定式、动名词短语或从句在句中充当形式主语，而将真正的主语置于句子后面。当动名词或不定式充当动词宾语时，后面又跟有宾语补足语时，须用 it 充当形式宾语，而将真正的宾语（动名词或不定式）置于宾补之后。

关于 it 做形式主语的用法，有很多常见的句式：

1. It is done that…

It is believed that…　据认为……，人们相信……

It is considered that…　有人认为……

It is reported that…　据报道……

It is said that…　据说……

It is supposed that…　据推测……

It is told that…　据传……

It is well known that…　众所周知……

It is estimated that…　据估计……

It was pointed out that…　有人指出……

It is generally accepted that…　人们通常认为……，一般认为……，大家公认……

It is alleged that…　人们断言……

It is claimed that…　有人主张……，人们要求……

It cannot be denied that…　不可否认

It has been found that…　实践证明

It is predicted that…　据估计……，据预测……

It is suggested that…　有人建议……

2. It is +*adj.* +（of/ for sb.）to do sth. / that…

该句型中，it 为形式主语，真正的主语为后面的不定式或 that 从句。如：It is very impolite to speak very loudly in public. 在公共场合大声说话是很不礼貌的。

当形容词为 sb. 本身具有的性质、特点时，用 of，像 kind，nice，clever，foolish 等；当形容词是表示事物的性质时，则用 for，像 difficult，impossible，interesting 等。

如：It's silly of you to ask such questions. 你提出这样的问题，实在是太傻了。（表示“你真傻”）

It is necessary for us to sleep well. 睡眠好对我们来说是必需的。（表示“睡眠是必需的”）

3. It is necessary/ important/ advisable/… that…

与表示重要性、必要性、公平性等含义的形容词相连的名词性从句一般要采用虚拟语气，其谓语动词用 should do 的形式，should 常省略。常见的这类词语包括：important，necessary，essential，unfair，advisable，appropriate，desirable，imperative，impossible，incredible，obligatory，proper，vital，urgent 等。如：It is **imperative** that these safety rules **be obeyed** by everyone. 这些安全规则必须被所有人遵守。

4. It turns out to be/ that…

It turns out to be/ that…表示“结果是……，原来是……”，强调一种出乎意料的结果，后面可以接 to be…，也可以接 that 从句。

如：**It turned out to be** one of his old friends. 原来是他的一个老朋友。

It turned out that his brother paid the debt for him. 原来是他弟弟帮他还了债。

5. It goes without saying that…

It goes without saying that…表示“不言而喻，……”如：**It goes without saying that** in order to speak good English，we must first of all learn good pronunciation. 不言而喻，为了讲好英语，首先必须学好发音。

6. It appears/ seems that…

It appears/ seems that…表示“看来似乎……，好像……”，如：In fact，**it seems that** nearly every poet or philosopher in history has tried to define love. 事实上，似乎历史上几乎每一位诗人或哲学家都曾试图诠释爱。

例 1：汉语：如今，人们经常会看到年轻的女性不再遵守女性语言规范。

译文：Nowadays, it is commonly observed that young women are not conforming to the feminine linguistic ideal.

分析：本句按照英文习惯译成了被动语态，使用了形式主语 it。

例 2：汉语：乔治从机场给他的老板打电话，但接电话的却是他的助手。

译文：George called his boss from the airport but it turned out that his assistant answered the call.

分析："却是"表明"结果出乎意料"，故可用 it turns out that…句式表达。

二、强调句型

强调句型的基本结构是：It is/ was ＋强调部分＋ that/ who＋其他部分。汉译英时要注意根据所给汉语意思判断需要强调的部分，以及句子应该采用何种时态。如：**It is** because of the driver's carelessness **that** the car accident happened. 是因为司机的粗心才发生了车祸。

除了 it was… that…强调句型之外，在动词之前加上 do/ does/ did 也能起到强调作用。如：Many people think that physical exercise **does contribute** directly to a person's health. 许多人认为体育锻炼**的确**直接有助于身体健康。

区分 it 做形式主语/宾语和 it 用于强调句型：

it 常代替主语从句或宾语从句充当句子的形式主语，当从句由 that 引导时，结构就跟强调句型很像，容易混淆。区分的办法是将句子中的 It is/was… that 去掉，如果句子还成立，那么本句是强调句型，如不成立，即是 it 做形式主语/宾语。如：

It is a pity **that** I missed the party.（去掉后，a pity I missed the party 不是一个完整的句子，本句不是强调句型）

It is because of the accident **that** I missed the party.（去掉后，because of the accident I missed the party 句子成立，则本句是强调句）

例 1：汉语：在中国五千年的历史中，对华夏民族的性格、气质产生最大影响的人就算是孔子了。

译文：During 5,000 years' history of China, **it is Confucius who** has exerted the greatest impact on Chinese nation's characteristic and temperament.

分析：汉语原文中"就算是"提示，此处强调的是主语"孔子"，故我们将其译成强调句型。

例 2：汉语：直到失去的时候，人们才知道健康的价值。

译文：It is not until they lose it that people know the value of health.

分析：表示“直到……才”用 not… until 句型，从汉语意思上来看，此处是要强调时间状语，故我们可以用强调句型来表达。当强调 until 引导的时间状语时，要将 not 和 until…一起放到被强调的位置。

三、比较句式

汉译英中常涉及的比较句式和短语有：as… as 同级比较结构；Nothing is more… than（没什么比……更）；Just as…（正如，正像）；no more/less（…）than（不过，仅仅），more… than（与其……不如），compared with（和……相比），in contrast to（与……形成对比）等。如：Since my childhood I have found that nothing is **more** attractive to me **than** reading. 从童年时起我就发现没有什么比读书对我更有吸引力。

另外，表示“增加/上升/下降”等含义的句子，考生在翻译时也要注意，尤其要注意介词的使用。increase/decrease by 表示“增加/下降了多少”，increase/decrease to 表示“增加/下降到多少”。如：The production of the crop has **increased by** three times compared with that of last year. 和去年相比，该作物的产量已经增加了三倍。

注意下面几个比较句式的用法：

1. 表示倍数的句式

①句型 1：……倍数词 + as + 形容词原级 + as…。如：This room is three times as big as that one.

②句型 2：……倍数词 + the + 大小、高矮等性质名词 + of…。如：This room is three times the size of that one.

③句型 3：……倍数词 + 形容词比较级 + than…。如：This room is three times bigger than that one.

2. 同级比较

表示同级比较的结构主要有 as… as…，the same as…以及 such… as…结构。as… as…的否定结构为 not as/so… as…。做题时一是要注意根据上下文判断出比较含义，选用恰当的同级比较搭配连接词；二是要注意搞清比较结构中间的形容词或副词在句中所充当的成分，从而选择恰当的形容词或副词。

如：Tom is a student as good as John. / Tom is as good a student as John.

Tom does not have so/as many books as I have.

3. the + 比较级……，the + 比较级

“the + 比较级……，the + 比较级”结构表示“越……，就越……”。如：

The more he read, the more puzzled he felt.

使用这一句式时，可将句子还原为正常语序，搞清句子结构后再进行翻译。

4. no/ not + 比较级 + than

no more… than 意为“和……一样不”，than 前后都是否定的含义。

no less… than 意为“和……一样”，than 前后都是肯定的含义。

如：A is no more careful than B. A 和 B 都不仔细。

A is no less careful than B. A 和 B 都很仔细。

not more… than 意为“不多于，至多”。

not less… than 意为“不少于，至少”。

如：A is not more careful than B. A 不如 B 仔细。

A is not less careful than B. A 的仔细程度并不差于 B。

no more than 意为“仅仅，只不过”，后接名词或数量词。

no less than 意为“多达，竟有……之多”，相当于 as many as 或 as much as。

如：What he is saying is no more than a joke. 他说的只不过是个玩笑而已。

He won no less than 2, 000 dollars in the lottery. 他买彩票中了 2 000 元。(强调多)

例 1：汉语：我们比任何时候都更加坚信改革开放的政策是正确的。

译文：We are more convinced than ever that the reform and open-door policy is correct.

分析：所给汉语部分中的“比”提示，此处应用比较级来表达。

例 2：汉语：这种物质的反应速度是另外那种物质的三倍。

译文：This substance reacts three times as fast as the other one. / This substance reacts twice faster than the other one.

分析：表示倍数可以用同级比较结构，也可以用比较级结构，注意两种表达方式倍数词的不同：用同级比较，表示“是……的三倍”用 three times；用比较级结构，“是……的三倍”其实是“比……多两倍”的意思，故用 twice。

四、并列结构

英语中并列结构形式工整，表达有力。并列结构前后形式要求一致，经常由 but…，and…，either…or…，not only… but also，neither… nor…，not… but…，as well as，rather than 等短语连接。如：I was advised **either** to telephone **or** to write the hotel for reservations. 我得到的建议是或者打电话或者写信给该旅店订房。

例 1：汉语：赛龙舟**不仅**是一种体育和娱乐活动，它**更**能体现人们心中的集体主义和爱国主义精神。

译文：Dragon boat racing is **not only** a kind of sports and recreational activities, **but also** reflects the spirit of people's collectivism and patriotism.

分析：汉语中的并列结构“不仅……更”通过英文中的 not only… but also 连接。

例 2：汉语：故宫是中华民族的骄傲所在，**也**是全人类的珍贵文化遗产。

译文：The Palace Museum is an invaluable heritage of all human beings **as well as** the pride of the Chinese nation.

分析：汉语中的“也”通过英文短语 as well as 表达，连接并列的名词短语。

五、专题演练

1. **汉语**：据估计有超过三分之一的人口没有机会享受医疗保健服务。
   译文：_____
2. **汉语**：美国人每天摄入的蛋白质比他们实际需要的多两倍。
   译文：_____
3. **汉语**：据记载，中国人过春节已有四千多年的历史。
   译文：_____
4. **汉语**：从 2008 年起，端午节（Dragon Boat Festival）被正式列入国家法定假日，这既有助于弘扬传统文化，又能适应人们的需要。
   译文：_____
5. **汉语**：孟子（Mencius）认为人性本善，是社会的影响引发了道德的堕落。
   译文：_____
6. **汉语**：不是英雄创造了历史，而是历史创造了英雄。
   译文：_____
7. **汉语**：他们不仅闯进了他的办公室，而且撕碎了他的手稿。
   译文：_____
8. **汉语**：你的工作能力才是最重要的，而不是你来自哪里或者你是干什么的。
   译文：_____
9. **汉语**：你和他相处得越久，你就越会觉得他是一个值得信任的人。
   译文：_____
10. **汉语**：据报道，该工厂今年的产量与去年相比增加了 50%。
    译文：_____
11. **汉语**：房屋和建筑的破坏范围并不像原来担心的那么广泛，各村的情况不一样。

译文： _____

12. **汉语：**许多人没有意识到，正是这种经常性的体罚为虐待儿童打下了基础。

译文： _____

13. **汉语：**核科学的发展应该对人类有益而不是有害。

译文： _____

14. **汉语：**如果一家公司想要采用新的薪资结构，就必须确定一种评估工作的方法。

译文： _____

15. **汉语：**这样看来，不仅移动互联网有前途，实际上移动互联网就是未来。

译文： _____

参考答案

1. **译文：**It is estimated that over a third of the population have no access to the health service. / Over a third of the population is estimated to have no access to the health service.

   分析：表示“据估计”常用句式“It is estimated that…”。当句子不太复杂的时候，我们也可以不使用形式主语，而将 that 从句的主语提前，将从句的谓语改为不定式结构做主语补足语。

2. **译文：**Americans eat twice more protein than they actually need every day.

   分析：英语中表示“比……多多少倍”常用“倍数词 + more than…”的结构。

3. **译文：**It is recorded that the custom of celebrating the Spring Festival has lasted for more than 4,000 years.

   分析：“据记载”常译为被动句式“It is recorded that…”，其中 it 为形式主语，真正的主语为 that 从句。

4. **译文：**In 2008, Dragon Boat Festival was recognized as a public holiday for the first time, which can not only help spread our traditional culture but also meet the need of people.

   分析：原文中的“既……又……”为并列结构，译成 not only… but also 连接的并列谓语。

5. **译文：**Mencius believes that human nature is essentially good, and it is society's influence that causes the degradation of morality.

   分析：“是……引发了……”含有强调的意思，故我们将其译成强调句型。

6. **译文：**It is not heroes that make history but history that makes heroes.

   分析：“不是……而是”一般译成 not… but 连接的并列结构，此处有强调的含义，故我们将其译成强调句型。

7. **译文：**They not only broke into his office, but (also) tore up his manuscripts.

   分析：not only… but(also)用于连接并列结构，意为“不但，而且”，前后时

态保持一致，都使用了一般过去时。

8. **译文：**It's your ability to do the job that matters not where you come from or what you are.

   分析：所给汉语部分中的“才是”提示，该部分是要强调“工作能力重要”，所以应用强调句型来表达。

9. **译文：**The longer you have got along with him, the more you will find him a reliable man.

   分析：“the more…, the more…”表示“越……，就越……”，注意“the + 比较级”要位于两个分句的句首，具体用哪一个形容词或副词的比较级要根据句子的具体结构和含义而定。

10. **译文：**It is reported that the factory's output of this year increased by 50% compared with that of last year.

    分析：表示“据报道”常用句式“It is reported that…”。表示“增加了多少”用 increase by。

11. **译文：**The destruction of buildings and houses is not so widespread as was initially feared, and varies from village to village.

    分析：所给汉语部分中的“像”提示，此处应该使用比较结构 as… as…结构来表达。需要注意的是第二个 as 后面的部分。第二个 as 后面可接名词或代词，也可接句子，接句子时，如果主从句的主语一致，从句的主语常省略。此处根据句意要求，as 后应该接从句，从句的主语与主句的主语一致，它与“担心”之间应该是被动关系，故从句应使用被动语态，而从句是表示“原来的情况”，故应该用一般过去时。另外，否定时，常用 so 来代替第一个 as。

12. **译文：**Many people do not realize that it is the regular use of physical punishment that lays the groundwork for child abuse.

    分析：“正是”提示，此处应使用强调句型，强调句子的主语“经常性的体罚”。

13. **译文：**The nuclear science should be developed to benefit the people rather than harm them.

    分析：表示“而不是”通常用 rather than，该短语用于连接并列成分，此处连接的是并列的动词不定式短语，一起充当主语补足语，后面的动词不定式符号省略。

14. **译文：**If a firm wants to adopt a new wage and salary structure, it is essential that the firm decide on a method of job evaluation.

    分析：此处的“必须”可译为“it is essential that…”句型，该句型中 that 从句习惯于使用虚拟语气，谓语动词要用 should do 的形式，should 常省略。

15. **译文：**It appears that not only does the mobile web have a future, the mobile web

is the future.

分析：“这样看来……”通过“It appears that…”句式来表达。

星期六　一周复习效果检验

Test 1

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

少林功夫（Shaolin kungfu）是中国武术（martial art）中最有影响力的流派之一。自从中国采取经济改革和对外开放政策以来，中央和各地政府就对少林功夫给予支持，把它作为繁荣中国民族文化的一个重要方面。作为一种体育运动，少林功夫现在也在世界上广受欢迎。近几年，超过30多个国家和地区的人来到少林寺学习功夫。为了加快少林功夫的传播，中国郑州少林武术节创立，并每年举办。

Test 2

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

在西方，红色表达愤怒、危险和情绪的非理智爆发的含义，与之不同的是，红色在中国总是表达赞美的含义。热爱红色的传统可以追溯到古代人对火的崇敬，人们认为火总是能给予人们温暖和安全。所以人们喜欢用红色的东西来装饰房子，在新年的时候会在门上贴红色“福”字。新娘在结婚的时候会穿传统的红色结婚礼服（虽然受西方风俗的影响，她可能会在庆典刚开始的时候穿白色婚纱）。

Test 3

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

泰山，海拔 1 545 米，绝不是中国最高山峰，但是由于其在中国东部的地理位置，它成为最先看到日出的山峰之一。在 3 000 年的时间里，帝王、诗人、学者纷纷到泰山祭神，留下了数百首题词和碑碣（stone tablet）。中国所有的山峰中，泰山是最能与中国历史相互交织的。文化名胜和自然景观很好地融合在这座大山中。泰山被誉为“世界闻名的历史和文化宝库”，它对那些想在欣赏美景的同时了解中国文化的人来说是理想之地。

Test 4

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国政府已经郑重承诺将对其户籍管理制度（household registration system）进行改革。新的户籍管理制度将具有三大特色。第一，城镇和农村将会实施同样的户籍管理制度。第二，进行迁移的居民需要有合法稳定的住所和工作。第三，新的户籍管理制度将以居民大多数时间居住的住所为依据。本轮户籍制度改革旨在帮助城市外来务工人员取得合法户籍身份并吸引更多人迁移入城市。政府还将尽力提升公共服务水平，包括教育、医疗、长期居民社保项目。

Test 5

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

在世界各国，马在人类历史上都扮演着举足轻重的角色。数千年来，马被用作运输工具、战争武器以及犁地农具。但其实，马不仅仅是一种交通工具，其地位要远超汽车、坦克和拖拉机。马在历史上的重要性可以从如今仍在使用

的英文谚语中窥得一斑。例如，人们仍会说“hold your horses”，来表示“别着急，慢点”。“马”在汉语成语中也很常见，例如，喻意“人才”的“千里马”。马是活力、忠诚、毅力和智慧的象征，因此传说属马之人也具备这些优良品质。

Test 6

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

孔子（Confucius）是中国历史上影响最大、最受尊重的哲学家。从公元前100年到20世纪早期，孔子的理念是唯一一种极大影响中国社会的思想。孔子本人从未写下任何箴言（teachings）。如果不是他的弟子（disciple）不辞劳苦记下他的谈话和言论，今天孔子将是无名之辈。孔子的言论在中国广为流传时，因其言论包含正确的哲理，人们接受了他的言论，历朝历代都将其确立为官方思想。儒家思想影响了中国的方方面面，包括教育、政府、公共和个人看法以及礼节。

Test 7

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

庙会（temple fair）是中国的一种传统民俗活动。有传说认为，庙会源于古人祭祀土地神（Village God），后来渐渐演变成商品交易市场和文化表演场所。庙会通常在庙里或寺庙附近的露天场地举行，时间常在节日或特定的日子。有些庙会只在春节举行。尽管不同地区的庙会时间不同，但是内容相似。农民和商人出售自己的农产品、玉器、花鸟鱼虫等；工匠摆摊展示并出售手工艺品；民间艺术家搭建舞台表演歌舞；普通民众来庙会购买商品、观看表演并品尝特色小吃。

Test 8

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中医（traditional Chinese medicine）起源于6 000多年前的神农氏时代，这位著名的中国古代药王所生活的时代被认为是中医史上的萌芽阶段（embryo stage）。中医学在长期的发展过程中，逐渐形成了一整套医学原则和观点。首先，中医认为“万物人为贵”。中医将“救死扶伤”视为职业道德规范。第二，中医注重无病防病，强调以食补（food treatment）来延缓衰老，减少疾病。第三，中医理论认为，社会环境与自然环境相互作用、互为依存，人的身心也是一种相互作用、互为依存的关系。

参考答案

Test 1

①少林功夫（Shaolin kungfu）是中国武术（martial art）中最有影响力的流派之一。②自从中国采取经济改革和对外开放政策以来，中央和各地政府就对少林功夫给予支持，把它作为繁荣中国民族文化的一个重要方面。③作为一种体育运动，少林功夫现在也在世界上广受欢迎。④近几年，超过30多个国家和地区的人来到少林寺学习功夫。⑤为了加快少林功夫的传播，	①Shaolin kungfu is one of the most influential genres of Chinese martial art. ②Since China adopted the policy of economic reform and opening-up to the outside world, the central and local governments have been giving support to the Shaolin kungfu, regarding it as an important aspect for prospering the national culture of China. ③As a physical exercise, the Shaolin kungfu is also being extensively popularized in the world. ④In the recent years people from more than 30 countries and regions have come to the Shaolin Temple to get Kungfu training. ⑤With a view to accelerating

中国郑州少林武术节成立，并每年举办。	the spreading of the Shaolin kungfu, the China Zhengzhou Shaolin Wushu Festival was established and was to be observed annually.

主题：中国传统文化——少林功夫

难点及词汇注释：

句①“流派”可译为“genre”。

句②“采取……政策”可译为“adopt the policy of…”；“对外开放”可译为“opening-up to the outside world”。“把它作为……”在句中做伴随状语，可译为现在分词短语 regarding it as…；“繁荣……”可译为“prosper…”。

句③“为了做……”可译为“with a view to doing sth.”；“加快……的传播”可译为“accelerate the spreading of…”；“成立”可译为“establish”；“举办”可译为 observe。

Test 2

①在西方，红色表达愤怒、危险和情绪的非理智爆发的含义，与之不同的是，红色在中国总是表达赞美的含义。②热爱红色的传统可以追溯到古代人对火的崇敬，人们认为火总是能给予人们温暖和安全。③所以人们喜欢用红色的东西来装饰房子，在新年的时候会在门上贴红色“福”字。④新娘在结婚的时候会穿传统的红色结婚礼服（虽然受西方风俗的影响，她可能会在庆典刚开始的时候穿白色婚纱）。	①Unlike the connotation of red to anger, danger and the irrational outburst of emotions in the West, the red always carries commendatory implications in China. ② Red-loving customs can be traced back to the ancient worship of the fire, which always shelters people with warmth and safety. ③ Therefore, the Chinese people enjoy decorating their houses with something red, and post red character “福（fu）” on the door during the Spring Festival. ④ The bride wears a traditional Chinese wedding dress in red on her wedding day (though she would wear white wedding dress at the beginning of the celebration due to the influence of the Western customs).

主题：中国传统文化——“红色”的含义

难点及词汇注释：

句①“与之不同”提示，前后两个句子之间存在对比。分析句意可知，本句的重点在后半句，所以可将前半句译为状语 Unlike…。“表达……的含义”可译为“the connotation of… to…”。为了使句子表达更加多样化，“表达赞美的含义”可译为“carry commendatory implications”。

句②“追溯到”可译为“be traced back to…”；“对……的崇敬”可译为“worship of…”。
句③“红色的东西”可译为“something red”。

Test 3

①泰山，海拔 1 545 米，绝不是中国最高山峰，但是由于其在中国东部的地理位置，它成为最先看到日出的山峰之一。②在 3 000 年的时间里，帝王、诗人、学者纷纷到泰山祭神，留下了数百首题词和碑碣（stone tablet）。③中国所有的山峰中，泰山是最能与中国历史相互交织的。④文化名胜和自然景观很好地融合在这座大山中。⑤泰山被誉为“世界闻名的历史和文化宝库”，它对那些想在欣赏美景的同时了解中国文化的人来说是理想之地。	①Standing 1, 545 meters above sea level, Mount Taishan is by no means the tallest in China, but it is among the first to see the sunrise because of its geographical location in East China. ②During a 3, 000-year span, emperors, poets and scholars made visits to Mount Taishan to pray to the gods, leaving behind hundreds of inscriptions and stone tablets. ③Among the mountains of China, Mount Taishan is the most intertwined with Chinese history. ④Cultural interests and natural landscapes are well integrated into the mountain. ⑤Described as “a world-renowned treasure house of history and culture”, Mount Taishan is ideal for people who want to learn about Chinese history while enjoying beautiful landscapes.

主题：中国景观——泰山

难点及词汇注释：

句①“海拔 1 545 米”可译为状语，修饰“泰山”；“绝不”可译为“by no means”；为了使句子结构更加清晰，可将原因状语“由于其在中国东部的地理位置”置于句末。

句②根据句意，“祭神”表示目的，可译为“to pray to the gods”；“留下了……”在句中做伴随状语，可译为现在分词短语。“题词”可译为“inscriptions”。

句③“中国所有山峰中”表示范围，注意 mountain 应用复数形式。“相互交织的”可译为“intertwined”。

句④“融合在”可译为“be integrated into”。

句⑤“宝库”可译为“treasure house”。“在……的同时”可用 while 来连接句子。因为“欣赏”和“了解”的主语一致，所以 while 后可省略主语，直接跟现在分词短语即可。

Test 4

①中国政府已经郑重承诺将对其户籍管理制度(household registration system)进行改革。②新的户籍管理制度将具有三大特色。③第一，城镇和农村将会实施同样的户籍管理制度。④第二，进行迁移的居民需要有合法稳定的住所和工作。⑤第三，新的户籍管理制度将以居民大多数时间居住的住所为依据。⑥本轮户籍制度改革旨在帮助城市外来务工人员取得合法户籍身份并吸引更多人迁移入城市。⑦政府还将尽力提升公共服务，包括教育、医疗和长期居民社保项目。	① Chinese government has vowed to reform its household registration system. ②The new system will have three key features. ③ Firstly, the same system will be adopted in urban and rural areas. ④ Secondly, the residents who want to migrate are required to have legal and stable homes and jobs. ⑤ Thirdly, the new system will be based on where they live for most of the time. ⑥This round of reforms aims to help migrant workers in cities get legal registration and attract more people to the cities. ⑦ The government will also make efforts to boost public service, including education, medical treatment, and social security programs for long-term dwellers.

主题：中国社会发展——户籍制度改革

难点及词汇注释：

句①中，“郑重承诺做某事”可以译成“vow to do…/ commit to do…”结构，也可以译成 make the commitment to do…结构。

句③中，根据含义，本句不强调施动者“城镇和农村”，按照英语习惯，我们将其译成了被动结构。

句④中，此处的“需要”强调的是官方的一种“要求”，故我们用 require 的被动结构即 be required to do 结构表达。

句⑤中，“以……为依据”用短语 be based on 表达；“居住的住所”用宾语从句 where they live 表达。

句⑥中，“旨在帮助”译成 aim to help 结构；“外来务工人员”的地道表达是 migrant workers。

句⑦中，“包括……”对“公共服务”进行举例说明，用介词 including 表达。

Test 5

①在世界各国，马在人类历史上都扮演着举足轻重的角色。②数千年来，马被用作运输工具、战争武器以及犁地农具。③但其实，马不仅仅是一种交通工具，其地位要远超汽车、坦克和拖拉机。④马在历史上的重要性可以从如今仍在使用的英文谚语中窥得一斑。⑤例如，人们仍会说“hold your horses”，来表示“别着急，慢点”。⑥“马”在汉语成语中也很常见，例如，喻意“人才”的“千里马”。⑦马是活力、忠诚、毅力和智慧的象征，因此传说属马之人也具备这些优良品质。	①The horse has played an important role throughout human history all over the world. ②Horses were used for thousands of years as a means of transport, a weapon of war and a plough of fields, but the horse was more than just a vehicle-it had more character than a car, a tank or a tractor. ③The significance of horses in the past is reflected in idioms still used in English today. ④For example, people still say “hold your horses” to mean “slow down”. ⑤The horse also appears in many Chinese idioms, such as “qianlima”, which means a talented person. ⑥Since the horse is honored as a symbol of vigor, loyalty, persistence and intelligence, people born in the Year of the Horse are said to share such good qualities.

主题：中西文化——“马”在中外历史上的重要性

难点及词汇注释：

句①“在人类历史上都……”提示，此处应使用现在完成时，表示动作发生于过去，一直持续到现在。

句②③主语一致，存在转折关系，可将其合译为一句话。“运输工具”“战争武器”“犁地农具”为并列成分，在翻译时也应注意结构的对应。“其地位……”是对“马不仅仅是一种交通工具”的解释说明，可用破折号连接，表示解释说明的作用。

句④“如今仍在使用的”可译为过去分词短语，做后置定语，修饰“英文谚语”。

句⑤“来表示……”在句中做目的状语；“别着急，慢点”可译为“slow down”。

句⑥“喻意‘人才’的‘千里马’”是指“在汉语中，通常用‘千里马’来比喻‘人才’”，可译为“qianlima, which means a talented person”。

句⑦“属马之人”是指“在马年出生的人”，可译为“people born in the Year of the Horse”。

Test 6

①孔子（Confucius）是中国历史上影响最大、最受尊重的哲学家。②从公元前100年到20世纪早期，孔子的理念是唯一一种极大影响中国社会的思想。③孔子本人从未写下任何箴言（teachings）。④如果不是他的弟子（disciple）不辞劳苦记下他的谈话和言论，今天孔子将是无名之辈。⑤孔子的言论在中国广为流传时，因其言论包含正确的哲理，人们接受了他的言论，历朝历代都将其确立为官方思想。⑥儒家思想影响了中国的方方面面，包括教育、政府、公共和个人看法以及礼节。	①Confucius is the most influential and respected philosopher in Chinese history. ②His thoughts have the most powerful and sole influence on Chinese society from around 100 B. C. till the early 20th century. ③Confucius never wrote down any of his own teachings. ④But for his disciples who took the trouble to record his conversations and discourses, Confucius would have been a nobody today. ⑤People accepted the teachings of Confucius for their sound principles when they were widespread across China, and all the successive dynasties made them the official state ideology. ⑥Confucianism then affected everything in China including education, government, public and private attitudes, and etiquette.

主题：中国传统文化——孔子

难点及词汇注释：

句②“影响……”可译为名词，“唯一”和“极大”为并列定语，修饰“影响”。

句③“写下”可译为“write down”。

句④“如果不是……”表达虚拟语气，可译为“But for…”，主句使用将来完成时 would have been…。“不辞劳苦”可译为“take the trouble to…”。

句⑤“因其言论包含正确的哲理”虽然可译为原因状语从句，但这样使句子结构不明了，可用 for 引导的原因状语来表达。“正确的哲理”可译为“sound principles”。“官方思想”可译为“official state ideology”。

句⑥“方方面面”可用“everything”来表达，也可译为“every aspect”。

Test 7

①庙会（temple fair）是中国的一种传统民俗活动。②有传说认为，庙会源于古人祭祀土地神（Village God），后来渐渐演变成商品交易市场和文化表演场所。③庙会通常在庙里或寺庙附近的露天场地举行，时间常在节日或特定的日子。④有些庙会只在春节举行。⑤尽管不同地区的庙会时间不同，但是内容相似。⑥农民和商人出售自己的农产品、玉器、花鸟鱼虫等；工匠摆摊展示并出售手工艺品；民间艺术家搭建舞台表演歌舞；普通民众来庙会购买商品、观看表演以及品尝特色小吃。	① The temple fair is a traditional folk activity in China. ② Legend has it that it originated in ancient times when people offered sacrifices to the Village God, which later gradually evolved into a marketplace for people to exchange products and a place for cultural performance. ③ The temple fairs, usually on the open ground or near a temple, are held on festivals or special days. ④Some are held only during the Spring Festival. ⑤Although different places hold their temple fairs on various dates, the contents are similar. ⑥ Farmers and merchants sell their farm produce, jade articles, flowers, birds and fish, etc. ; craftsmen set up their stalls to show and sell their handicrafts; folk artists establish a stage for singing and dancing; ordinary people come to the temple fair to buy goods, watch the performances and eat special snacks.

主题：中国传统文化——庙会

难点及词汇注释：

句②“有传说认为”可译为固定句型“Legend has it that…”，此类句型是英语中的常用表达，应着重记忆。“祭祀”可译为“offer sacrifices to…”。“后来渐渐演变成……”可译为 which 引导的定语从句，修饰“庙会”。

句③“通常在……举行”可译为地点状语 on…。

句⑤“虽然……但是”提示，本句中包含让步状语从句，可用 although 引导。

句⑥ 包含四个分句，由分号连接，可参照这一结构进行翻译。该句表达的是一种经常性的动作，所以句子应使用一般现在时态。“摆摊”可译为“set up stalls”。

Test 8

①中医（traditional Chinese medicine）起源于6 000 多年前的神农氏时代，这位著名的中国古代药王所生活的时代被认为是中医史上的萌芽阶段（embryo stage）。②中医学在长期的发展过程中，逐渐形成了一整套医学原则和观点。③首先，中医认为“万物人为贵”。④中医将“救死扶伤”视为职业道德规范。⑤第二，中医注重无病防病，强调以食补（food treatment）来延缓衰老，减少疾病。⑥第三，中医理论认为，社会环境与自然环境相互作用、互为依存，人的身心也是一种相互作用、互为依存的关系。	①Traditional Chinese medicine（TCM）originated from Shennong, the famous king of medicine in ancient China who lived about 6,000 years ago. ②The time Shennong lived is considered to be the embryo stage of the development of TCM. ③During its long process of development, TCM has gradually developed a set of medical principles and concepts. ④First, it believes that “nothing is more important than a human life”. ⑤It regards “healing the wounded and rescuing the dying” as its professional ethics. ⑥Second, it pays attention to the early prevention of diseases, advocating the food treatment to slow down aging and reduce diseases. ⑦Third, in the TCM theory, the relationship between social and natural environment, as well as the relationship between human body and spirit, is of mutual influence and interdependence.

主题：中国传统文化——中医

难点及词汇注释：

句① 句子较长，应根据句意进行整合以及拆分。“这位著名的中国药王”是对“神农氏”的补充说明，可译为定语从句，修饰“神农氏”。“神农所生活的时代被认为是中医史上的萌芽阶段”，可译为独立的句子。

句②“一整套”可译为“a set of”；“在长期的发展过程中”提示，本句应使用现在完成时。

句③“万物人为贵”表达的意思是“没有什么比人更重要”，可译为“nothing is more important than a human life”。

句④“职业道德规范”可译为“professional ethics”；“救死扶伤”可译为“heal the wounded and rescue the dying”。

句⑤“强调……”是对其前内容的进一步说明，可译为现在分词短语advocating…，做伴随状语。

句⑥“相互作用、互为依存”的主语分别为“社会环境与自然环境”“人的身心”，在翻译时可将主语用 and 或 as well as 连接。“相互作用”可译为“mutual influence”。

第二周

预测翻译热点，进行实战演练

一、热点演练 40 篇

热点演练 1

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国梦不仅引领中国未来发展的战略蓝图，而且反映了中国在新时代的对外政策，对世界有着深远的影响。首先，中国梦是和平的梦想。和平和发展，反映了时代的主题，是取得国家繁荣的手段，确保人民的安康。其次，中国梦是发展的梦想。它从来不以征服、超过或取代任何人为目标，相反它旨在使中国人民获得益处，推进全球共同发展。中国梦不仅有益于中国人民，而且对世界有益。中国梦是为了与世界梦共享它的目标和成果。

热点演练 2

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

过去，几代人经常居住在同一屋檐下，经常性的聚会十分常见。一名家庭成员帮助另一名家庭成员摆脱困境，家庭成员间因为有共同经历、友谊和价值观而内在地联系在一起。家庭成员也经常表现出较高水平的自力更生。现在，家庭成员间经常彼此住得很远，交流以及对消息或担忧的事情的分享变得不那么频繁。过去表兄弟姐妹之间会是最好的朋友，而现在他们经常几乎不认识彼此。过去长辈经常是顾问和朋友，但是今天他们只不过是“陌生人”，家庭价值观和归属感遭到重挫。

热点演练 3

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

从理性角度来说，我们理解阅读是所有教育的基石，因而也是知识经济必要的支撑（underpinning）。所以阅读理所当然应当是公共政策的一部分。但可能更重要的是，它作为通向个人发展和幸福旅程的起点时扮演的感性角色。与网络相比，书籍在提升我们的情感、想象力和历史观方面更胜一筹。书籍也有助于创建和增强我们的自我感。如果阅读能力显著下降，人类的天性也会相应发生变化。如果我们将来不再自我反省、不再有创造性的思维，人类势必会消亡。

热点演练 4

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

“和谐”是中国文化的核心，也是中国人对世界和宇宙观点的核心。在古代中国，政治机构就对人类与自然之间的和谐概念作出了表达。现在，中央提出创建和谐社会的概念，这标志着长久以来完全注重人与人之间以及人与社会之间关系的做法发生了转变。人们认为，人与自然之间的关系会影响人与人以及人与社会之间的关系。环境如果被严重破坏，人们的生活条件就会恶化，经济增长就会超出资源和能源供应。在这种情况下，很难建立和谐社会。

热点演练 5

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国的十二生肖（zodiac）各有优缺点。无可争议最受人们喜爱的生肖当属龙、虎和马，因为根据中国的民间说法，它们往往会带来成功。即便是老鼠和蛇都被认为是幸运的。但就一些对生肖的解读而言，羊的优点却寥寥无几。羊年出生者通常被认为是被动、忠诚、慷慨和善良的人。这些美德在理想的世界里或许是美好的，但在“狗咬狗”的现实世界中却没什么用途。虽然这是一个不公平的、过时了的迷信，但是对很多人而言，这是一种便于用来解释不可预知世界的方法。

热点演练 6

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

技术给我们带来了很多挑战的同时，也为我们提供了多种解决方案。电子书、智能手机、平板电脑这些设备让你在手中托起整个图书馆，这是一个绝好的机遇。出版商需要利用每一种新兴技术把长期阅读融入到我们的文化中。我们作为读者，应该把注意力集中在信息本身，而不该为传播载体而烦恼。我们应该忽视平台而专注于内容。出版商也要更好地利用互联网，为读者也包括潜在的读者提供每年值得看的新书信息，让他们重新熟识丰富多彩的传统文学精粹。

热点演练 7

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

京杭大运河（Beijing-Hangzhou Grand Canal）将中国南北连在一起，是14个世纪以来历朝历代的生命线。它承载着物品和观念，往来于北方政治中心和南方经济心脏地区之间。最早的运河体系成形于隋朝。隋朝皇帝杨广需要从富饶的长江地区（Yangtze region）向北运输粮食来养活皇室和军队。所以这位皇帝就迫使大量工人修建这条连接洛阳与北京和杭州的运河。随着时间的发展，

该运河对沿岸 18 个城市的价值从物流转变为了文化和旅游业。

热点演练 8

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

时尚界认为，中山装（Zhongshan suit）代表男性的地位。20 世纪 20 年代西方文化传入中国时，中山装开始出现。外国人认为中山装是政治的象征，因为它具有典型的中国内涵。1978 年改革开放后，中国人民在服饰方面有了更多的选择，西式服装开始流行。随着外国时尚品牌涌入中国市场，越来越少的中国人对中山装感兴趣。但是，过去几年中山装开始复兴。许多年轻的设计师想使中山装重新流行起来。现代中山装在商业场合会变得非常流行，因为看起来很正式，还代表了中国的形象。

热点演练 9

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国想要更绿色的城市和更洁净的天空，还有很长的路要走。根据世界银行的报道，全世界 20 个空气最糟糕的城市中有 16 个都在中国。充满雾霾的城市到处都是重工业、金属冶炼厂和燃煤发电厂。煤炭是中国空气污染的头号来源，中国 80% 的电和 70% 的能源都来自煤炭。随着汽车拥有量和交通拥堵的持续增长，汽车成为中国城市中另一个主要的空气污染源。煤炭和汽车的排放物是造成威胁健康的悬浮颗粒（suspended particulates）的主要成因，仅次于建筑尘埃和沙尘暴。

热点演练 10

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国人种植和使用竹子的历史可以追溯到 7000 年前。早在商朝，竹子就在古代中国人的日常生活中得到广泛使用。它被用来做食物、服装、住房、交通、音乐器材，甚至是武器。在东汉发明纸以前，竹条就被当作最重要的书写介质，比其他材料，比如丝织物、动物皮毛和石块应用更广泛。中国首批书籍就是用竹子串起来的。竹子作为书写介质的作用帮助我们保留了历史记录和传统中国文化。

热点演练 11

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

过去二十年来中国人的饮食习惯发生了很大的变化。上世纪八十年代末，中国的孩子们开始接触西餐。与他们以往的饮食——米多、蔬菜多、肉类少——不同，一个鸡腿让他们瞬间摄入了大量蛋白质。随之而来的是牛奶、冰激凌以及其他新式奶制品。一同出现的还有更甜的新式冷饮——中国人传统上主要喝热饮，因为他们认为冷饮伤身。最后，就连茶——这个曾经诱惑了无数西方人的中式饮料——都因咖啡的到来而面临某种程度的挑战。

热点演练 12

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

没有什么能比中国食物更具有中国味道。在中国以外的世界各地，分布着数以百万计的中式餐馆。然而，却没有几个中国人意识到中国食物的哲学和政治价值。中国政府也忽视了通过食物营造自身的“软实力”。它还没有意识到在“软实力”竞争时代，食物的价值和本国烹饪的潜力。尽管官方在海外的宣传不

力，民间无心插柳式的美食宣传的收效却不错。一个能够提供如此美食的国家，是不会太差劲的。

热点演练 13

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

近几年，人们谈论中国时的一个关键词是经济。经济增长带来了文化繁荣，使中国将更多的资源用于提升文学。同时，随着经济增长，世界对中国其他方面的兴趣也有所增加。但是，现阶段，中国和西方之间的双向文化交流程度并不高。中国所熟知的西方作家和艺术家比西方人知道的中国作家和艺术家多得多。文学能够通往一个国家的灵魂。外国人阅读更多中国文学作品肯定会向其他国家的人们展示中国人的精神世界，促进了解。

热点演练 14

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

有人认为，手机、电子邮件和网络帖子等科技在为我们沟通提供了前所未有的便利的同时，也使得我们疏远了身边的人。但是，将此归咎于手机科技是不公平的。毕竟是这些通讯设备的使用者正在回避人际交往。我们借助这些设备，将自己隐藏起来，不让他人看到。短信或电话或许已成为了我们回避与他人进行眼神交流等接触方式的借口。我们只有相互理解才能加强对话交流。仅仅是丢弃这些移动设备并非解决之道。

热点演练 15

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

在过去 10 年间，音乐选秀节目（music talent show）已成为最为家喻户晓的电视娱乐节目之一。除了娱乐大众之外，这些节目还反映出当今中国在步入现代化进程中文化与社会的转型。新生代年轻人正改变着自己对于施展才艺的态度，从而推动了这股“选秀潮”。由于传统价值观中的谦逊态度，中国人往往很内向、不愿展现才华。但近几十年来，越来越多的中国年轻人自发地施展才艺，突出个性与独特魅力。

热点演练 16

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

长久以来，中国被称为“自行车王国”仅仅是因为骑自行车的人口众多。1995 年中国的自行车产量达到 4474 万辆。然而，由于市场需求下降，这一数据在随后几年中直线下降，到 2000 年时只有 2000 万辆。近年来，自行车再一次受到人们欢迎。由于当下人们正在推崇更健康的生活方式，自行车也就同时成为人们四处奔走的工具。如今的自行车功能更加齐全，更为专业，因此，现在单车爱好者们就可以走得更远。

热点演练 17

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

近年来，中国许多年轻的大学毕业生都投身“公务员热潮”（civil service mania）之中，希望自己不辞辛苦地一次次参加国考，最终能换来一个收入可观、受人尊敬的“铁饭碗”。这种现象反映出，由于市场环境与经济环境的波动，人们缺乏安全感。日益激烈的社会竞争，往往会促使人们寻求安稳。房价

与医疗支出不断攀升，而公务员的福利待遇可以解决这些棘手难题。但现在政府已有意逐步取消公务员在医疗及住房方面所享有的特权。

热点演练 18

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

在中国，几乎所有的发展中城市都面临着城市化（urbanization）的进程。这一趋势有望提升国内年轻人的就业前景。新兴城市的建筑行业急需设计师以及工程师，因此房地产、城市规划以及建筑行业的职业发展前景十分可观。公共交通也是城市化进程中受益最大的行业之一。这一领域的工程师和设计师发挥着重要作用。还有一些领域也在不断扩张，比如环境保护。污染问题成为许多城市化地区的一块心病。在这种情况下，环保行业前景可观。中国需要推动可持续发展。

热点演练 19

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

除了从国外流入的非法垃圾，人们也越来越关心如何处理中国国内日益严重的城市垃圾问题。随着城市化的加速以及中国城市的持续扩大，垃圾填埋场（landfill sites）很快就被填满，而这一问题正越来越接近城市中心区域。现在越来越多的城市开始使用更干净、更现代的垃圾处理方式。垃圾在 800—1000 度的极高温环境下被碾碎并焚烧（incinerate）。反复焚烧后，垃圾就能转变成制造水泥的原材料。但是问题的真正解决还是需要我们所有人减少垃圾的产生。

热点演练 20

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

近年来，越来越多的中国年轻人选择“裸婚”（naked marriage）。这个术语专指那些零资产、婚礼接近零开销的恋人们。“裸婚”和中国现有婚俗形成了鲜明对比。在中国传统婚俗中，双方父母会帮自己子女的婚姻生活打好物质基础。中国人的理想生活方式就是安居乐业。没有经济基础的婚姻是不稳固的。但虽然传统婚姻价值观仍在中国人心中根深蒂固，越来越多的人开始接受“裸婚”，这表明青年一代对于婚姻持更加开放的态度。

热点演练 21

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

按照儒学（Confucian）观点，子女照顾年老父母是天经地义的。但在 21 世纪的中国，情况已经变得大为不同。由于大多数成年人都有全职工作，加上独生子女政策引发的人口问题（demographic issues），中国给研究人口老龄化所引发的社会与经济挑战的人提供了一个极有吸引力的例子。由于拥有 14 亿人口，中国的部分问题与其规模有关，但独生子女政策又放大了这种人口老龄化趋势。还有一个主要问题是中国的经济状况。中国目前还不是富国，整个社会体系并未准备好迎接人口老龄化。

热点演练 22

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

一年一度的全球最大规模的人员流动，已将数亿中国人送回家乡欢度春节（Lunar New Year）。越来越多外出务工的人选择驾车回家参加一年中最重要的团

圆饭这一现象，是中国拥有全球最大汽车市场的一个例证。事实上，不断发展的中国高速铁路网已将过去需要持续几天的旅程缩短至几个小时；此外，由中央政府制定价格的体制也意味着油价的下跌并未被反馈到中国的加油站。然而，驾车回家的现象似乎并未受到这两大因素的影响。相反，汽车会成为衣锦还乡的象征。

热点演练 23

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国是唯一一个3000多年都用一种语言进行文学创作的国家，这主要是由书面语言本身的性质决定的。中国有非常古老、丰富的文学、戏剧和视觉艺术传统。早期的著作一般源自哲学或宗教文章，如孔子（Confucius）和老子（Lao Tzu）的作品。除了哲学、宗教和历史作品外，中国很早就有诗歌、小说和戏剧。唐朝时期，诗歌作为文学形式的地位得以确立。戏剧是另一种古老且重要的文学形式。中国的戏剧通常结合了地方语言、音乐和歌曲，因此深受老百姓欢迎。

热点演练 24

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

儒家学派（Confucianism）认为婚姻对家庭和社会都有重大意义。对于家庭，婚姻能将不同姓氏的家庭聚在一起，延续相关家族（clan）的家庭生活。对于社会，夫妻是人口的基本单位，婚姻有时能影响到国家的政治稳定和国际关系。从儒家思想来看，婚姻的目的之一是培养美德。一夫一妻制（monogamy）的观念根深蒂固，中国人明白婚姻应该是建立在爱情的基础上。出于孝（filial piety）与礼（propriety）的观念，婚姻成了昂贵的仪式，被认为仅次于葬礼。聘媒人（matchmaker）可以确保丈夫和妻子彼此般配，但主要是为了家庭的最大利益。

热点演练 25

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

唐朝是中国历史上统一时间最长、国力最强盛的朝代之一。唐朝全盛时期在文化、科技、政治、经济、外交等方面都取得了很高的成就。中国历史上有大量的科技发明，四大发明中有两个，即火药和活字印刷（movable-type printing），都诞生于唐朝。这一时期文学发展达到高峰，其中诗歌最为兴盛。唐诗至今仍家喻户晓。海外的华侨华人往往称自己是“唐人”，他们聚居的地方便被称为“唐人街”。每逢春节，这里都要耍龙灯（dragon-lantern show）、舞狮子，仍然保留着中国的传统风俗。

热点演练 26

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

尽管中国古代神话（mythology）没有十分完整的情节，神话人物也没有系统的家谱（genealogy），但它们却有着鲜明的东方文化特色，其中尤为显著的是它的尚德精神（the spirit of esteeming virtue）。这种尚德精神在与西方神话特别是希腊神话比较时，显得更加突出。在西方神话尤其是希腊神话中，对神的褒贬标准多以智慧、力量为准则，而中国古代神话对神的褒贬则多以道德为准绳。这种思维方式深植于中国的文化之中。几千年来，这种尚德精神影响着人们对历史人物的品评与现实人物的期望。

热点演练 27

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

景泰蓝（Jingtailan）艺术是雕刻、绘画和塑瓷（porcelain making）的独特融合。据说景泰蓝于元朝时诞生于北京。现存最古老的景泰蓝就造于元朝，但是景泰蓝在明朝时经历了巨大的变革。那时，人们认为景泰蓝最为复杂。然而，由于炼铜技术（copper-melting techniques）的伟大发明，景泰蓝于清朝时达到顶峰。用景泰蓝能够制成大件物品，如花瓶、其他器皿（utensil）和装饰品，也能制成小物品，如耳环、手镯或筷子。新中国成立以来，涌现出了很多新品种的景泰蓝，在国内外享有很高的声誉。

热点演练 28

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

每年的农历九月初九是中国的传统节日——重阳节（the Double Ninth Festival）。重阳节有 2000 多年的历史，早在唐朝时期就正式被定为民间节日。皇帝和百姓都根据礼仪和风俗庆祝重阳节。随着时间的流逝，重阳节逐渐形成一些庆祝习俗，如出游、登高、插茱萸（cornel）。重阳节那天，全家人通常一起庆祝节日，而离家的人则会倍加思乡。汉族的传统观念认为，数字 9 代表健康长寿，因此中国政府于 1989 年将农历九月初九定为“老人节”。

热点演练 29

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国人对玉（jade）一向有着特殊的尊爱之情，从而延伸发展出一种优秀而古老的玉石文化。作为配饰供人赏玩是玉器的原始功能之一，也是玉器最广泛的一种用途。玉器作为一种文物，它也是历史的见证，有着不可复制的唯一性，

更为当今世人所器重。玉器从一种美化生活的装饰品，到简单的生产工具，然后被融入各种礼节内容，被人格化、道德化，继而被看成是财富的象征、宗教图腾（totem）的崇拜……这些无不反映出中国传统文化和中华民族爱玉的心理。

热点演练 30

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国悠久的历史、广袤的国土、与世界各国和海外文化的广泛接触，孕育了中餐的独特艺术。中国有一句古话至今还广为流传，叫作“民以食为天”。几千年的推陈出新和不断累积，使中餐受到越来越多的海外人士的青睐，成了我国对外文化交流的一个友好使者。现代中国已享有“烹饪王国”之美誉。精致的烹调艺术盛行全球，中餐烹饪已名列世界顶尖菜系（culinary style）之林。

热点演练 31

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国人重团圆、重亲情、讲孝道（filial piety），并强调家庭的和睦。中国人最期望的就是“家和万事兴”。当家庭中出现矛盾的时候，中国人最忌讳把这些矛盾暴露在外人面前。中国人在家庭中还特别重视父母、长辈的意见，强调长辈的经验对于年轻人的指导作用。中国人还强调家庭教育对孩子人格形成的重要影响，常说“子不教，父之过”。

热点演练 32

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

云锦（cloud-pattern brocade）是我国优秀传统文化的杰出代表，由于用料考究、织工精细、图案色彩典雅富丽，宛如天上彩云般的瑰丽，故称“云锦”。现在只有南京生产，故常称为“南京云锦”，至今已有 1 580 年的历史。南京云锦是古代艺术中的精品，元、明、清三朝均为皇家御用贡品。云锦因其丰富的文化和科技内涵，被专家称作是中国古代织锦工艺史上最后一座里程碑，被称为“中华瑰宝（gem）”“东方一绝”。

热点演练 33

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

说到中国文化，不得不提到长城。从公元前 7 世纪到公元 16 世纪，在大约 2 200 年的时间里，先后有 19 个朝代修过长城，所修的长城累计有 10 万千米以上。三次浩大的长城修建工程，是在秦代、汉代和明代。现今存有遗迹的主要是明长城，从东边入海口的山海关（Shanhai Pass）开始，一直到沙漠深处的嘉峪关（Jiayu Pass），全长 6 700 千米。长城是世界历史上最伟大的工程，延续时间之长、参与人数之多、工程难度之大，在世界无出其右。

热点演练 34

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

说到中国古代的科技文明，就不能不说四大发明：指南针、火药、造纸术和印刷术。人们普遍认为，这四大发明对中国古代的政治、经济、文化的发展

产生了巨大的推动作用；并且这些发明经由各种途径传至西方，也影响着世界的文明进程。从历史发展来看，中国古代的四大发明是为人类社会生活带来革命性变化的科学发明，这是中国人对世界文明的伟大贡献。中国四大发明，在人类科学文化史上留下了灿烂的一页，推动了人类历史的前进。

热点演练 35

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国人创造了很多独特的艺术形式，如纯净的瓷器、千古传诵的唐诗、以演员表演为中心的京剧等。这些艺术形式呈现了中国人的心灵世界，显现了中国人的独特美感，成为展示中国人的生命力和创造力的窗口，具有永恒的美丽。中国人将艺术当作提升人生境界、慰藉心灵的媒介。艺术是中国人人生哲学的延伸。中国的艺术传统，是一部记载着中国人生活品位和美感的活的图画，反映出了中国人的优雅心态。

热点演练 36

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

在指南针发明之前，人们在茫茫大海上航行时，只能靠太阳和星星的位置来辨认方向。如果遇上阴雨天，他们就会迷失方向。中国人发明的指南针帮助人们解决了这个难题。指南针是指示方向的仪器。早在战国时期（the Warring States Period），中国人就发现了磁石指示南北的特性，并根据这种特性制成了指示方向的仪器——司南（sinan）。到了宋代，人们制成“罗盘（luopan）”。指南针的发明给航海事业带来了划时代的影响，世界航运史也由此翻开了新的一页。

热点演练 37

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

中国民间艺术与中国哲学统一于“阴阳（yin-yang）生万物”这一理念。这一理念源于中国原始社会，是对人类的人生感悟的哲学注解。中国人祖先的哲学论断是“近看自己，远观他人”。要理解中国民间艺术的原始艺术，这一结论必不可少。人类的本能欲望是生存并通过繁衍（propagation）继续存在。人生来的首要本能是求生，然后是长寿。从原始社会到今天，阴阳和永生的观念始终贯穿中国的社会生活和民族文化。中国民间艺术反映了社会的所有基本哲学理念。

热点演练 38

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

围棋（Weiqi）是两位对弈者之间战略性的棋盘游戏（board game）。围棋已有 3 000 多年的历史，可以说是所有古代棋类游戏的起源。围棋的规则很简单，但是有数不尽的策略，这就是围棋的魅力所在。下一盘围棋的时间短至 15 分钟，长至数天。但是多数情况下，下一盘围棋需要一两个小时。围棋是综合科学、艺术和竞赛的游戏。围棋对于智力发展、性格培养和灵活的策略学习非常有益。难怪围棋已经流行了几千年，并逐渐成为一项国际文化游戏。

热点演练 39

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

景德镇（Jingdezhen）位于江西省东北部，以瓷器而文明，历来被誉为中国的“千年瓷都”。在景德镇出产的各类瓷器中，尤以青花瓷（blue and white porcelain）最为突出。清代是青花瓷的鼎盛时期。景德镇青花瓷以其烧造精致而独占鳌头。新中国成立后，在景德镇设立了人民瓷厂（People's Porcelain Factory）专门生产青花瓷。景德镇青花瓷造型优美，色彩绚丽，装饰精美，是景德镇四大传统名瓷之一，素有“永不凋谢的青花瓷”之称。青花瓷远销世界各地，受到世界人民的喜爱。

热点演练 40

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to translate a passage from Chinese into English. You should write your answer on **Answer Sheet 2**.

在中国，酒（white spirit）作为一种特殊的文化形式，有着 5000 多年的历史。林超所著的《杯里春秋》（*The Spring and Autumn in the Cup*）一书认为，喝酒有点像学问，而不是大吃大喝。中国历史上有很多关于酒的故事。唐代伟大诗人李白可以“斗酒诗百篇”，喝得越多，他的诗就作得越好。在中国民俗中，酒有着极其重要的地位。不论是君王还是平民，都用烈酒（spirit）庆祝各个节日、婚礼、生日聚会，纪念逝者，为亲友接风或送行，庆祝好消息，摆脱焦虑和治疗疾病以求长寿。

二、热点演练40篇参考答案

热点演练1

①中国梦不仅引领中国未来发展的战略蓝图，而且反映了中国在新时代的对外政策，对世界有着深远的影响。②首先，中国梦是和平的梦想。③和平和发展，反映了时代的主题，是取得国家繁荣的手段，确保人民的安康。④其次，中国梦是发展的梦想。⑤它从来不以征服、超过或取代任何人为目标，相反它旨在使中国人民获得益处，推进全球共同发展。⑥中国梦不仅有益于中国人民，而且对世界有益。⑦中国梦是为了与世界梦共享它的目标和成果。	① The Chinese dream not only steers a strategic blueprint for China's future development, it also reflects China's foreign policies in the new era and has far-reaching implications for the world. ②First, the Chinese dream is a dream of peace. ③ Peace and development, echoing the themes of the times, are the means to achieve national prosperity, and ensure people's well-being. ④Second, the Chinese dream is a dream of development. ⑤It never aims to conquer, surpass, or replace anyone; instead, it aims to bring benefits to the Chinese people and propel common global development. ⑥ The Chinese dream will not only bring benefits to the Chinese people, but also to the whole world. ⑦ And the Chinese dream is to share its aims and fruits with the dreams of the world.

主题：中国社会热点——中国梦

难点及词汇注释：

句①“不仅……而且”可译为“not only… but also…”；“深远的”可译为“far-reaching”。

句③“反映了时代的主题”可译为现在分词短语，做“和平与发展”的后置定语。“是……的手段”可译为“the means to…”。

句⑤“相反”可译为“instead”，该词为副词，不能引导句子，所以应在其前使用分号。“推进”可译为“propel”。

句⑥“有益于”与句⑤中的“使……获得益处”相同，可采用相似的表达。“不仅……而且”可译为“not only…but also…”，连接并列的介词短语。

热点演练 2

①过去，几代人经常居住在同一屋檐下，经常性的聚会十分常见。②一名家庭成员帮助另一名家庭成员摆脱困境，家庭成员间因为有共同经历、友谊和价值观而内在地联系在一起。③家庭成员也经常表现出较高水平的自力更生。④现在，家庭成员间经常彼此住得很远，交流以及对消息或担忧的事情的分享变得不那么频繁。⑤过去表兄弟姐妹之间会是最好的朋友，而现在他们经常几乎不认识彼此。⑥过去长辈经常是顾问和朋友，但是今天他们只不过是“陌生人”，家庭价值观和归属感遭到重挫。	①In the past many generations often lived under one roof and regular get-togethers were common. ②One member of the family helped out another and families were intrinsically linked together by shared experience, friendship and values. ③Families often also showed a high degree of self-reliance. ④Nowadays communication and sharing of news or worries have become less regular, because families often live far apart from each other. ⑤Cousins used to be best friends in the past, while they often hardly know each other in more recent times. ⑥The elders were often advisors and friends, while they are today often nothing but “strangers” and the values of family and togetherness have badly suffered.

主题：中国社会热点——家庭结构变迁

难点及词汇注释：

句①“住在同一屋檐下”可译为“live under one roof”；“聚会”可译为“get-together”。

句②“帮助……摆脱困境”可译为“help out…”；“内在地”可译为“intrinsically”。

句③“自力更生”可译为“self-reliance”。

句④“家庭成员间……”是后一句的原因，在翻译时可将其译为 because 引导的原因状语从句。

句⑤ 前后两个句子之间存在对比，可用 while 来引导比较状语从句。

句⑥ 句子结构与句⑤相同，可采用相同的表达方式。“只不过”可译为 nothing but。

热点演练 3

①从理性角度来说，我们理解阅读是所有教育的基石，因而也是知识经济必要的支撑(underpinning)。②所以阅读理所当然应当是公共政策的一部分。③但可能更重要的是，它作为通向个人发展和幸福旅程的起点时扮演的感性角色。④与网络相比，书籍在提升我们的情感、想象力和历史观方面更胜一筹。⑤书籍也有助于创建和增强我们的自我感。⑥如果阅读能力显著下降，人类的天性也会相应发生变化。⑦如果我们将来不再自我反省、不再有创造性的思维，人类势必会消亡。	①Rationally, we know that reading is the foundation stone of all education, and therefore an essential underpinning of the knowledge economy. ②So as a matter of course, reading is an aspect of public policy. ③But perhaps even more significant is its emotional role as the starting point for personal development and pleasure. ④Books are superior to the Internet in the aspects of enhancing our emotion, imagination and historical perception. ⑤They can help create and reinforce our sense of self. ⑥If reading ability declines significantly, the very nature of our species would change accordingly. ⑦If we, in the future, no longer reflect upon ourselves and think creatively, we will go extinct.

主题：中国社会热点——阅读的重要性

难点及词汇注释：

句①“从理性角度来说”可译为“rationally”；“基石”可译为“foundation stone”。

句②“理所当然”可译为“as a matter of fact”。

句③主干结构为“但可能更重要的是它的感性角色”，因表语过短，可将其提前至句首，引起倒装。“……的起点”可译为“the starting point for…”。

句④“比……更胜一筹”可译为“be superior to…”。“历史观”可译为“historical perception”。

句⑤“书籍”与句④中的主语重复，可用 they 指代。“增强”可译为 reinforce；“自我感”可译为“sense of self”。

句⑥“相应”可译为“accordingly”。

句⑦“反省”可译为“reflect upon…”。

热点演练 4

①“和谐”是中国文化的核心，也是中国人对世界和宇宙观点的核心。②在古代中国，政治机构就对人类与自然之间的和谐概念作出了表达。③现在，中央提出创建和谐社会的概念，这标志着长久以来完全注重人与人之间以及人与社会之间关系的做法发生了转变。④人们认为，人与自然之间的关系会影响人与人以及人与社会之间的关系。⑤环境如果被严重破坏，人们的生活条件就会恶化，经济增长就会超出资源和能源供应。⑥在这种情况下，很难建立和谐社会。	①“Harmony” is at the core of traditional Chinese culture and the Chinese people's view of the world and the universe. ②In ancient China, political institutions expressed the concept of harmony between humanity and nature. ③The central authorities have now put forward the idea of creating a harmonious society, marking a shift from the long-standing practice of exclusively focusing on relations between people and between individuals and society. ④It is said that the relationship between humanity and nature impacts on people-to-people relations and the relationship between individuals and the society. ⑤When the environment is seriously damaged, people's living conditions will worsen, and economic growth will outstrip the supply of resources and energy. ⑥Under such circumstances, social harmony is difficult to achieve.

主题：中国社会热点——人与自然的关系

难点及词汇注释：

句①“是……的核心，也是……的核心”可译为“at the core of…”。“……对……的观点”可译为“… view of…”。

句②“对……概念作出了表达”可理解为“表达了……概念”，可译为“express the concept of…”。

句③“提出……”可译为“put forward…”。“标志着……”的核心意思为“标志着转变”，可译为“marking a shift”，做伴随状语。

句④“人们认为……”虽然可以译为“People think…”，但此处并不强调“人们”，只是泛指，故可将该句译为被动语态“It is said that…”。

句⑤“恶化”可译为“worsen”；“超出”可译为“outstrip”。

热点演练 5

①中国的十二生肖(zodiac)各有优缺点。②无可争议最受人们喜爱的生肖当属龙、虎和马，因为根据中国的民间说法，它们往往会带来成功。③即便是老鼠和蛇都被认为是幸运的。④但就一些对生肖的解读而言，羊的优点却寥寥无几。⑤羊年出生者通常被认为是被动、忠诚、慷慨和善良的人。⑥这些美德在理想的世界里或许是美好的，但在“狗咬狗”的现实世界中却没什么用途。⑦虽然这是一个不公平的、过时了的迷信，但是对很多人而言，这是一种便于用来解释不可预知世界的方法。	①Each of the 12 animals in the Chinese zodiac has it virtues and faults. ② The undisputed favorite is the dragon, the tiger and the horse, which are closely associated with success, according to Chinese folk sayings. ③Even rats and snakes are considered lucky. ④But sheep have fewer advantageous qualities, according to some zodiac interpretations. ⑤Those born in sheep years are often thought of as passive, loyal, generous and kind. ⑥These virtues may be wonderful in an ideal world, but not so useful in the “dog-eat-dog” real world. ⑦ Although it’s an unfair and outdated superstition, it’s a convenient way for many to explain an unpredictable world.

主题：中国传统文化——生肖

难点及词汇注释：

句①“十二生肖”是指“生肖中的 12 种动物”，可译为“12 animals in the Chinese zodiac”。

句②“无可争议的”可译为“undisputed”。“因为……”可译为定语从句，修饰“龙、虎和马”。

句③“生肖解读”可译为“zodiac interpretations”。

句⑥“美德”可译为“virtues”。

句⑦“过时的”可译为“outdated”。

热点演练 6

①技术给我们带来了很多挑战的同时，也为我们提供了多种解决方案。②电子书、智能手机、平板电脑这些设备让你在手中托起整个图书馆，这是一个绝好的机遇。③出版商需要利用每一种新兴技术把长期阅读融入到我们的文化中。④我们作为读者，应该把注意力集中在信息本身，而不该为传播载体而烦恼。⑤我们应该忽视平台而专注于内容。⑥出版商也要更好地利用互联网，为读者也包括潜在的读者提供每年值得看的新书信息，让他们重新熟识丰富多彩的传统文学精粹。	①Technology brings out as many solutions as it does challenges. ②Devices like e-readers, smartphones and tablets carry an entire library in your hand, which is an amazing opportunity. ③Publishers need to use every new piece of technology to embed long-run reading within our culture. ④ As readers, we should concentrate on the message, and should not agonize over the medium. ⑤We should give little care to the platform, but focus on the content. ⑥The publishers must also get better use of the Internet to inform readers, and potential readers, about all the new books deserving reading, and to renew their acquaintance with the best of rich literary tradition.

主题：中国社会热点——技术与阅读

难点及词汇注释：

句① 表达方式可译为“… as many… as it does…”句型。“带来”可译为“bring out”。

句②“这是一个……”可译为修饰前句的定语从句；“在……托起整个图书馆”可译为“carry an entire library…”。

句③“把……融入到……”可译为“embed… in/within…”。

句④“为……而烦恼”可译为“agonize over…”。

句⑥“更好地利用”可译为“get better use of…”。“为读者……”和“让他们……”为“更好地利用互联网”的目的状语，可译为 and 连接的不定式短语“to…”。

热点演练 7

①京杭大运河（Beijing-Hangzhou Grand Canal）将中国南北连在一起，是 14 个世纪以来历朝历代的生命线。②它承载着物品和观念，往来于北方政治中心和南方经济心脏地区之间。③最早的运河体系成形于隋朝。④隋朝皇帝杨广需要从富饶的长江地区（Yangtze region）向北运输粮食来养活皇室和军队。⑤所以这位皇帝就迫使大量工人修建这条连接洛阳与北京和杭州的运河。⑥随着时间的发展，该运河对沿岸 18 个城市的价值从物流转变为了文化和旅游业。	①The Beijing-Hangzhou Grand Canal that linked northern and southern China served as a lifeline for dynasties for 14 centuries. ② It carried materials and ideas between the political capitals of the north and the economic heartland of the south. ③The original canal system took shape during the Sui Dynasty. ④Sui emperor Yang Guang needed to transport grain from the fertile Yangtze region northward to support his court and armies. ⑤So the emperor forced a huge number of workers to build the canal to connect Luoyang with Beijing and Hangzhou. ⑥Over time, the canal's value to the 18 cities that border it has shifted from logistics to culture and tourism.

主题：中国传统文化——京杭大运河

难点及词汇注释：

句① 本句的主干可理解为“京杭大运河是 14 个世纪以来历朝历代的生命线”，翻译时应注意这一点，“将中国南北连在一起”可译为定语从句，修饰“京杭大运河”。“是……的生命线”可译为“serve as a lifeline for…”。

句②“政治中心”可译为“political capital”；“经济心脏”可译为“economic heartland”。

句③“成形于”可译为“take shape”。

句④“富饶的”可译为“fertile”；“向北”可译为“northward”；“来养活……”表达目的，可译为不定式短语“to support…”。

句⑤“对……的价值”可译为“the value to…”；“……沿岸”可译为“border…”。

热点演练 8

①时尚界认为，中山装（Zhongshan suit）代表男性的地位。②20 世纪 20 年代西方文化传入中国时，中山装开始出现。③外国人认为中山装是政治的象征，因为它具有典型的中国内涵。④1978 年改革开放后，中国人民在服饰方面有了更多的选择，西式服装开始流行。⑤随着外国时尚品牌涌入中国市场，越来越少的中国人对中山装感兴趣。⑥但是，过去几年中山装开始复兴。⑦许多年轻的设计师想使中山装重新流行起来。⑧现代中山装在商业场合会变得非常流行，因为看起来很正式，还代表了中国的形象。	①In the fashion world, Zhongshan suits represent a man's status. ②It came out during a period when Western culture entered China in 1920s. ③ Foreigners will interpret the Zhongshan suit as a political symbol because it has typical Chinese connotations. ④After the reform and opening-up policy was issued in 1978, Chinese people had more choices in clothing, and Western suits became popular. ⑤With foreign fashion brands coming into the Chinese market, fewer and fewer local people were interested in the Zhongshan suit. ⑥However, the past few years has seen a rival of the Zhongshan suit. ⑦There are many young designers who want to popularize it again. ⑧Modern Zhongshan suits will become very popular on business occasions, as it looks formal and represents China.

主题：中国传统文化——中山装

难点及词汇注释：

句①“时尚界认为”虽然可以翻译成动宾短语“The fashion world thinks…”，但为了使句子显得更加地道，将其译为地点状语即可，即 In the fashion world。

句②“中山装开始出现”为句子主干，因“中山装”与句①重复，所以可用 it 代替。

句③“认为……是……”可译为“interpret … as …”；“内涵”可译为“connotation”。

句④“中国人民……”和“西式服装……”可译为并列句，由 and 连接。

句⑤“随着……”可译为“with…”。

句⑥ 可译为 the Zhongshan suit has rived in the past few years，也可将“过去几年”做句子的主语 the past few years has seen a rival of…，后者在英语中经常出现，可适当记忆此类句式。

句⑧“代表了中国的形象”可译为“represent China”。

热点演练 9

①中国想要更绿色的城市和更洁净的天空，还有很长的路要走。②根据世界银行的报道，全世界 20 个空气最糟糕的城市中有 16 个都在中国。③充满雾霾的城市到处都是重工业、金属冶炼厂和燃煤发电厂。④煤炭是中国空气污染的头号来源，中国 80% 的电和 70% 的能源都来自煤炭。⑤随着汽车拥有量和交通拥堵的持续增长，汽车成为中国城市中另一个主要的空气污染源。⑥煤炭和汽车的排放物是造成威胁健康的悬浮颗粒（suspended particulates）的主要成因，仅次于建筑尘埃和沙尘暴。	①China still has a long way to go to make its cities greener and its skies clearer. ②According to the World Bank, 16 of the world's 20 cities with the worst air are here in China. ③The smog-filled cities are ringed with heavy industry, metal smelters, and coal-fired power plants. ④Coal is the number one source of air pollution in China, from which the country gets 80 percent of its electricity and 70 percent of its total energy. ⑤Cars are another leading contributor to air pollution, as car ownership, heavy traffic and low-grade gasoline continue to rise in Chinese cities. ⑥Coal and car exhaust are the main causes of health-threatening suspended particulates, only second to construction dust and sand storms.

主题：中国社会发展——污染问题

难点及词汇注释：

句②中，“空气最糟糕的”是“城市”的定语，我们将其译成介词短语 with the worst air 做后置定语。

句③中，“充满雾霾的”用复合形容词 smog-filled 表达；“到处都是”可以用短语 be surrounded by 或 be ringed with 表达。

句④中，“头号来源”译为 the number one source；后一句补充说明“煤炭”，我们将其处理成 which 引导的非限制性定语从句，which 在句中代替 coal 做介词 from 的宾语。

句⑤中，“随着……”用 as 引导的时间状语从句表达；“另一个主要的空气污染源”译为 another leading contributor to air pollution。

句⑥中，“威胁健康的”用复合形容词 health-threatening 表达；“仅次于……”用过去分词短语 only second to 表达。

热点演练 10

①中国人种植和使用竹子的历史可以追溯到 7000 年前。②早在商朝，竹子就在古代中国人的日常生活中得到广泛使用。③它被用来做食物、服	①The history of Chinese people planting and using bamboo can be traced back to 7,000 years ago. ②As early as the Shang Dynasty, bamboo was already used in various aspects of ancient Chinese people's daily lives. ③It was

装、住房、交通、音乐器材，甚至是武器。④在东汉发明纸以前，竹条就被当作最重要的书写介质，比其他材料，比如丝织物、动物皮毛和石块应用更广泛。⑤中国首批书籍就是用竹子串起来的。⑥竹子作为书写介质的作用帮助我们保留了历史记录和传统中国文化。	used for food, clothing, housing, transportation, music instruments and even weapons. ④Before the Eastern Han Dynasty when paper was invented, strips of bamboo had been used as the most important writing medium and more widely used than other materials, such as silk, animal furs and rocks. ⑤China's first books were crafted from bamboo strips on string. ⑥Bamboo's role as a writing medium helped keep history records and traditional Chinese culture.

主题：中国传统文化——竹子的使用

难点及词汇注释：

句①“……的历史”可译为“the history of…”。

句③“被用来做……”可译为“be used for…”；“食物、服装……”为并列成分，由 and 连接。

句④“竹条”可译为“strips of bamboo”；“书写介质”可译为“writing medium”。“比其他材料……”与“被当作最重要的书写介质”并列，在翻译时应注意这一点。

句⑤“用竹子串起来”可译为“bamboo strips on string”。

句⑥“作为……的作用”可译为“role as…”。

热点演练 11

①过去二十年来中国人的饮食习惯发生了很大的变化。②上世纪八十年代末，中国的孩子们开始接触西餐。③与他们以往的饮食——米多、蔬菜多、肉类少——不同，一个鸡腿让他们瞬间摄入了大量蛋白质。④随之而来的是牛奶、冰激凌以及其他新式奶制品。⑤一同出现的还有更甜的新式冷饮——中国人传统上主要喝热饮，因为他们认为冷饮伤身。	① Chinese food habits have undergone massive changes in the past two decades. ②In the late 1980s, Chinese children were gradually introduced to the Western food. ③ In a diet mostly of rice and vegetables with only a little meat, a whole chicken leg provided a massive increase in protein intake. ④ Then came the milk, ice-cream, and other new dairy products. ⑤ Along came the new sweetened cold beverages—Chinese traditionally drank mostly hot drinks, believing that cold beverages harmed the body. ⑥Lastly, tea — the Chinese

⑥最后，就连茶——这个曾经诱惑了无数西方人的中式饮料——都因咖啡的到来而面临某种程度的挑战。	drink that once seduced the West — has been partly challenged by the arrival of coffee.

主题：中国传统饮食文化——饮食结构的变迁

难点及词汇注释：

句①“发生变化”可译为“undergo a change”。

句③“米多、蔬菜多、肉类少”可译为“饮食”的定语。“摄入蛋白质”可译为“protein intake”。

句④ 结合上句，“随之而来的……”可译为倒装结构“Then came…”。

句⑤ 与句④结构相似，同样可译为倒装结构。“冷饮”可译为“cold beverages”。为了简化句子结构，可将“因为他们……”译为现在分词短语“believing that…”。

句⑥ 主干结构为“茶受到挑战”，翻译时需要紧抓住这一线索。“诱惑”可译为“seduce”。

热点演练 12

①没有什么能比中国食物更具有中国味道。②在中国以外的世界各地，分布着数以百万计的中式餐馆。③然而，却没有几个中国人意识到中国食物的哲学和政治价值。④中国政府也忽视了通过食物营造自身的“软实力”。⑤它还没有意识到在“软实力”竞争时代，食物的价值和本国烹饪的潜力。⑥尽管官方在海外的宣传不力，民间无心插柳式的美食宣传的收效却不错。⑦一个能够提供如此美食的国家，是不会太差劲的。	①Nothing is more Chinese than Chinese food. ② There are millions of Chinese restaurants outside of China. ③However, few in China have recognized the philosophical and political value of food. ④ The Chinese government also fails to take advantage of food to develop its own “soft power”. ⑤It has not become aware of the value of food and the potential of its own cuisine in a time of competition for soft power. ⑥ Despite the inefficiencies of official propaganda abroad, the unofficial and unintentional propaganda of food has received a good effect. ⑦A country that can serve up a dish so good, can’t be that bad.

主题：中国传统饮食文化——发扬传统饮食的魅力

难点及词汇注释：

句①“没有……更”可译为“Nothing is more… than…”句型。

句③“哲学和政治价值”可译为“the philosophical and political value”。

句⑤“在……时代”可译为“in a time of…”。

句⑥“尽管……”可译为状语“despite…”；对应“官方的”，“无心插柳式的”可表达为“非官方的、非特意的”，可译为“unofficial and unintentional”。

句⑦“能够提供如此美食的”可以译为修饰“国家”的定语从句。

热点演练 13

①近几年，人们谈论中国时的一个关键词是经济。②经济增长带来了文化繁荣，使中国将更多的资源用于提升文学。③同时，随着经济增长，世界对中国其他方面的兴趣也有所增加。④但是，现阶段，中国和西方之间的双向文化交流程度并不高。⑤中国所熟知的西方作家和艺术家比西方人知道的中国作家和艺术家多得多。⑥文学能够通往一个国家的灵魂。⑦外国人阅读更多中国文学作品肯定会向其他国家的人们展示中国人的精神世界，促进了解。	①In recent years when people talk about China, the key word is economy. ②Economic growth has led to a cultural flourishing and allowed the country to spend more resources in promoting its arts. ③ Also as its economic strength grows, the world's interest in other aspects of China has risen. ④Nevertheless, the current cultural exchanges between China and the West are not very mutual. ⑤Many more Western writers and artists are known in China than Chinese to Westerners. ⑥Literature is a passage to the soul of a nation. ⑦The reading of more Chinese literature abroad will definitely introduce the spiritual world of Chinese to people in other countries and improve understanding.

主题：中国社会热点——经济提升文学素养

难点及词汇注释：

句①“关键词”可译为“key word”。

句②“文化繁荣”可译为“cultural flourishing”。

句③“随着经济增长”可译为 with 引导的伴随状语“with the growing economic strength”，也可译为 as 引导的从句“as its economic strength grows”。

句④“双向”可译为“mutual”。
句⑤是一个比较句，为了使句子结构更为简洁，在翻译 than 引导的从句时可酌情简化，如可将 Chinese writers are known to Westerners 简化为 Chinese to Westerners。
句⑥“通往……”可译为“a passage to…”。
句⑦“向……展示……”可译为“introduce … to …”；“肯定”可译为“definitely”。

热点演练 14

①有人认为，手机、电子邮件和网络帖子等科技在为我们沟通提供了前所未有的便利的同时，也使得我们疏远了身边的人。②但是，将此归咎于手机科技是不公平的。③毕竟是这些通讯设备的使用者正在回避人际交往。④我们借助这些设备，将自己隐藏起来，不让他人看到。⑤短信或电话或许已成为了我们回避与他人进行眼神交流等接触方式的借口。⑥我们只有相互理解才能加强对话交流。仅仅是丢弃这些移动设备并非解决之道。	①It is believed that while technology such as cell phones, e-mails, and Internet posting make it more convenient for us to communicate than ever, they're also driving us away from people around us. ②However, it's unfair to blame mobile technology. ③After all, it is the gadget owners who're shunning personal contact. ④We use these devices to hide ourselves from others. ⑤Texting or calling may be an excuse for us to avoid contact with others, such as having eye contact. ⑥The way to enhance conversation is by understanding each other. ⑦Simply throwing away the mobile gadgets is not a solution.

主题：中国社会热点——科技与人际交往
难点及词汇注释：
句①“手机、电子邮件和网络帖子”都属于“科技”的范畴，所以在翻译时，可以用 such as 来列举。“疏远……”可译为“drive away from…”。
句②“将此归咎于手机科技”是主语，“不公平的”是表语，在翻译时可用 it 充当形式主语，真正的主语由“to…”构成。
句③“是……正……”强调“这些通讯设备的使用者”，翻译时应使用强调句型 it is… that/who…。“gadget”常用来表示“（电子）小发明，小玩意”，可指代本文中的“通讯设备”。“回避”可译为“shun”。
句④“将自己隐藏起来，不让他人看到”可合译为“hide ourselves from others”。

句⑤“短信”“电话”在这里是指“发短信”“打电话”，所以翻译时，应将其分别译为动名词“texting”“calling”。“与他人进行眼神交流等”表明其是对“接触方式”的举例，可用 such as 列举。

句⑥“加强对话交流”可译为“enhance conservation”。

热点演练 15

①在过去 10 年间，音乐选秀节目（music talent show）已成为最为家喻户晓的电视娱乐节目之一。②除了娱乐大众之外，这些节目还反映出当今中国在步入现代化进程中文化与社会的转型。③新生代年轻人正改变着自己对于施展才艺的态度，从而推动了这股“选秀潮”。④由于传统价值观中的谦逊态度，中国人往往很内向、不愿展现才华。⑤但近几十年来，越来越多的中国年轻人自发地施展才艺，突出个性与独特魅力。	①In the last 10 years, music talent shows have become one of the most widely known forms of TV entertainment in China. ②Apart from providing entertainment, these shows also reflect the country's cultural and societal transformation as it strides towards modernity. ③The new generation is changing its attitude towards showing off talents, which is also fuelling the phenomenon. ④Chinese tend to be shy and are reluctant to demonstrate their talents due to a traditional value of humbleness. ⑤But recent decades have witnessed an increasing willingness among young Chinese to show off their talents, highlight their individuality and be unique.

主题：中国传统文化——“音乐选秀节目”所反映的价值观

难点及词汇注释：

句①“过去十年间”提示，此处应使用现在完成时。“家喻户晓的”可译为“widely known”。

句②主干结构为“这些节目还反映出文化与社会的转型”，在翻译时抓住这一条主干即可。“当今中国在步入现代化进程中”则可处理为时间状语从句。“步入……”可译为“stride towards”。

句③“施展才艺”可译为“show off talents”。“这股‘选秀潮’”指代上文提到的“音乐选秀节目”，为避免重复表达，可用 the phenomenon 指代。

句④“谦逊”可译为“humbleness”；“不愿展现才华”可译为“be reluctant to demonstrate their talents”。

句⑤“施展才艺”“突出个性与独特魅力”为并列成分，翻译时应注意。“突出个性”可译为“highlight their individuality”。

热点演练 16

①长久以来，中国被称为“自行车王国”仅仅是因为骑自行车的人口众多。②1995 年中国的自行车产量达到 4474 万辆。③然而，由于市场需求下降，这一数据在随后几年中直线下降，到 2000 年时只有 2000 万辆。④近年来，自行车再一次受到人们欢迎。⑤由于当下人们正在推崇更健康的生活方式，自行车也就同时成为人们四处奔走的工具。⑥如今的自行车功能更加齐全，更为专业，因此，现在单车爱好者们就可以走得更远。	①China has long been referred to as the “kingdom of the bicycle” simply because of its large bicycling population. ②The number of bicycles made in the country reached 44.74 million in 1995. ③ However, the number declined in the following years due to a drop in demand, which fell to only 20 million in 2000. ④ In recent years, bicycles are gradually gaining in popularity once again. ⑤ As a healthier lifestyle is being promoted, the bicycle has also become a tool that keeps people on the go. ⑥Cyclists are now traveling further, as the bicycles of today are more functional and professional.

主题：中国社会热点——自行车的复兴

难点及词汇注释：

句①“长久以来”提示，本句应使用现在完成时，表示动作从过去一直持续到现在。

句③“到 2000 年时……”修饰其前句子，可译为 which 引导的非限制性定语从句。

句⑤“推崇”可译为“promote”；“四处奔走”可译为“on the go”。

句⑥存在因果关系，“单车爱好者们……”为主句，“如今……”为原因状语从句，可用 as，because 等引导。

热点演练 17

①近年来，中国许多年轻的大学毕业生都投身“公务员热潮”（civil service mania）之中，希望自己不辞辛苦地一次次参加国考，最终能换来一个收入可观、受人尊敬的“铁	①In recent years, many young Chinese graduates have been caught in the civil service mania, hoping that their toil in taking the exams will land them a stable career with a decent income and a respectful social status. ②This phenomenon reflects people’s sense of insecurity

饭碗”。②这种现象反映出，由于市场环境与经济环境的波动，人们缺乏安全感。③日益激烈的社会竞争，往往会促使人们寻求安稳。④房价与医疗支出不断攀升，而公务员的福利待遇可以解决这些棘手难题。⑤但现在政府已有意逐步取消公务员在医疗及住房方面所享有的特权。	in a fluctuating market and economy. ③The increasingly fiercer social competition tends to push people to play safe. ④With the rising housing prices and the cost of medication, the welfare benefits extended to civil servants can cure these headaches. ⑤ However, the government has the intention to phase out civil servants' privileges in medication and housing.

主题：中国社会热点——公务员潮

难点及词汇注释：

句①“希望……”表示目的，可译为 hoping that…。“铁饭碗”是指“稳定的工作”；“收入可观、受人尊敬”是对“铁饭碗”的描述，在翻译时可将其译为 with…。

句②“人们缺乏安全感”可译为“反映出”的宾语从句，即 This phenomenon reflects that people lack security…，也可以将该句译为简单句，即 This phenomenon reflects people's sense of insecurity…。

句③“寻求安稳”可译为“play safe”。

句④“房价与医疗支出不断攀升”描述的是一种状态，在翻译时可译为 with…，表伴随。“解决棘手难题”可译为“solve these tough problems”，也可译为“cure these headaches”。

句⑤“逐步取消”可译为“phase out”；“特权”可译为“privilege”。

热点演练 18

①在中国，几乎所有的发展中城市都面临着城市化（urbanization）的进程。②这一趋势有望提升国内年轻人的就业前景。③新兴城市的建筑行业急需设计师以及工程师，因此房地产、城市规划以及建筑行业的职业发展前景十分可观。④公共交通也是城市化进	① Urbanization is a process that is occurring in nearly every developing city in the country. ②The trend is expected to boost the job prospects of young people in the country. ③The construction industry in the emerging cities is in urgent need of designers and engineers, so career prospects in real estate, urban planning and architecture are great. ④Public transportation is also among the industries that benefits most

程中受益最大的行业之一。⑤这一领域的工程师和设计师发挥着重要作用。⑥还有一些领域也在不断扩张，比如环境保护。⑦污染问题成为许多城市化地区的一块心病。⑧在这种情况下，环保行业前景可观。⑨中国需要推动可持续发展。	from urbanization. ⑤Engineers and designers in this field will play a big role. ⑥There are other expanding areas, such as the environmental sector. ⑦Pollution is an issue plaguing many urbanized areas. ⑧Under these circumstances, environmental protection will be promising. ⑨The country needs to boost sustainable growth.

主题：中国社会热点——城市化带来的就业前景

难点及词汇注释：

句②“就业前景”可译为“job prospect”。

句③“急需……”可译为“in urgent need of…”。

句④“……之一”可译为“one of +名词复数”，也可译为“… among +名词复数”。

句⑥“一些领域在不断扩张”可译为动宾结构 some areas are expanding，也可译为名词性短语 expanding areas。

句⑦“是……的一块心病”可译为“plague…”。

句⑨“可持续发展”可译为“sustainable growth”。

热点演练 19

①除了从国外流入的非法垃圾，人们也越来越关心如何处理中国国内日益严重的城市垃圾问题。②随着城市化的加速以及中国城市的持续扩大，垃圾填埋场（landfill sites）很快就被填满，而这一问题正越来越接近城市中心区域。③现在越来越多的城市开始使用更干净、更现代的垃圾处理方式。④垃圾在 800 到 1000 度的极高温环境下被碾碎并焚烧（incinerate）。⑤反复焚烧后，垃圾就能转变成制造水泥的原材料。⑥但是问题的真正解决还是需要我们共同减少垃圾的制造。	①Apart from illegal waste coming in from abroad, concerns are also growing over how to deal with the rising problem of China's urban waste. ②As urbanization accelerates, and Chinese cities continue to swell, landfill sites are filling up fast and the problem is getting closer and closer to downtown areas. ③More and more cities are using cleaner, more modern methods of disposal. ④The garbage is crushed and incinerated at extremely high temperatures of 800 to 1600 degrees. ⑤After being incinerated several times, it can be turned into raw material for cement. ⑥But the real solution to the problem is to cut back on how much waste we all throw away.

主题：中国社会发展——城市垃圾处理问题

难点及词汇注释：

句①中，“除了……外”常用短语 apart from 表达；“从国外流入的”译为现在分词短语 coming in from abroad，做后置定语。

句②中，“随着”后面包括并列的两部分，故我们将其译为 as 引导的时间状语从句，其中包含 and 连接的两个分句；“越来越接近”用比较结构 get closer and closer 表达。

句③中，“处理方式”用 methods of disposal 表达。

句④中，“在极高温的环境下”译为 at extremely high temperatures。

句⑤中，“反复焚烧后”中“焚烧”的逻辑主语是“垃圾”，二者为被动关系，故我们将其译为现在分词短语的被动结构，即 being incinerated。

句⑥中，“我们共同减少垃圾的制造”是说明解决办法（solution）的内容，故我们可以用不定式结构做表语来表达，即 the real solution… is to cut down on…；“减少垃圾的制造”实际就是“减少扔垃圾的数量”，故我们将其处理为 how much 引导的宾语从句。

热点演练 20

①近年来，越来越多的中国年轻人选择“裸婚”（naked marriage）。②这个术语专指那些零资产、婚礼接近零开销的恋人们。③“裸婚”和中国现有婚俗形成了鲜明对比。④在中国传统婚俗中，双方父母会帮自己子女的婚姻生活打好物质基础。⑤中国人的理想生活方式就是安居乐业。⑥没有经济基础的婚姻是不稳固的。⑦但虽然传统婚姻价值观仍在中国人心中根深蒂固，越来越多的人开始接受“裸婚”，这表明青年一代对于婚姻持更加开放的态度。	①In recent years, an increasing number of Chinese young people have chosen a “naked marriage”. ②The term refers to a couple who don’t have any major assets and who spend little on their wedding ceremony. ③The “naked marriage” is in sharp contradiction with China’s established marriage customs, which encourage parents to help lay the material foundation for their children’s marriage. ④The ideal life for Chinese is to live and work in peace and contentment. ⑤The marriage without a solid material foundation is unstable. ⑥Although the traditional marital values are still deep-rooted in Chinese people’s mind, the increasing acceptance of “naked marriage” showed a more open-minded attitude of the youth.

主题：中国传统文化——婚姻观

难点及词汇注释：

句①“近年来”提示，本句应使用现在完成时。

句②“零资产”“婚礼接近零开销”修饰“恋人们”，可将其译为并列的定语从句。

句④“在中国传统婚俗中”与句③中的“中国现有婚俗”所指相同，可将两句合译为一句，句④作为定语从句，修饰句③中的“中国现有婚俗”。“形成鲜明对比”可译为“in sharp contradiction with”；“现有的”可译为“established”；“为……打好物质基础”可译为“lay the material foundation for…”。

句⑤“安居乐业”可译为“live and work in peace and contentment”。

句⑦“这”指代“越来越多的人开始接受‘裸婚’”，在翻译时，可将指代的内容转换为名词性短语 the increasing acceptance of “naked marriage”。

热点演练 21

①按照儒学（Confucian）观点，子女照顾年老父母是天经地义的。②但在 21 世纪的中国，情况已经变得大为不同。③由于大多数成年人都有全职工作，加上独生子女政策引发的人口问题（demographic issues），中国给研究人口老龄化所引发的社会与经济挑战的人提供了一个极有吸引力的例子。④由于拥有 14 亿人口，中国的部分问题与其规模有关，但独生子女政策又放大了这种人口老龄化趋势。⑤还有一个主要问题是中国的经济状况。⑥中国目前还不是富国，整个社会体系并未准备好迎接人口老龄化。	①In Confucian philosophy it is taken for granted that children will look after their parents. ②In 21st-century China, things are proving to be very different. ③With most adults working full time, plus the demographic issues resulting from the one-child policy, the country presents a fascinating case for those interested in the study of social and economic challenges of ageing populations. ④With a population of 1.4bn, to which scale many problems in China are related, although the one-child policy has exaggerated the aging trend. ⑤On top of this is China's economic status. ⑥China is not rich yet, and the whole social system is not ready for the problem of aging.

主题：中国社会发展——人口老龄化

难点及词汇注释：

句①中，表示“某事被认为是天经地义”用短语 be taken for granted；主语有点长，故我们将其处理成主语从句，用 it 充当形式主语。

句②中，此处可以用现在完成时表达，译为 things have become different，但本句强调目前在中国的现状，故译成现在进行时 things are proving to be very different，能使表达更加生动。

句③中，此句前后的因果关系更多是表示伴随出现的一种状况，故我们将其处理成 with 独立主格结构；“加上”译为介词 plus；“独生子女政策引发的（人口问题）”以及“研究人口老龄化所引发社会与经济挑战的（人）”这两个定语成份，我们都将其处理成分词短语做后置定语。

句④中，“由于拥有……”直接用介词短语 with…表达，既体现出“原因”，又体现出“拥有”；此处的“与……有关”用定语从句“to which scale… are related”表达。

句⑤中，“还有一个主要问题”指的是导致人口老龄化的又一个因素，因为前一句刚刚提到，所以此处我们就用 this 指代；on top of…表示“另外”，可表示紧接前面提出另一个重要问题。

热点演练 22

①一年一度的全球最大规模的人员流动，已将数亿中国人送回家乡欢度春节（Lunar New Year）。②越来越多外出务工的人选择驾车回家参加一年中最重要的团圆饭这一现象，是中国拥有全球最大汽车市场的一个例证。③事实上，不断发展的中国高速铁路网已将过去需要持续几天的旅程缩短至几个小时；此外，由中央政府制定价格的体制也意味着油价的下跌并未被反馈到中国的加油站。④然而，驾车回家的现象似乎并未受到这两大因素的影响。⑤相反，汽车会成为衣锦还乡的象征。	① The world’s largest annual human migration has brought hundreds of millions of Chinese back to their hometowns for the Lunar New Year celebrations. ②In a sign of China’s role as the world’s largest auto market, an increasing number of migrants are driving home for their most important dinner of the year. ③ In fact, the improvements in China’s network of high speed trains have shrunk what used to be several days’ journey into a few hours ride, and centrally planned prices mean the falling cost of oil has not fed through to China’s petrol stations. ④ In spite of these, the number of people driving home hasn’t seen a decline. ⑤ Instead, cars are a sign of returning home gloriously.

主题：中国传统习俗——自驾返乡过年

难点及词汇注释：

句①中，“数亿”用 hundreds of millions of 表达；此处的“欢度春节”并不强调庆祝的动作或过程，故我们将其处理成名词短语 the Lunar New Year celebrations。

句②中，表示“是……的例证”可用介词短语 in s sign of…，也可以处理成系表结构，即 be an example/ illustration of…。

句③中，“过去需要持续几天的旅程”译作 what 引导的名词性从句；“反馈到”用短语 feed through to 表达。

句④中，“驾车回家的现象未受到影响”即“驾车回家人数未因此而减少”，故我们将其明确表达出来，即译为 the number…hasn't seen a decline。

句⑤中，“衣锦还乡”可译作 returning home gloriously/ in glory 或 glorious homecoming after getting fame/ money/ honours。

热点演练 23

①中国是唯一一个 3 000 多年都用一种语言进行文学创作的国家，这主要是由书面语言本身的性质决定的。②中国有非常古老、丰富的文学、戏剧和视觉艺术传统。③早期的著作一般源自哲学或宗教文章，如孔子（Confucius）和老子（Lao Tzu）的作品。④除了哲学、宗教和历史作品外，中国很早就有诗歌、小说和戏剧。⑤唐朝时期，诗歌作为文学形式的地位得以确立。⑥戏剧是另一种古老且重要的文学形式。⑦中国的戏剧通常结合了地方语言、音乐和歌曲，因此深受老百姓欢迎。	①China is the only country in the world to use one language for literature creation for more than 3, 000 years. ②This results largely from the nature of the written language itself. ③China has a very old and rich tradition in literature, drama and visual arts. ④ Early writings generally originated from philosophical or religious essays such as the works of Confucius and Lao Tzu. ⑤ In addition to philosophical, religious and historical writings, China also produced poetry, novels and dramas from an early date. ⑥ Poetry became well established as a literary form during the Tang Dynasty. ⑦Drama is another old and important literary form. ⑧Chinese drama usually integrates local language with music and song and thus has been popular with the common people.

主题：中国传统文化——文学

难点及词汇注释：

句① 句子较长，“这主要是……”可译为一个独立的句子。“文学创作”可译为“literature creation”。“由……决定”可译为“be determined by…”，也可译为“result from…”。

句② 本句的主干结构为“中国有传统”，“非常古老、丰富的”可译为“传统”的前置定语，“文学、戏剧和视觉艺术”可译为“传统”的后置定语。

句③“源自……”可译为“originate from…”。

句⑤“地位确立”可译为“well established”。

句⑦“结合……”可译为“integrate… with…”。

热点演练 24

①儒家学派（Confucianism）认为婚姻对家庭和社会都有重大意义。②对于家庭，婚姻能将不同姓氏的家庭聚在一起，延续相关家族（clan）的家庭生活。③对于社会，夫妻是人口的基本单位，婚姻有时能影响到国家的政治稳定和国际关系。④从儒家思想来看，婚姻的目的之一是培养美德。⑤一夫一妻制（monogamy）的观念根深蒂固，中国人明白婚姻应该是建立在爱情的基础上。⑥出于孝（filial piety）与礼（propriety）的观念，婚姻成了昂贵的仪式，被认为仅次于葬礼。⑦聘媒人（matchmaker）可以确保丈夫和妻子彼此般配，但主要是为了家庭的最大利益。	①To the Confucianism, marriage is of great importance to both family and the society. ②As for family, marriage can bring families of different surnames together, and continue the family life of the concerned clans. ③Socially, a married couple is the basic unit of the population; sometimes marriages can even affect the country's political stability and international relations. ④From the perspective of Confucianism, one purpose of marriage is to cultivate virtue. ⑤The Chinese have seen that marriage should be founded on love since the concept of monogamy is deeply rooted in their mindset. ⑥Due to the concept of filial piety and propriety, marriage has become a costly affair and been seen as second only to funeral ceremonies. ⑦The employ of a matchmaker can ensure that the husband and wife are compatible with each other, but primarily work in the families' best interests.

主题：中国传统文化——儒家学派的“婚姻观”

难点及词汇注释：

句①“……对……有重大意义”可译为“… be of great importance to…”。

句②“姓氏”可译为“surname”；“使……聚在一起”可译为“bring … together”。

句③本句包含两个独立的句子，可用 and 连接，也可用分号连接。“基本单位”可译为“basic unit”。

句⑤分析句意可知，“一夫一妻制……”是“中国人明白……”的原因，可将前者译为 since 引导的原因状语从句。“建立在……基础上”可译为“be founded on…”。

句⑥“仅次于……”可译为“second only to…”。

句⑦“聘媒人”是动宾结构，在译为英语时，可将动词“聘”转换为名词，即 the employ of matchmaker。“彼此般配”可译为“be compatible with each other”。

热点演练 25

①唐朝是中国历史上统一时间最长、国力最强盛的朝代之一。②唐朝全盛时期在文化、科技、政治、经济、外交等方面都取得了很高的成就。③中国历史上有大量的科技发明，四大发明中有两个，即火药和活字印刷（movable-type printing），都诞生于唐朝。④这一时期文学发展达到高峰，其中诗歌最为兴盛。⑤唐诗至今仍家喻户晓。⑥海外的华侨华人往往称自己是“唐人”，他们聚居的地方便被称为“唐人街”。⑦每逢春节，这里都要耍龙灯（dragon-lantern show）、舞狮子，仍然保留着中国的传统风俗。	① The Tang Dynasty is one of the dynasties which had been unified for the longest time and had the strongest national power in Chinese history. ② In its heyday, the Tang Dynasty gained great achievements in culture, science and technology, politics, economy and diplomacy. ③ In history, China had many scientific and technological inventions, among which gunpowder and the movable-type printing in the Four Great Inventions were invented in the Tang Dynasty. ④Literature reached its peak at that time, especially poetry. ⑤ And Tang poems are still widely known now. ⑥Overseas Chinese and ethnic Chinese often call themselves “Tang People”, and the place where they live is called “Chinatown”. ⑦During the Spring Festival, traditional Chinese customs, such as dragon-lantern show and lion dance, are still kept there.

主题：中国传统文化——唐朝

难点及词汇注释：

句①“统一时间最长、国力最强盛”可译为 which 引导的定语从句，修饰“朝代”。

句②“取得较高的成就”可译为“gain great achievements”。

句③“四大发明中……”是对“大量的科技发明”的修饰，可译为 which 引导的定语从句。

句④“达到高峰”可译为“reach its peak”。

句⑥“他们聚居”可译为 where 引导的定语从句，修饰 place。

句⑦“耍龙灯、舞狮子”是对“传统风俗”的列举，可用 such as 引导。

热点演练 26

①尽管中国古代神话（mythology）没有十分完整的情节，神话人物也没有系统的家谱（genealogy），但它们却有着鲜明的东方文化特色，其中尤为显著的是它的尚德精神（the spirit of esteeming virtue）。②这种尚德精神在与西方神话特别是希腊神话比较时，显得更加突出。③在西方神话尤其是希腊神话中，对神的褒贬标准多以智慧、力量为准则，而中国古代神话对神的褒贬则多以道德为准绳。④这种思维方式深植于中国的文化之中。⑤几千年来，这种尚德精神影响着人们对历史人物的品评与现实人物的期望。	① Although ancient Chinese mythology does not have relatively complete plot and mythological figures don't have systematic genealogy, they have distinct features of oriental culture, among which the spirit of esteeming virtue is particularly significant. ②When compared with Western mythology, especially Greek mythology, this spirit of esteeming virtue is even more prominent. ③In Western mythology, especially Greek mythology, the criteria for judging whether a god is good or not are mostly the god's wisdom and strength, while in ancient Chinese mythology, the criterion lies in morality. ④This way of thinking is deeply rooted in Chinese culture. ⑤For thousands of years, this spirit of esteeming virtue has affected people's comments on historical figures and expectations of real people.

主题：中国传统文化——神话

难点及词汇注释：

句① 虽然句子较长，但结构并不复杂。“其中尤为……”修饰“东方文化”，可译为 which 引导的定语从句。

句②“与……比较”可译为“compared with…”；“突出”可译为“prominent”。

句③“对……的准则”可译为“the criteria for…”。“而”提示，此处应用 while 引导比较状语从句。

热点演练 27

①景泰蓝（Jingtailan）艺术是雕刻、绘画和塑瓷（porcelain making）的独特融合。②据说景泰蓝于元朝时诞生于北京。③现存最古老的景泰蓝就造于元朝，但是景泰蓝在明朝	①The art of Jingtailan is a unique combination of sculpture, painting and porcelain making. ② It is said to have originated in Beijing during the Yuan Dynasty. ③The oldest existent piece was made during the Yuan Dynasty, but Jingtailan had a major change

时经历了巨大的变革。④那时，人们认为景泰蓝最为复杂。⑤然而，由于炼铜技术（copper-melting techniques）的伟大发明，景泰蓝于清朝时达到顶峰。⑥用景泰蓝能够制成大件物品，如花瓶、其他器皿（utensil）和装饰品，也能制成小物品，如耳环、手镯或筷子。⑦新中国成立以来，涌现出了很多新品种的景泰蓝，在国内外享有很高的声誉。	during the Ming Dynasty. ④ At that time, Jingtailan was considered to be the most complicated. ⑤ However, it reached its peak during the Qing Dynasty because of the great invention of copper-melting techniques. ⑥Jingtailan can be made into large objects such as vases and other large utensils and decorative items, as well as small items like earrings, bracelets or chopsticks. ⑦Since new China was founded, quite a number of new varieties have been created and enjoy a high reputation both at home and abroad.

主题：中国传统文化——景泰蓝

难点及词汇注释：

句① 本句的主干结构为“景泰蓝艺术是……融合”，在翻译时应抓住这一条主线。“雕刻、绘画和塑瓷”可译为修饰“融合”的定语“of…”。

句②“……据说”可译为“… be said to…”。

句⑥ 本句的主干结构为“用景泰蓝能够制成大件物品，也能制成小物品”。“如……”分别是对其前内容的举例，可用 such as 引导。

句⑦“国内外”可译为“at home and abroad”。

热点演练 28

①每年的农历九月初九是中国的传统节日——重阳节（the Double Ninth Festival）。②重阳节有 2 000 多年的历史，早在唐朝时期就正式被定为民间节日。③皇帝和百姓都根据礼仪和风俗庆祝重阳节。④随着时间的流逝，重阳节逐渐形成一些庆祝习俗，如出游、登高、插茱萸（cornel）。⑤重阳节那天，全家人通常一起庆祝节日，而离家的人则会倍加	①The Double Ninth Festival, a traditional festival in China, falls on September 9th on lunar calendar. ②With a history of more than 2, 000 years, the Double Ninth Festival was formally set down as a folk festival as early as the Tang Dynasty. ③ Both the emperors and civilians alike celebrated the festival following the etiquette and customs. ④As time goes by, the Double Ninth Festival has gradually formed such celebrating conventions as going on a journey, ascending a height and wearing cornels. ⑤On that day, the whole family will

思乡。⑥汉族的传统观念认为，数字9代表健康长寿，因此中国政府于1989年将农历九月初九定为“老人节”。	always spend the festival together, while those far from their homes will become more homesick. ⑥ As the figure “9” represents longevity and health in the traditional concept of Han people, the Chinese government set September 9th on lunar calendar as “the Seniors' Day” in 1989.

主题：中国传统文化——重阳节

难点及词汇注释：

句① 可将“中国的传统节日”译为“重阳节”的同位语。“fall on + 时间”表示“某事在某个时间发生”。

句②“重阳节有2000多年的历史”可译为with引导的伴随状语。“把……定为”可译为“set down… as…”。

句③“根据……”可译为现在分词短语，在句中做伴随状语。

句④“随着时间的流逝”可译为“As time goes by”。“出游”“登高”“插茱萸”是对“庆祝习俗”的列举，可用such as引导。

句⑤“离家的人”可译为“people far from their homes”；“思乡”可译为“homesick”。

句⑥“健康长寿”可译为“longevity and health”。

热点演练 29

①中国人对玉（jade）一向有着特殊的尊爱之情，从而延伸发展出一种优秀而古老的玉石文化。②作为配饰供人赏玩是玉器的原始功能之一，也是玉器最广泛的一种用途。③玉器作为一种文物，它也是历史的见证，有着不可复制的唯一性，更为当今世人所器重。④玉器从一种美化生活的装饰品，到简单的生产工具，然后被融入各种礼节内容，被人格化、道德化，继而被看成	① Chinese people always show special respect and love for jade, thus developing an excellent and ancient jade culture. ② Being used for decoration and admiration is one of the original functions of jade, and is also the most widely used one. ③As a cultural relic, jade is also the witness of history, and can not be copied with its uniqueness, making it valued more by people around the world today. ④From ornaments that beautify our life, to simple instrument of production, and then being integrated into a variety of rituals, jade has been personified, moralized and further regarded

是财富的象征、宗教图腾（totem）的崇拜……⑤这些无不反映出中国传统文化和中华民族爱玉的心理。	as a symbol of wealth and worship for religious totems … ⑤ All of these reflect Chinese traditional culture and Chinese people's love for jade.

主题：中国传统文化——中国人对玉器的喜爱

难点及词汇注释：

句① “一向”提示，本句应使用现在完成时。“从而……”表示结果，可译为现在分词短语。

句② “作为配饰供人赏玩”是动宾结构，可译为动名词短语。

句③ “玉器作为一种文物”可译为 as 引导的状语。“更为当今世人所器重”是前文内容的结果，可译为现在分词短语。

句④ 本句的主干结构为“玉器被人格化、道德化……”，翻译时应抓住这一条主线。“从……到……”可译为状语“from… to…”；“美化”可译为“beautify”；“被融入……”可译为“be integrated into…”；“人格化”可译为“personify”；“道德化”可译为“moralize”；“……崇拜”可译为“worship for…”。

热点演练 30

①中国悠久的历史、广袤的国土、与世界各国和海外文化的广泛接触，孕育了中餐的独特艺术。②中国有一句古话至今还广为流传，叫作“民以食为天”。③几千年的推陈出新和不断累积，使中餐受到越来越多的海外人士的青睐，成了我国对外文化交流的一个友好使者。④现代中国已享有“烹饪王国”之美誉。⑤精致的烹调艺术盛行全球，中餐烹饪已名列世界顶尖菜系（culinary style）之林。	①China's long history, vast territory and extensive contact with other nations and cultures have given birth to the unique Chinese culinary art. ②An ancient Chinese saying, which is still popular today, goes, "People regard food as their prime want". ③ With several thousand years of innovation and accumulation, the Chinese cuisine has become increasingly popular among more and more foreign people, and has become a friendly envoy in China's cultural exchanges with foreign countries. ④Modern China enjoys a worldwide reputation as the "kingdom of cuisine". ⑤The exquisite Chinese culinary art has prevailed all over the world and has been listed as one of the world's top culinary styles.

主题：中国传统文化——饮食在文化交流中的作用

难点及词汇注释：

句①“中国悠久的历史”“广袤的国土”“与世界各国和海外文化的广泛接触”并列做句子主语，在翻译时应注意这一点。“孕育……”可译为“give birth to…”。

句②“民以食为天”可译为“People regard food as their prime want”。

句③“几千年的推陈出新和不断积累”在句中做“使”的主语，但在翻译成英语时可将其转换为 with 引导的状语。“推陈出新”可译为“innovation”。

句④“烹饪王国”可译为“the kingdom of cuisine”。

热点演练 31

①中国人重团圆、重亲情、讲孝道（filial piety），并强调家庭的和睦。②中国人最期望的就是“家和万事兴”。③当家庭中出现矛盾的时候，中国人最忌讳把这些矛盾暴露在外人面前。④中国人在家庭中还特别重视父母、长辈的意见，强调长辈的经验对于年轻人的指导作用。⑤中国人还强调家庭教育对孩子人格形成的重要影响，常说“子不教，父之过”。	①For Chinese people, the great importance is attached to reunion, family affection, filial piety and the peaceful existence within the family. ②What they most expect is the family being in harmony and all affairs prospering. ③When there emerges a conflict in the family, it is a taboo for Chinese people to expose the problem to others. ④In a Chinese family, the opinions of parents and the elders are greatly respected, stressing the elders' guidance on the younger generation. ⑤And the emphasis is also given to child's education on his or her character, which can be demonstrated by such a proverb as “Failing to educate the child is the fault of the father.”

主题：中国传统文化——中国人的“家庭观”

难点及词汇注释：

句①“重”“讲”“强调”都表达“重视”的含义，均可使用 attach the importance to…短语来表达。“团圆”可译为“reunion”；“亲情”可译为“family affection”。

句②“家和万事兴”可译为“be in harmony and all affairs prospering”。

句③“中国人最忌讳……”可译为“it is a taboo for Chinese people to…”。

句④“强调……”可译为现在分词短语，做伴随状语。
句⑤“子不教，父之过”可译为“Failing to educate the child is the fault of the father”。

热点演练 32

①云锦（cloud-pattern brocade）是我国优秀传统文化的杰出代表，由于用料考究、织工精细、图案色彩典雅富丽，宛如天上彩云般的瑰丽，故称“云锦”。②现在只有南京生产，故常称为“南京云锦”，至今已有1580年的历史。③南京云锦是古代艺术中的精品，元、明、清三朝均为皇家御用贡品。④云锦因其丰富的文化和科技内涵，被专家称作是中国古代织锦工艺史上最后一座里程碑，被称为“中华瑰宝（gem）”“东方一绝”。	①Yun Jin, or cloud-pattern brocade is an excellent representative of traditional Chinese culture. ②It gets the name since it is as splendid as the iridescent clouds in the sky with its carefully selected material, exquisite fabrication, elegant pattern and gorgeous color. ③Yun Jin has a long story of 1, 580 years but it is now produced in Nanjing exclusively, therefore it is often named as Nanjing Yun Jin. ④Nanjing Yun Jin became a masterpiece of ancient art, serving as the royal tributes in Yuan, Ming and Qing dynasties. ⑤Thanks to its rich cultural and scientific content, Yun Jin is called by specialists the last milestone in the development of brocade fabrication in ancient China and wins the name of “Chinese gem” and “oriental specialty”.

主题：中国传统文化——云锦
难点及词汇注释：
句① 句子较长，可将其拆译为两个独立的句子。“用料考究、织工精细、图案色彩典雅富丽”可译为 with 引导的伴随状语；“宛如……”可译为“as… as…”。
句②“只有”可译为状语“exclusively”。
句③“精品”可译为“masterpiece”；“元、明、清”可译为现在分词短语，做伴随状语。
句④“因其丰富的文化和科技内涵”可译为“thanks to…”；“里程碑”可译为“milestone”。

热点演练 33

①说到中国文化，不得不提到长城。②从公元前 7 世纪到公元 16 世纪，在大约2 200 年的时间里，先后有 19 个朝代修过长城，所修的长城累计有 10 万千米以上。③三次浩大的长城修建工程，是在秦代、汉代和明代。④现今存有遗迹的主要是明长城，从东边入海口的山海关（Shanhai Pass）开始，一直到沙漠深处的嘉峪关（Jiayu Pass），全长 6 700 千米。⑤长城是世界历史上最伟大的工程，延续时间之长、参与人数之多、工程难度之大，在世界无出其右。	①When it comes to Chinese culture, the Great Wall is the one that is definitely referred to. ②From the 7th century BC to the 16th century AD, through about 2,200 years, the Great Wall was built in 19 dynasties and reached the length more than 100,000 kilometers. ③Three major constructions and renovation were carried out in Qin, Han and Ming dynasties. ④The Great Wall we visit nowadays is mainly the Great Wall of Ming dynasty, stretching 6,700 kilometers from Shanhai Pass on the eastern seashore to Jiayu Pass in the depth of desert. ⑤The Great Wall is the greatest project in the history of the world, for its unparalleled span of construction, numbers of labor and difficulty.

主题：中国景观——长城

难点及词汇注释：

句①“说到……”可译为句型“when it comes to…”，这是英语中的一个常用句型，应着重记忆。

句②句子较长，但结构并不复杂，找准主干即可。

句④“从东边入海口……”描述“明长城的状态”，可译为现在分词短语 stretching…，表示伴随。

句⑤“延续时间……”是对“长城是世界历史上最伟大的工程”的原因的解释，可译为 for 引导的原因状语。“无出其右”可理解为“没有比它再伟大的了”，可译为 unparalleled。

热点演练 34

①说到中国古代的科技文明，就不能不说四大发明：指南针、火药、造纸术和印刷术。②人们普遍认为，这四大发明对中国古代的政治、经	①When it comes to science and technology in ancient China, the Four Great Inventions, including the compass, gunpowder, papermaking and printing, should always be discussed. ②It is believed that the Four Great Inventions promote

济、文化的发展产生了巨大的推动作用；并且这些发明经由各种途径传至西方，也影响着世界的文明进程。③从历史发展来看，中国古代的四大发明是为人类社会生活带来革命性变化的科学发明，这是中国人对世界文明的伟大贡献。④中国四大发明，在人类科学文化史上留下了灿烂的一页，推动了人类历史的前进。	the development of Chinese ancient politics, economy and culture dramatically; moreover, these inventions have great impact on the civilization of the world since they have been introduced into Western world in various ways. ③ From the perspective of historical development, the Four Great Inventions of ancient China are scientific inventions that bring revolutionary changes to the social life of human beings, which are the great contributions Chinese made to the civilization of the world. ④The Four Great Inventions of ancient China are brilliant in human science and culture history and promote the progress of human history.

主题：中国传统文化——四大发明

难点及词汇注释：

句①“说到……”可译为句型“when it comes to…”。冒号后的内容是对“四大发明”的列举，可用 including 来引导。

句②本句中“人们”是泛指，并不表示强调，可将该句译为被动语态“it is believed…”。本句包含两个句子，由分号连接，在翻译时，可将其拆分为两个独立的句子，也可以用分号连接两个句子。“这些发明经由……”解释“影响着世界的文明进程”的原因，可用 since 来引导。

句③“为人类社会生活带来革命性变化”可译为定语从句，修饰“科学发明”。“这是中国人……”则是修饰其前整个句子，所以可译为 which 引导的非限制性定语从句。

热点演练 35

①中国人创造了很多独特的艺术形式，如纯净的瓷器、千古传诵的唐诗、以演员表演为中心的京剧等。②这些艺术形式呈现了中国人的心灵世界，显现了中国人的独特美感，	①The Chinese have created many unique forms of art, such as pure porcelain, enduring Tang poetry and actor-centered Peking Opera, etc. ② These art forms, with everlasting beauty, reveal the inner world of the Chinese people, demonstrate their unique sense of aesthetics

成为展示中国人的生命力和创造力的窗口，具有永恒的美丽。③中国人将艺术当作提升人生境界、慰藉（soothe）心灵的媒介。④艺术是中国人人生哲学的延伸。⑤中国的艺术传统，是一部记载着中国人生活品位和美感的活的图画，反映出了中国人的优雅心态。	and become the windows that show the vitality and creativity of Chinese people. ③ The Chinese regard art as a medium to enhance the quality of life and to soothe the mind. ④Chinese art is an extension of the Chinese philosophy on life. ⑤Chinese art tradition is a vivid picture of the Chinese people's lifestyle and aesthetics, reflecting Chinese elegance.

主题：中国传统文化——中国艺术

难点及词汇注释：

句①“如……”是对“艺术形式”的举例，可以用 such as 来引导。“千古传诵的”可译为“enduring”；“以……为中心的”可译为“sth.-centered”。

句②“具有永恒的美丽”描述的是“艺术形式”，可译为 with 引导的状语，表伴随。“呈现……”“显现”“成为……”并列做句子谓语。

句③“……的媒介”可译为“a medium to…”。

句⑤ 该句的主干结构为“中国的艺术传统是一部图画”，翻译时抓住这一条主线即可。“中国人生活品位和美感世界的”可译为 of…，做后置定语。“反映出了……”是对“图画”的说明，可译为现在分词短语 reflecting…。

热点演练 36

①在指南针发明之前，人们在茫茫大海上航行时，只能靠太阳和星星的位置来辨认方向。②如果遇上阴雨天，他们就会迷失方向。③中国人发明的指南针帮助人们解决了这个难题。④指南针是指示方向的仪器。⑤早在战国时期（the Warring States Period），中国人就发现了磁石（magnet）指示南北的特性，并根据这种特	① Before the compass was invented, people sailing at sea identified the direction by the position of the sun and stars. ②If it was cloudy or rainy, they would get lost. ③It was the compass invented by the Chinese people that solved this problem. ④ The compass is the instrument used for indicating direction. ⑤As early as the Warring States Period, the Chinese discovered that a magnet could be applied to indicate the south and north and a direction-indicating instrument sinan was made on the

性制成了指示方向的仪器——司南（sinan）。⑥到了宋代，人们制成“罗盘（luopan）”。⑦指南针的发明给航海事业带来了划时代的影响，世界航运史也由此翻开了新的一页。	basis of this feature. ⑥In the Song Dynasty, people created a proper compass called luopan. ⑦The invention of the compass has an epoch-making influence on navigation, thereby opening up a new era in the history of international navigation.

主题：中国传统文化——指南针

难点及词汇注释：

句① “在茫茫大海上航行时”可译为现在分词短语，做后置定语，修饰“人们”。

句② “迷失方向”可译为“get lost”。

句③ 本句可以译为普通句式“The compass invented by the Chinese people solved this problem”，也可译为强调句型“It was… that…”，强调“the compass”。

句⑤ 句子较长，但结构并不复杂，根据“并”可知，该句用 and 连接即可。

句⑥ “划时代的”可译为“epoch-making”。“世界航运史……”是其前内容的结果，可译为现在分词短语，做结果状语。

热点演练 37

①中国民间艺术与中国哲学统一于“阴阳（yin-yang）生万物”这一理念。②这一理念源于中国原始社会，是对人类的人生感悟的哲学注解。③中国人祖先的哲学论断是“近看自己，远观他人”。④要理解中国民间艺术的原始艺术，这一结论必不可少。⑤人类的本能欲望是生存并通过繁衍（propagation）继续存在。⑥人生来的首要本能是求生，然后是长寿。⑦从原始社会到今天，阴阳和永生的观念始终贯穿中国的社会生活和民族文化。⑧中国民间艺术反映了社	①Chinese folk art and Chinese philosophy are unified in the belief that yin-yang produces all living things in the world. ②This belief originated in Chinese primitive society, and was the philosophical explanation of human's perception of life. ③Chinese ancestor's philosophical conclusion was to “look at oneself up close and other creatures from afar”, which is essential to the understanding of the primitive art to the folk art of the nation. ④To live and to continue life through propagation are the two instinctive desires of human. ⑤From birth, a person's first instinct is to survive, and then to live a long life. ⑥From primitive society to the present day, the view of yin-yang and perpetual life has permeated in all aspects of social life

会的所有基本哲学理念。	and the national culture of Chinese society. ⑦Chinese folk art reflects all of the basic philosophical concepts of society.

主题：中国传统文化——中国民间艺术

难点及词汇注释：

句①“阴阳生万物”可译为“yin-yang produces all living things”。

句②“人生感悟”可译为“perception of life”。

句③④可合译为一句话，其中句④可译为 which 引导的定语从句，使用 be essential to…的句型。“近看自己，远观他人”可译为“look at oneself up close and other creatures from afar”。

句⑥“本能”可译为“instinct”。

句⑦“从原始社会到今天”提示，本句应使用现在完成时态。“永生”可译为“perpetual life”。

热点演练 38

①围棋（Weiqi）是两位对弈者之间战略性的棋盘游戏（board game）。②围棋已有3000多年的历史，可以说是所有古代棋类游戏的起源。③围棋的规则很简单，但是有数不尽的策略，这就是围棋的魅力所在。④下一盘围棋的时间短至15分钟，长至数天。⑤但是多数情况下，下一盘围棋需要一两个小时。⑥围棋是综合科学、艺术和竞赛的游戏。⑦围棋对于智力发展、性格培养和灵活的策略学习非常有益。⑧难怪围棋已经流行了几千年，并逐渐成为一项国际文化游戏。	①Weiqi is a strategic board game between two players. ②With a history of over 3,000 years, the game can be regarded as the originator of all ancient chess games. ③The rules of Weiqi are very simple but there are countless variations of strategies, which is where the beauty of the game lies. ④The time for one round of Weiqi can be as short as 15 minutes or as long as a few days. ⑤In most cases, though, it takes one or two hours to finish one round. ⑥Weiqi is a game that combines science, art and competition. ⑦It's beneficial for intelligence development, personality cultivation and flexible strategy learning. ⑧It's no wonder the game having been popular for thousands of years and is gradually becoming an international cultural game.

主题：中国传统文化——围棋

难点及词汇注释：

句①“战略性的”可译为“strategic”。

句②“围棋已有3000多年的历史”可译为with引导的伴随状语。

句③“这就是……”为修饰其前内容的定语，可译为which引导的非限制性定语从句。

句④“一盘围棋”可译为“one round of Weiqi”；“短至”和“长至”分别可译为as short as和as long as。

句⑥“综合科学、艺术和竞赛”为修饰“游戏”的定语，可将其译为that/which引导的定语从句。

句⑧“难怪……”可译为“It's no wonder…”。

热点演练 39

①景德镇（Jingdezhen）位于江西省东北部，以瓷器而文明，历来被誉为中国的“千年瓷都”。②在景德镇出产的各类瓷器中，尤以青花瓷（blue and white porcelain）最为突出。③清代是青花瓷的鼎盛时期。④景德镇青花瓷以其烧造精致而独占鳌头。⑤新中国成立后，在景德镇设立了人民瓷厂（People's Porcelain Factory）专门生产青花瓷。⑥景德镇青花瓷造型优美，色彩绚丽，装饰精美，是景德镇四大传统名瓷之一，素有“永不凋谢的青花瓷”之称。⑦青花瓷远销世界各地，受到世界人民的喜爱。	① Jingdezhen, located in northeast of Jiangxi Province, is famous for porcelain and is honored as “home of porcelain for thousands of years” in China. ② Among different types of porcelain produced in Jingdezhen, blue and white porcelain is the most renowned. ③ Blue and white porcelain reached its peak in Qing Dynasty. ④ Blue and white porcelain from Jingdezhen ranked first for its fine production. ⑤ After new China was founded, People's Porcelain Factory was set up in Jingdezhen to produce blue and white porcelain specially. ⑥ Blue and white porcelain from Jingdezhen is elegantly shaped, rich in color and delicately decorated. ⑦ It is one of the four famous traditional types of porcelain in Jingdezhen, and enjoys the reputation of “ever-green blue and white porcelain”. ⑧ Blue and white porcelain has been sold to countries all over the world and is liked by people around the world.

主题：中国传统文化——景德镇瓷器

难点及词汇注释：

句①“位于江西省东北部”可译为过去分词短语 located in…，做后置定语，修饰“景德镇”。“被誉为……”可译为“be honored as…”。

句③“清代是……的时期”在翻译时，应对其进行灵活运用，将“清代”译为时间状语，而将“青花瓷”译为主语。增译谓语“达到（鼎盛时期）”。

句④“独占鳌头”可理解为“最优秀的”，可译为“rank first”。

句⑤“设立”可译为“set up”。

句⑥ 句子较长，可以“是景德镇……”为界，将其拆译为两个独立的句子。“造型优美”可译为“elegantly shaped”。“永不凋谢的”可译为“evergreen”。

热点演练 40

①在中国，酒（white spirit）作为一种特殊的文化形式，有着5000多年的历史。②林超所著的《杯里春秋》（*The Spring and Autumn in the Cup*）一书认为，喝酒有点像学问，而不是大吃大喝。③中国历史上有很多关于酒的故事。④唐代伟大诗人李白可以“斗酒诗百篇”，喝得越多，他的诗就作得越好。⑤在中国民俗中，酒有着极其重要的地位。⑥不论是君王还是平民，都用烈酒（spirit）庆祝各个节日、婚礼、生日聚会，纪念逝者，为亲友接风或送行，庆祝好消息，摆脱焦虑和治疗疾病以求长寿。	① White spirit, as a special form of Chinese culture, has a history of more than 5,000 years. ② According to the book *The Spring and Autumn in the Cup* by Lin Chao, white spirit drinking is something of learning rather than eating and drinking. ③ There are many stories about white spirit in Chinese history. ④ The great poet Li Bai in the Tang Dynasty could “write 100 poems after drinking white spirit”, and the more white spirit he drank, the better his poem would be. ⑤ White spirit plays an extremely important role in Chinese folk custom. ⑥ Spirits are used to celebrate different festivals, wedding ceremonies and birthday parties, to memorize the departed, to welcome and send off relatives and friends, to congratulate the good news and to get rid of anxiety, to cure diseases and prolong life, both for emperors and ordinary people.

主题：中国传统文化——中国的“酒文化”

难点及词汇注释：

句①“作为……”可译为“as…”。

句②“林超所著的”可译为“《杯里春秋》”的后置定语；“而不是”可译为“rather than”。

句④“斗酒诗百首”表达的意思是“喝酒之后可以作百首诗”。“喝得越多……”与其前内容并列，可译为 and 连接的并列成分。“越……越……”可译为“the ＋比较级，the＋比较级”结构。

句⑥“庆祝各个节日、婚礼、生日聚会”“纪念逝者”“为亲友接风或送行”“庆祝好消息”“摆脱焦虑”“治疗疾病以求长寿”均是对“烈酒”的应用，可用 and 连接。“接风”可译为“welcome”；“送行”可译为“send off”。

第二部分

写　作

写作导学

一、六级写作透视

（一）写作命题方向

1 命题形式

六级写作的命题形式，在 2011 年 12 月考次之前，一直是以“英文 Directions + 中文提纲”的形式为主，偶尔会出现“英文 Directions + 中文提纲 + 图表”，但自从 2011 年 12 月考次以后，六级写作开始变为只有英文 Directions 而无中文提纲的命题形式。

从近几次的六级真题来看，这种命题形式主要有两个类型：第一类是哲言命题，英文指示（Directions）中会给出一句能体现出主题的格言或警句或是类似的哲理性话语，要求考生从一定的角度进行分析评论，指示中可能会给出标题，也可能不给，需要考生自拟。第二类是图画或图表命题，命题中给出一个图画或图表，图画中一般会带有一些提示性语言，图表中会提供数据，英文指示（Directions）中则会要求结合图画或图表内容从一定的角度进行分析评论，与第一类命题一样，指示中可能会给出标题，也可能不给，需要考生自拟。

另外，最近的四级真题还出现了情景式命题和单纯的英文 Directions 命题，前者的命题中，除了英文指示（Directions）以外，还会给出简单的情景，要求考生根据该情景要求进行写作，这种命题经常会带有一定的应用文性质；后者的 Directions 中基本上只给出主题，这类命题往往开放性较强，对内容和形式的限定比较宽泛，考生发挥的余地较大。鉴于四、六级考试的相通性，不排除今年六级写作中也出现以上两类命题形式。

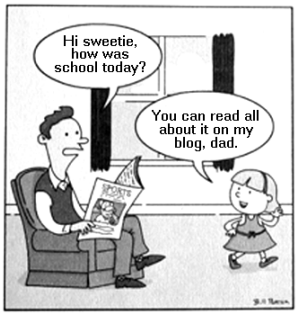
例 1 （2013 年 12 月（1））

Directions: *For this part you are allowed* 30 *minutes to write an essay* **commenting on the remark** “*The greatest use of life is to spend it for something that will outlast it.*” *You can give examples to illustrate your point and then* **explain what you will do to make your life more meaningful**. *You should write at least* 150 *words but no more than* 200 *words.*

分析： 本题属于哲言命题形式，（英文 Directions 中含哲言）命题指示中给出一句哲言，要求对该哲言进行评论，并结合哲言阐释其中的道理和自己的做法。本题中没有给出标题，需要考生自拟。

例 2 （2012 年 6 月）

Directions: *For this part, you are allowed* 30 *minutes to write a short essay entitled* **The Impact of the Internet on Interpersonal Communication**. *Your essay should start with a brief description of the picture. You should write at least* 150 *words but no more than* 200 *words.*



分析： 本题属于图画命题形式（英文 Directions + 图画），命题中给出一幅图画，要求考生简要描述图画，并对图画中反映的现象进行分析评述。

2 题材及体裁

从题材上来看，六级作文主要涉及三个方面的话题：一是与学生学习、生活相关的话题，如 2011 年 6 月六级作文的主题是关于“大学生考证热”；二是与人们生活息息相关的有关社会发展变化的热点话题，如 2012 年 6 月的六级作文的主题是关于“互联网对人际交往的影响”；三是关于人生哲理以及做人做事道理等方面的话题，如 2013 年 12 月六级试题（2）的作文主题是关于“什么是真正的幸福”。

从体裁上来看，六级作文基本都是短小的论说文，主要包括道理阐释类、说明现象类、对策方法类以及对比分析类。另外，2005 年以前六级作文中还曾经考过应用文，以信函为主。以下是 2000 年以来六级作文真题的题材和类型统计：

考试时间	标题/主题	题材	作文类型	命题方式
2015 年 6 月(1)	“Knowledge isa treasure, but practice is the key to it.”	学生学习	道理阐释类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2015 年 6 月(2)	“If you cannot do great things, do small things in a great way.”	日常生活	道理阐释类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2015 年 6 月(3)	“I have no special talents, but I am only passionately curious.”	学生学习	道理阐释类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2014 年 12 月(1)	Whether technology is indispensable in education	社会热点	对比分析类	英文 Directions +图画
2014 年 12 月(2)	What qualities an employer should look for in job applicants	社会热点	对比分析类	英文 Directions +图画
2014 年 12 月(3)	Whether there Is a shortcut to learning	学生学习	对比分析类	英文 Directions +图画
2014 年 6 月(1)	Why it is unwise to jump to conclusion upon seeing or hearing something	日常生活	道理阐释类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2014 年 6 月(2)	Why it is unwise to judge a person by their appearance	日常生活	道理阐释类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2014 年 6 月(3)	Why it is unwise to put all your eggs in one basket	日常生活	道理阐释类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2013 年 12 月(1)	The Meaning of Life（自拟）	人生哲理	道理阐释类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2013 年 12 月(2)	Happiness	人生哲理	道理阐释类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2013 年 12 月(3)	The Impact of the Information Explosion	社会热点	说明现象类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2013 年 6 月(1)	Good Habits Result from Refusing Temptation	日常生活	道理阐释类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2013 年 6 月(2)	A Smile Is the Shortest Distance between Two People	日常生活	道理阐释类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2013 年 6 月(3)	Cherish and Protect the Earth（自拟）	社会热点	道理阐释类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2012 年 12 月(1)	On Maintaining Trust	人生哲理	对策方法类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）

（续）

考试时间	标题/主题	题材	作文类型	命题方式
2012 年 12 月(2)	Man and Computer	社会热点	对策方法类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2012 年 6 月	The Impact of the Internet on Interpersonal Communication	社会热点	说明现象类	英文 Directions + 图画
2011 年 12 月	The way to Success	人生哲理	道理阐释类	英文 Directions（哲言命题）
2011 年 6 月	Certificate Craze	学生学习	说明现象类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2010 年 12 月	My View on University Ranking	社会热点	对比分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2010 年 6 月	Due Attention Should Be Given to the Study of Chinese	学生学习	对策方法类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2009 年 12 月	Should Parents Send Their Kids to Art Classes?	社会热点	对比分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2009 年 6 月	On the Importance of a Name	日常生活	对比分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2008 年 12 月	How to Improve Students' Mental Health?	学生生活	对策方法类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2008 年 6 月	Will E-books Replace Traditional Books?	社会热点	对比分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2007 年 12 月	Digital Age	社会热点	说明现象类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2007 年 6 月	Should One Expect a Reward When Doing a Good Deed?	日常生活	对比分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2006 年 12 月新题型	The Importance of Reading Classics	学生学习	对策方法类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2006 年 12 月老题型	The Celebration of Western Festivals	社会热点	说明现象类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2006 年 6 月	Traveling Abroad	社会热点	说明现象类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲 + 图表
2005 年 12 月	A Letter Declining a Job Offer	工作求职	应用类（拒绝信）	英文 Directions + 中文提纲

（续）

考试时间	标题/主题	题材	作文类型	命题方式
2005 年 6 月	Say No to Pirated Products	社会热点	对策方法类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2005 年 1 月	Your Help Needed	学生生活	应用类（倡议书）	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2004 年 6 月	A Letter to the Editor of a Newspaper	日常生活	应用类（投诉信）	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2004 年 1 月	Reduce Waste on Campus	学生生活	对策方法类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2003 年 9 月	Reading Preference	学生学习	说明现象类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2003 年 6 月	Changes in the Ownership of Houses	日常生活	说明现象类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2003 年 1 月	It Pays to Be Honest	人生哲理	道理阐释类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2002 年 6 月	Student Use of Computers	学生学习	说明现象类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲 + 图表
2002 年 1 月	A Letter to the University President about the Canteen Service on Campus	学生生活	应用类（投诉信或建议信）	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2001 年 6 月	A Letter to a Schoolmate	学生学习	应用类（建议信）	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2001 年 1 月	How to Succeed in a Job Interview?	工作求职	对策方法类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2000 年 6 月	Is a Test of Spoken English Necessary?	学生学习	对比分析类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲
2000 年 1 月	How I Finance My College Education?	学生生活	对策方法类	英文 Directions + 中文提纲

（二）写作评分标准

大学英语六级考试大纲规定，六级作文部分所占分值比例为 15%，标准分满分为 106.5。阅卷评分时按照满分 15 分计算，最后，再换算成标准分。评分标准共分五个等级：2 分、5 分、8 分、11 分和 14 分。

阅卷人员根据阅卷标准对照样卷进行评分，先就总体印象划定作文等级，然后根据具体情况对分数进行适当调整。若认为与某一分数等级相似，即定为该分数等级，若阅卷过程中发现该作文稍优或稍劣于该分数等级，则可加 1 分或减 1 分。

在总体作文评分原则的指导下，六级作文的评分强调五项标准，即**内容切题**，**表达清楚**，**文字连贯**，**句式多变**和**语言规范**。各分数档的具体评判标准如下：

2 分——条理不清，思路紊乱，语言支离破碎或大部分句子均有错误，且多数为严重错误。

5 分——基本切题，表达思想不清楚，连贯性差，有较多的严重语言错误。

8 分——基本切题，有些地方表达思想不够清楚，文字勉强连贯，语言错误相当多，其中有一些是严重错误。

11 分——切题，表达思想清楚，文字连贯，但有少量语言错误。

14 分——切题，表达思想清楚，文字通顺、连贯，基本上无语言错误，仅有个别小错。

（三）写作基本步骤

六级作文尽管结构并不复杂，但考生仍然需要遵照写作的基本步骤，这样才能避免出现思路不畅、衔接不当、偏题等问题。

第 1 步：确定各段主题

为了确保作文结构的完整性和紧密性，我们一般建议采用三段式。2012 年 12 月考次以前，命题中大都会给出 2 ~ 3 点中文提纲，这对确定各段主题有很大的提示作用。但近两年的考试中，命题中不再有中文提纲及其他中文提示，而是会给出英文的格言警句或是图画、图表，这就给考生确定文章结构和段落主题增加了难度。考生需要结合标题及格言警句或是图画、图表一并进行分析，从而理清写作思路，确定段落结构和各段主题。

第 2 步：列出各段提纲

确定各段主题以后，不要匆忙动笔，应该在草稿纸或心中将各段要写的内容大致列出，做到心中有数，这样才能做到行文流畅，衔接自然。

例（2012 年 12 月（2））

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay entitled **Man and Computer** by commenting on the saying, "The real danger is not that the computer will begin to think like man, but that man will begin to think like the computer." You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

第一段主题及提纲：提出“人们过度依赖电脑”这个问题——阐述电脑的普及；由题目中给出的话引出主题：人们现在过度依赖电脑。
第二段主题：说明人们过度依赖的表现及危害——什么事都依赖电脑；失去了独立思考的能力；在电脑前花费太长时间。
第三段主题：提出解决建议——减少对电脑的依赖；电脑只是工具。

第 3 步：逐一展开段落

一般来说，段落的基本构成包括：主题句、扩展句和结尾句。

主题句只有一句，要具有概括性，要表述清楚、简单明了，注意不可过长。扩展句是主题句内容的延伸和语意的补充，起着进一步阐述主题句、扩展段落中心思想的作用，因此一般都要有两句以上。结尾句也只有一句，主要用来总结段落的主要内容或得出结论，常常和段落主题句在意义上相互呼应。

需要注意的是，并不是每个段落都必须包含主题句、扩展句和结尾句，段落主题句与结尾句可以只有一个。

例（2012 年 12 月（2））

Man and Computer **第一段**	**第一段**
①With the development of computer industry and artificial intelligence, some people begin to worry that the intellectualization of the computer will pose a new challenge to human beings. ②However, just as the saying goes, “The real danger is not that the computer will begin to think like man, but that man will begin to think like the computer”.	第 1 句：开头句——人们担心计算机的智能化会给人类带来挑战。 第 2 句：主题句——转折指出问题所在：真正应该担心的是人类会像计算机一样思考。
第二段	**第二段**
①In recent years, people have become so heavily dependent on computers that without them people couldn’t work or live normally. ②With computers thinking for them, people gradually lose the ability of thinking independently, critically and	第 1 句：主题句—指出人们对计算机的依赖之深。 第 2 句：扩展句——阐述依赖电脑的危

flexibly. ③ In addition, people sit in front of the computer so long that they have little time communicating and interacting with people in real life. ④As time goes by, their ways of acting and thinking begin to become more and more like the machine, which is very dangerous to the advancement of human society.	害：人们失去了独立思考能力。 第 3 句：扩展句——进一步阐述依赖电脑的危害：没有时间进行现实的交流。 第 4 句：扩展句——进一步阐述依赖电脑的危害：行为和思维都越来越像机器。
第三段 ①Considering the above-mentioned of dangers, we should reduce overdependence on the computer and avoid thinking like the computer. ②We should always keep in mind that the computer is only a useful tool. ③Under no circumstances should we allow the computer to control our thinking and even replace our thinking.	**第三段** 第 1 句：主题句——提出“我”的建议：应该减少电脑的依赖、避免像电脑一样思考。 第 2 句：扩展句——进一步阐述“我”的建议：记住电脑只是工具。 第 3 句：结尾句——进一步阐述“我”的建议：在任何情况下都不应该允许电脑控制我们的思维，甚至取代我们思维。

第 4 步：通读全文检查

对于这一步，很多考生都会因为时间紧张而忽略，其实，花上一两分钟的时间通读一遍全文，经常可以避免那些拼写、语法和句子结构方面的小错误，而这

些看似很小的错误，很多时候会对作文分数等级的评定产生很大的影响。

二、典型试题自测

自测一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **On Maintaining Trust** by commenting on the saying "It takes years to build trust, and a few seconds to destroy it." You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

自测二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay commenting on the remark "A smile is the shortest distance between two people." You may cite some examples to support your view. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

三、范文及点评

作文一

框架搭建：本题虽然没有给出中文提纲，但从所给标题和提示来看，本题是关于信任问题，由此可判断本文应为对策方法类作文。基本段落安排如下：第一段简单分析所给哲言，由此引出信任问题；第二段指出目前社会上的信任危机，强调在全社会维持信任的重要性；第三段针对如何在全社会维持信任提出自己的建议。

范文

On Maintaining Trust

（1）Just as a saying goes，“It takes years to build trust，and a few seconds to destroy it.” It suggests that the building of trust takes long-term，persistent efforts（2）while it is very easy to（3）make these efforts in vain，by even only one lie or cheating.

People often feel some kind of trust crisis in today's society，（4）which penetrates in many aspects of our lives and work.（5）For example，the Sanlu milk powder incident in 2008 caused the public's strong dissatisfaction and distrust with the whole food industry and the government. Until today，many people still（6①）would rather pay more money for imported milk（6②）than buy cheaper domestic one. How to maintain trust has become a thought-provoking thing（7①）not only for an individual，a businessman，（7②）but our government and our whole society.

From my point of view，our government should play a critical role in maintaining social trust.（8①）For one thing，there must be sound systems and strong supervision to guarantee honesty and integrity in every department and every industry（9）so as to regain the confidence of consumers.（8②）For another，the government should try to ensure（10）transparency and openness of information（11）since understanding is the premise of trust.

点评

本文属于典型的三段式结构，各段详略得当；内容切题；文字通顺、连贯，段与段、句与句之间过渡自然、衔接紧密；句型丰富多变，句式和用词上有很多闪光点，主要包括：

（1）自然引出题目中所给名言。

（2）while 表前后对比。

（3）表示“使这些努力徒劳”。

（4）which 引导非限制性定语从句。

（5）举例说明，说服力强。

（6）would rather… than… 表示“宁愿……而不愿……”

（7）not only… but（also）连接并列成分。

（8）列举两条建议，条理清晰。

（9）表示“以便”，表目的。

（10）表示“信息的透明和公开”。

（11）since 引导原因状语从句，表示既定的、已成事实的原因。

作文二

框架搭建：本题虽然没有给出中文提纲，但从所给标题和提示来看，本题是关于微笑的重要作用，由此可判断本文应为道理阐释类作文，基本段落安排如下：第一段由题目中给出的名言引出主题：微笑具有强大的力量；第二段举例论证微笑的力量；第三段总结全文，再次强调微笑的作用。

范文

A Smile Is the Shortest Distance Between Two People

We often hear people say "A smile is the shortest distance between two people." This remark shows us the power of a smile. A smile is the most direct expression and communication between person to person. A smile,（1）though very simple, can often bring people（2）confidence in life, strength to advance, and courage to strive.

（3）There are too many examples in which we have seen and felt the power of a smile. Our volunteers for the 2008 Olympic Games,（4）in whatever occasions, facing whatever color or country of people, had always been smiling,（5）which conveyed warmth, friendship, welcome, and a kind of strength to embrace the world. And that（6）impressing picture of various smiling faces from all over the world（7）eliminated the distance between people in the simplest way. In that earthquake in 2008,（8）for another example, when a solider saved a little child from the ruins and put him on the stretcher, he smiled lightly. That innocent smile showed optimism and a hopeful future of our（9）affected people.

Our life needs smiles; our world needs smiles. As young people, we should try to（10）pass its power to every corner in the world.

点评

本文属于典型的三段式结构，段落安排合理，各段详略得当；句型丰富多变，段与段、句与句之间过渡自然、衔接紧密；句式和用词上有很多闪光点，主要包括：

（1）插入语，表示让步。

（2）三个并列的名词短语使表达更加有力。

（3）引出例子。

（4）插入语使用恰当，体现出语言功底。

（5）which 引导非限制性定语从句，使结构衔接更加紧密。

（6）and 连接的并列结构增加了表达的力度。

（7）表示"消除距离"。

（8）以插入语的形式引出另一个例子。

（9）表示"受灾群众"。

（10）表示"将微笑的力量传递到世界每一个角落"，增强了结尾的表达力度。

四、给考生的复习建议

我们相信，同学们将自己所写作文与所给范文进行对比以后，一定已经对自己在写作方面的弱势有所体会。从所给范文和点评中我们不难看出，一篇作文要想取得高分，**首先，结构和框架必须安排合理；其次，句型要丰富，衔接要得当；最后，句式和用词上要有闪光点。**

因此，我们给考生的复习建议是，针对以上三个方面，循序渐进，一一攻克，以下四步是周计划给您的复习建议：

第一步：掌握六级作文中高频作文类型的结构框架，熟悉高频作文类型的段落安排。

第二步：熟练掌握六级作文中常涉及段落的常用句式写法，学会变换使用各类句型和各种过渡衔接词语。

第三步：学会在适当的地方设计闪光点，牢记六级作文中常用的闪光句式和用词。

第四步：把握六级作文的命题趋势，练透六级作文的热点话题，考场上遇到什么题材就能够思如泉涌，挥洒自如。

第三周

套用高频公司，驾驭三段结构，轻松拿9分

利用实用有效的结构公式，熟练掌握说明现象类、对策方法类、对比分析类、道理阐释类、应用类 5 大类高频作文的三段结构模式，考试中碰到什么作文都能轻松布局、快速谋篇。

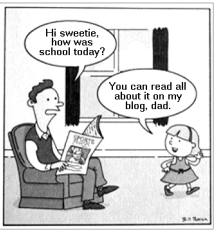
星期一　说明现象类作文结构

一、什么是说明现象类作文

说明现象类作文一般是需要考生描述所给文字、图画或图表中反映出的现象的总体情况，对该现象的原因、相关因素或影响进行解释说明，并分析该现象中可能存在的问题或将来的发展趋势。

例（2012 年 6 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **The Impact of the Internet on Interpersonal Communication.** Your essay should start with a brief description of the picture. Your should write at least **150** words but no more than **200** words.



二、常见结构公式陈列

第一段　描述现象	第一段　描述现象
①Nowadays/In recent years，概	①主题句：概括指出现象。

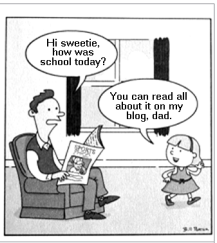
述现象。②现象表现。③In addition/Also，进一步描述现象表现或变化。	②扩展句一：现象的具体表现或变化。 ③扩展句二：进一步说明现象的表现或变化。
或　概述图表 ① From the picture/cartoon，we can see / The picture shows us 概述图画内容。② 进一步描述图画内容。③（Funny/ Exaggerated as it seems，）this picture describes vividly / this picture reflects/ this phenomenon 总体评述现象。	**或　概述图表** ① 开头句：概述图画内容 ② 扩展句：进一步描述图画内容 ③ 主题句：总体评述图画所反映的现象
或　概述图表 ①From the chart / graph / table，we clearly learn that 总述现象、变化或问题。②图表中初期的数据或情况。③ However，图表中数据或情况的变化。	**或　概述图表** ①主题句：概括图表所反映的总体现象、变化或问题。 ②扩展句一：概述图表中显示的初期的数据或情况。 ③扩展句二：概述图表中数据或情况的变化。
第二段　说明原因 ④ Many different reasons contribute to 该现象。/ There are many different factors 决定该现象。⑤Among them，第一点原因或因素 play/plays a critical role。⑥Moreover，第二点原因或因素。⑦Besides，第三点原因或因素。	**第二段　说明原因** ④主题句：引出下文对原因的说明。 ⑤扩展句一：说明第一点原因。 ⑥扩展句二：说明第二点原因。 ⑦扩展句三：说明第三点原因。
或　说明影响 ④ 该现象 has brought great influence on 影响对象。⑤Firstly / On the one hand，第一点影响。⑥Secondly / On the other hand，第二点影响。⑦进一步阐述第二点影响 / Finally，第三点影响。	**或　说明影响** ④主题句：引出下文对影响的说明。 ⑤扩展句一：说明第一点影响。 ⑥扩展句二：说明第二点影响。 ⑦扩展句三：进一步阐述第二点影响 / 说明第三点影响。

第三段　总结评述	第三段　总结评述
⑧In my opinion / As for me / From my point of view，本人对现象的总结或评述。⑨具体做出评述。⑩进一步评述或提出建议。⑪做出总结。	⑧主题句：可能现象的发展趋势或利弊评述，或是本人对现象的看法。 ⑨扩展句一：具体做出评述。 ⑩扩展句二：进一步评述或提出建议。 ⑪ 结尾句：总结全文（有时可略去）。

三、结构公式真题演示

例（2012 年 6 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **The Impact of the Internet on Interpersonal Communication**. Your essay should start with a brief description of the picture. You should write at least **150** words but no more than **200** words.



参考范文

The Impact of the Internet on Interpersonal Communication

① The picture shows us a short conversation between father and daughter. ② The father asked his daughter how her school was today. The daughter didn't answer it directly but told her father to read her blog. ③ Funny as it seems, this picture reflects the impact of the Internet on the ways we communicate.

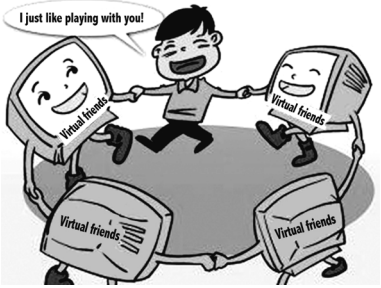
④ The development of the Internet has brought great influence on interpersonal communication. ⑤ On the one hand, the Internet brings great convenience to our communication, which eliminates the barriers of distance and time, so we can contact to each other almost anywhere and anytime. ⑥ On the other hand, the Internet reduces face-to-face communication among people. ⑦ People might become indifferent to each other in real life, just like the father and daughter in the picture.

⑧ From my point of view, the Internet is a double-edged sword. ⑨ It is necessary for us to learn to use it in a reasonable way. ⑩ We should not ignore the face-to-face communication with families and friends while enjoying the convenience brought by the Internet.

四、典型作文操练

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Virtual Community.** Your essay should start with a brief description of the picture. You should write at least **150** words but no more than **200** words.



练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Flash Marriage.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 现在，年轻人中“闪婚”现象越来越多。
2. 分析“闪婚”的不良影响。
3. 你对“闪婚”看法是……

参考范文

练习一

Virtual Community

From the cartoon, we can see that a child is playing happily with his virtual computer friends. This cartoon describes vividly the phenomenon that young people are addicted to virtual network communities. They enjoy doing all kinds of activities in virtual communities such as keeping pets, planting vegetables, making a living, and even getting married.

The reasons for this phenomenon are varied. Among all these reasons, high pressure facing modern people plays a critical role. Virtual network communities

provide people a good place to escape from the real problems temporarily. What's more, in network communities people can experience many things they can not in real life and have many different lifestyles. Besides, network communities give people more chance to communicate with others and people can make more friends with common interests.

From my point of view, a network community does bring us much fun and relax. However, after all, it is a virtual world. If one is immersed in it too much, it might influence his real life. Therefore, I think we should look for more entertainment in our real life instead of putting ourselves in network communities all day.

练习二

Flash Marriage

Nowadays, a growing number of young city dwellers prefer to "flash marriage". They are choosing to get married soon after they know each other. The main reason for this phenomenon is our traditional thoughts of family and marriage have changed a lot. Besides, the fast pace of life and work is also responsible for it.

Undoubtedly, flash marriage can bring great negative influence. Above all, without enough understanding of each other and adequate consideration of practical problems, the young couple are more likely to have contradictions and differences. This might result in their flash divorce. What's more, flash marriage might foster the development of individualism and the lack of responsibility. Besides, the vicious cycle from flash marriage to flash divorce will destroy social harmony.

In my opinion, flash marriage embodies the destruction of traditional opinions on marriage and the desire of young people's pursuing true love. However, the problems that flash marriage might bring cannot be ignored. After all, a marriage is the most important event of one's life and should not be decided too rashly. Therefore, I suggest young people should think twice before they decide to get a flash marriage.

五、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay on the topic **Students Selecting Their Lecturers**. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words following the outline given below:

1. 有些大学允许学生自由选择某些课程的任课教师。
2. 学生选择教师时所考虑的主要因素。
3. 学生自选任课教师的益处和可能产生的问题。

范文	点评
Nowadays, many universities (1①) entitle their students (1②) to choose freely their teachers for courses. This policy has been considered a kind of education and become a hot issue as well, (2①) which is welcomed by most students. (3①) Meanwhile, teachers have also paid much attention to it (4①) since it (5) involves their career fate. There are many different factors (6) influencing the students' choosing a teacher. (7) Among them, a teacher's professional knowledge and ability plays a very important role. (3②) Moreover, (8) quite a few students (9①) take the teachers' teaching methods and teaching style (9②) into account. (3③) Besides, a teacher's physical appearance (10) is also an important factor many students will consider. From my point of view, students' choosing teachers freely (11) has its advantages as well as its disadvantages. (3④) On one hand, it can provide a good chance for a teacher to prove his ability, and give students more initiative in learning. (3⑤) On the other hand, (4②) since it is a free choice, few excellent teachers will become the focus of most students' choosing, (2②) which will lead to an (12) unreasonable class size and influence teaching effect seriously. (3⑥) Therefore, both students and teachers should take this matter into serious consideration.	(1) 意为“给……权利”。 (2) which 引导非限制性定语从句。 (3) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰、意思连贯。 (4) since 引导原因状语从句，常译为“既然”。 (5) 意为“涉及，关系到”。 (6) 现在分词短语充当后置定语。 (7) 列举原因常用句式。 (8) 意为“相当多”，比用 many 和 a lot of 更能体现语言水平。 (9) 意为“考虑，注意，顾及”。 (10) 列举原因的另外一种句式，区别于前两点因素所使用的句式，使句式富于变化。 (11) 意为“有利有弊”。 (12) 意为“不合理的”，形容词使用恰当。

星期二　对策方法类作文结构

一、什么是对策方法类作文

对策方法类作文一般需要考生描述题目中所反映的问题，说明问题的危害和解决问题的必要性，然后针对该问题提出应对策略或解决方法。

例（2010 年 6 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay on the topic of **Due Attention Should Be Given to the Study of Chinese**. You should write at least 150 words following the outline given below.

1）近年来在学生中出现了忽视中文学习的现象

2）出现这种现象的原因和后果

3）为了改变这种状况，我认为……

二、常见结构公式陈列

第一段　提出问题	第一段　提出问题
①提出问题。②问题的重要性或危害。③Besides/Additionally，进一步阐述问题的重要性或危害。④Therefore/No doubt，it is very important/ necessary/ urgent for 问题涉及的对象 to learn how to 解决该问题。	①主题句：概括提出问题。 ②扩展句一：指出问题的重要性或危害性。 ③扩展句二：进一步阐述问题的重要性或危害。 ④结尾句：承上启下，表达解决问题的必要性，引出解决方法。
第二段　说明方法	**第二段　说明方法**
⑤The following ways are effective in 解决问题。/ There are many ways which can be adopted to 解决问题。/ The following factors play an important role in 解决问题。⑥Firstly，第一点方法。⑦Secondly，第二点方法。⑧Finally，第三点方法。	⑤主题句：引出问题的解决方法或决定因素。 ⑥扩展句一：说明第一点解决方法。 ⑦扩展句二：说明第二点解决方法。 ⑧扩展句三：说明第三点解决方法 。

第三段　总结评述	第三段　总结评述
⑨As far as I am concerned/As for me，本人的观点或选择。⑩具体观或选择依据。⑪ To conclude/ Therefore，总结或建议。	⑨主题句：引出本人对该问题或解决方法的观点或选择。 ⑩扩展句：具体阐述观点或选择依据。 ⑪结尾句：做出总结或提出建议。

需要注意的是，有时题目中会明确要求说明问题的危害，这时考生就应该先在第二段详细阐述问题的危害，之后再在第三段说明解决问题的方法或对策。总之，考生要学会根据题目要求灵活处理。

三、结构公式真题演示

例（2001 年 1 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **How to Succeed in a Job Interview**. You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 面试在求职过程中的作用。
2. 取得面试成功的因素：仪表、举止谈吐、能力、专业知识、自信、实事求是……

参考范文

How to Succeed in a Job Interview

①It is generally accepted that interview is an important part in one's hunting for a job. ②One's performance in a job interview often can decide whether he can be employed. ③ Additionally, the interview provides a good chance for the interviewee to display his or her ability. ④Therefore, it is very necessary for a job hunter to learn how to succeed in a job interview.

⑤The following factors play an important role in a successful interview. ⑥Firstly, before an interview, a job hunter should try to know more about the involved position and company. ⑦Secondly, an interviewee should dress neatly and properly, which can help leave the interviewer a good first impression. ⑧Finally, self-confidence is also very important in an interview. With self-confidence, one can take full advantage of the interview to prove his ability.

⑨As far as I am concerned, the importance of an successful interview can not overestimated. ⑩ However, an opportunity is for those who are well-prepared. ⑪ Therefore, every job hunter must take the interview seriously and try to make full preparation for it.

四、典型作文操练

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **How Should College Student Pursue Fashion**? You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 大学生都喜欢追求时尚和流行。
2. 你认为大学生应该如何追求时尚？

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Language Pollution**. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 近年来，不规范、不符合文化背景的“语言污染”现象层出不穷。
2. 分析造成这种现象的原因。
3. 你认为应该如何解决“语言污染”问题？

参考范文

练习一

How Should College Students Pursue Fashion?

As many people know, young college students have been keen on the pursuit of fashion and popularity. Their garments and talking have always kept up with fashion trends. Additionally, they are interested in all kinds of fashionable things and news and always have a quick reaction to any new current trend. However, how should we pursue fashion?

The following things should be paid attention to in our pursuit of fashion. Above all, we should not follow the current trend blindly and should consider our own characteristics. Moreover, we should not compare unrealistically with others. Besides, our own financial abilities must be considered when we try to become a fashionable person.

Of course, I like fashionable things and I want to be a fashionable person. However, in my eyes, fashion is shown not only in one's appearance, but also in his manner and inner charm. Also, a fashionable appearance will not last long. Therefore, I suggest that young college students should not pay too much attention to appearance but should try to improve our inner charms.

练习二

Language Pollution

In recent years, language pollution has become quite a serious problem. Everyday there appear much language pollution around us, such as dirty words, non-standard simplified forms and abuse of foreign language. What's worse, in some major newspapers or TV programs, this kind of abuse of language can often be seen of heard.

It is very clear that language pollution produces harmful effects in many aspects. Above all, it hinders the normal expression and exchange of people's thoughts. For example, if one manager uses dirty words in his business negotiation, he could not make a success in it. Moreover, the widespread of language pollution will surely influence our children's right understanding of language.

Considering seriousness of the problem, it is an urgent thing for us to take effective measures to put language pollution under control. First of all, regulations and laws related to language use standard should be improved. Moreover, those engaged in language work should take on their responsibility for the standardization of language use. Finally, every one of us should try to avoid abusing language in our daily life.

五、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Getting to Know the World Outside the Campus.** You should write at least 150 words and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 大学生了解社会的必要性。
2. 了解社会的途径（大众媒介、社会服务等）。
3. 你打算怎么做。

范文	点评
Getting to Know the World Outside the Campus It（1）is of great significance for a college student to know the world outside the campus. In this（2）fast-developing "Information Age", college students must（3）keep pace with the progress of the world.（4①）Additionally, by	（1）"be of + *n.*" 相当于 "be + *adj.*"。 （2）复合形容词做定语，意为"迅速发展的"。 （3）意为"跟上"。 （4）衔接词语使文章条理清晰，意思连贯。

contacting the off-campus world, college students can have chance to get more practical skills. (4②) Therefore, (5) how to know the world outside the campus (6) is worth our attention. There are many ways which can be adopted by college students to increase their knowledge of the world. (4③) Firstly, mass media, such as radios, televisions, newspapers and the Internet, are a good choice, (7) by which we can (8) be well informed about what is happening. (4④) Secondly, providing volunteer services is one of effective ways for us to contact and get to know the society. (4⑤) Thirdly, we can take part-time jobs to increase our practical experience. (4⑥) As for me, I will try to create and grasp more chances to contact the society (9) so as to be prepared for my future job. In my opinion, getting to know the off-campus world is (10①) as important (10②) as improving academic performance. (4⑦) Therefore, I suggest every college student should (11①) not (12) confine himself to the campus (11②) but often go outside.	(5) "疑问词 + 不定式"结构做主语。 (6) be worth sth. /doing sth. 意为"值得……"。 (7) which 在定语从句中充当介词宾语。 (8) inform 是及物动词，意为"通知，告知"，经常用作被动结构"be informed about/of"。 (9) 表示目的或结果，在此表示目的。 (10) 同级比较结构。 (11) 连接并列结构，意为"不是……而是"。 (12) 意为"将自己局限于"。

星期三　对比分析类作文结构

一、什么是对比分析类作文

对比分析类作文主要有两种：一种是需要考生对比阐述两种观点或做法及各自的理由，然后表明自己的观点或做法并说明理由；另一种是需要考生对比阐述某事物的利和弊、好处和害处或是优点和缺点，继而表明自己的看法或态度。

两种类型结构类似，接下来的结构公式我们主要针对第一种类型来讲解，至于第二种类型的结构，考生只需在掌握第一种类型结构的基础上进行适当变形即可。

例 1（2009 年 6 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **On the Importance of a Name**. You should write at least 150 words following the outline given below:

1. 有人认为名字很重要。
2. 也有人认为无关紧要。
3. 我认为……

例 2

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Recreational Activities**. You should write at least 150 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 娱乐活动多种多样。
2. 娱乐活动可能使人们受益，也可能有危害性。
3. 我作为大学生的看法。

二、常见结构公式陈列

第一段　观点或选择 A	第一段　观点或选择 A
①简述要讨论的主题，引出对它的不同观点或选择 /When it comes to 谈论主题，there is no complete agreement among people。② Some people think/ prefer to/ choose 观点或选择 A。③观点或选择的第一点理由。④观点或选择的第二点理由。	①主题句：提出要讨论的主题，引出两种不同的观点或选择。 ②扩展句一：指出一种观点或选择。 ③扩展句二：阐述该种观点或选择的第一点理由。 ④扩展句三：阐述该种观点或选择的第二点理由。
第二段　观点或选择 B	**第二段　观点或选择 B**
⑤However，there are many others who 观点或选择 B。⑥ In their opinions/They maintain/they point out 观点或选择 B 的第一点理由。⑦ Besides，观点或选择 B 的第二点理由。	⑤主题句：转折引出另一种观点或选择。 ⑥扩展句一：阐述该种观点或选择的第一点理由。 ⑦扩展句二：阐述该种观点或选择的第二点理由。

第三段 “我”的观点或选择	第三段 “我”的观点或选择
⑧As for me, I agree “我”的观点或选择。/ Weighing up these two arguments/choices, “我”的观点或选择。⑨“我”的第一点理由。⑩“我”的第二点理由。⑪ Therefore/ To conclude, 做出总结。	⑧主题句：综合两种观点或选择，表明“我”的观点或选择。 ⑨扩展句一：阐述“我”的第一点理由。 ⑩扩展句一：阐述“我”的第二点理由。 ⑪结尾句：经常是提出建议或做出展望。

三、结构公式真题演示

例（2007 年 6 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Should One Expect a Reward When Doing a Good Deed?** You should write at least 150 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 有人做好事期望得到回报。
2. 有人认为应该像雷锋那样做好事不图回报。
3. 我的观点。

参考范文

Should One Expect a Reward When Doing a Good Deed?

①Nowadays, different people hold different views about whether or not one should expect a reward when doing a good deed. ②Some people think that a good deed should be given a certain reward. ③They say it is agreeable with the rule of fairness. ④Also, rewards can stimulate people's enthusiasm to do good deeds.

⑤However, there are many others who take Leifeng as a model and be always ready to help others without expecting any reward. ⑥They say everyone may be in trouble. Only if you help others unselfishly, you can get others' help when you need it. ⑦Besides, they maintain that one can enjoy happiness in doing good deeds, they think, which is the best return they expect.

⑧Weighing up these two arguments, I prefer the second one. ⑨First, being happy to help others is one of Chinese people's traditional virtues. ⑩Second, this virtue is of more significance for the creation of a harmonious society. ⑪ To conclude, it is every citizen's responsibility to do good deeds without expecting any reward.

四、典型作文操练

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **The Pros and Cons of New Car Limit Policy.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 为了缓解交通压力，交通部门对机动车辆采取了尾号限行政策。
2. 大部分人对此表示支持和欢迎，但也有部分人认为这样做给出行带来了不便。
3. 你对此的看法是……

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Which to Buy First, House or Car?** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 在一些大城市里，关于有了钱是应该先买车还是先买房，人们看法不一。
2. 你的选择是……为什么？

参考范文

练习一

The Pros and Cons of New Car Limit Policy

In order to reduce traffic flow, the traffic department has taken the car limit policy. Every day some cars with different tail numbers are not allowed to run on the road. Some people believe it a good measure to relieve the traffic pressure. They believe with less vehicles on the roads, the traffic certainly runs more smoothly. In addition, they say it can do help reduce the air pollution.

However, still others think differently. In their opinions, the car limit policy brings them nothing but great inconvenience. They say it influences their going out. Besides, they argue, the final solution to the traffic problem should depend on the enlargement of the capacity of public transit systems instead of the traffic control.

Weighing up these two arguments, I am inclined to the former one. For one thing, as we see, since the enforcement of the car limit policy, traffic congestion happens less than before. For another, this policy makes people realize the significance of one "car-free" day and more people begin to reduce their driving consciously. Considering these, I suggest that the car limit policy should be continued and people should try to drive less.

练习二

Which to Buy First, House or Car?

Nowadays there is no complete agreement as to the question "Which to Buy First, House or Car?" Some people take it for granted that the house is the most important thing in one's life, while others think the car is more important in a big city.

Of course, in a big city with so heavy traffic, a car brings a lot of convenience. For example, with a car, I needn't take the crowded bus every day and I can drive to travel. But it is worth noting that a car is not a necessity. In my view, it is more advisable to buy a house first than to buy a car first. The following reasons can support my argument. First, owning a house can give one a feeling of belong and stability. Only in the house of your own can you really enjoy the warmth of the family. Second, price of housing is getting higher in urban area, but the price of car will get down soon. To conclude, I prefer to buy a house first if I have money.

五、每日佳作赏析

Direction: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay on the topic **Should the University Campus Be Open to Tourists?** You should write at least 150 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 名校校园正成为旅游新热点。

2. 校园是否应对游客开放，人们看法不同。
3. 我认为……

范文	点评
（1）When it comes to whether the university campus should be open to tourists, there is no complete agreement among people.（2①）Many people think that university campus should welcome the visiting of tourists. They say that（3）being closed to tourists may make students（4）isolated from the outside world.（5①）Also, they maintain refusing tourists（6）violates the spirit of openness. （2②）However, there are quite a few people who do not favor the university campus being open to tourists. In their opinions, tourists will destroy the quiet environment and influence students' normal study.（5②）Besides, they argue that too many tourists will（7）add a burden to the security department of the university. （8）Weighing up these two arguments, I think a university should be an open place.（9）By visiting the university campus, tourists can feel the rich cultural atmosphere.（5③）In addition, college students can have more chance to contact the people and the world outside the campus.（5④）Therefore, the university campus should be ready to（10）embrace the tourists all over the world.	（1）引出有争议的观点时常用的句式。 （2）对比论述两种相反的观点。 （3）动名词短语做主语。 （4）过去分词短语做宾补，意为“与……隔绝”。 （5）衔接词语使文章条理清晰，意思连贯。 （6）意为“违背开放精神”。 （7）意为“给……增加了负担”。 （8）用于引出个人观点，weigh up 意为“权衡”。 （9）by 表示方式，开头方式富于变化，丰富了句式。 （10）意为“拥抱”，拟人化用法。

星期四　道理阐释类作文结构

一、什么是道理阐释类作文

道理阐释类作文一般需要考生根据题目要求阐述道理或论点，通过举例等方式对道理和论点展开论述，解释其重要意义或作用，最后再对道理或论点进行总结或强调。从近两年的命题来看，题目指示中往往会给出一句谚语或哲言，需要考生对谚语或哲言进行评论、解释，引出其中的道理，然后再展开论述。

例（2013 年 12 月（1））

Directions: For this part you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay **commenting on the remark** "The greatest use of life is to spend it for something that will outlast it." You can give examples to illustrate your point and then **explain what you will do to make your life more meaningful.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

二、常见结构公式陈列

第一段　总述道理	第一段　总述道理
① There is a famous saying/ remark/ proverb about 道理的核心："哲言原文"/ You may know the saying "哲言原文", which reveals 哲言的道理. /The saying "哲言原文" reveals 道理. ②阐述其中的道理或正确性. ③进一步强调其中的道理或意义. /The truth of it is deep and profound.	① 主题句：通过所给哲言或背景引出论述的道理。 ② 扩展句一：阐述道理或其正确性。（有时候主题句也可能在这一句） ③ 扩展句二：进一步阐述或强调其中的道理或意义。

第二段　展开论述 ④ There are numerous examples supporting this argument. /Many remarkable examples contribute to this argument. ⑤A case in point is 第一个例子。⑥进一步说明例一。⑦For another example，第二个例子。⑧进一步说明例二。	**第二段　展开论述** ④主题句：引出事例或其他论据，展开论述。 ⑤扩展句一：列举第一个例子。 ⑥扩展句二：进一步说明例一。 ⑦扩展句三：列举第二个例子。 ⑧扩展句四：进一步说明例二。
第三段　总结道理 ⑨All the above-mentioned tell us that /It is no doubt that/Judging from the evidence offered，we might safely draw the conclusion that 重申道理。⑩提出建议或指出注意事项。⑪ To conclude/Therefore，总结全文。	**第三段　总结道理** ⑨主题句：承接上文，重申道理。 ⑩扩展句：提出建议或指出注意事项。 ⑪结尾句：总结全文，指出正确的做法或态度。
或联系自身 ⑨ As a college student/ As a young man/ As for me，阐述自己的情况、感受或做法。⑩进一步阐述自己的情况、感受或做法。⑪总结全文。	**或联系自身** ⑨主题句：联系自身情况，阐述感受或做法，注意结合前面所论述的道理。 ⑩扩展句：进一步阐述自己的情况、感受或做法。 ⑪结尾句：总结全文，再次重申道理或表达希望或建议。

三、结构公式真题演示

例（2013 年 12 月（1））

Directions: For this part you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay **commenting**

on the remark "The greatest use of life is to spend it for something that will outlast it." You can give examples to illustrate your point and then **explain what you will do to make your life more meaningful.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

参考范文

The Meaning of Life

①There is one famous remark about the meaning of life: "The greatest use of life is to spend it for something that will outlast it." ②This tells us that one's life can be meaningful when he devotes himself to the career which benefits the development of society. ③The truth of it is deep and instructive.

④Many examples can give support to this remark. ⑤For example, Nelson Mandela never wavered in his devotion to democracy and equality. ⑥His life was definitely worth living and would last longer. ⑦For another example, Oprah Winfrey, a black woman born from a poverty-stricken single-parent family, has been the host of one of the most influential TV shows in the world, and therefore lightened the dark world of people in struggle. ⑧Her life is undoubtedly very meaningful.

⑨As a college student, I will start small to make my life more meaningful. ⑩First of all, I will stop wasting and contribute more to the protection of our environment. Besides, I will try to help those in need around me as possibly as I can. ⑪If more people can spend their life in doing meaningful things, our society will make greater progress.

四、典型作文操练

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **The Way to Success** by commenting on Abraham Lincoln's famous

remark, "Give me six hours to chop down a tree, and I will spend the first four sharpening the axe." You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Nothing Succeeds Without a Strong Will** by commenting on the humorous saying, "Quitting smoking is the easiest thing in the world. I've done it hundreds of times." You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

参考范文

练习一

范文

The Way to Success

It is obvious that Abraham Lincoln's famous remark "Give me six hours to chop down a tree, and I will spend the first four sharpening the axe" indicates the value of preparation to the success. It tells us it is quite necessary to make full preparation before taking an action.

There are many facts which support Lincoln's argument. Take an athlete as an example. Without adequate preparation, an athlete couldn't become a champion. Before every race, he or she must go through hard training of a long time and make good preparation physically and psychologically. Besides, preparation also plays an important role in hunting a job. Before having an interview, the interviewee needs to know as much information about the company as possible. Finally, as far as the students are concerned, good preparation is absolutely necessary for them to get good results in the exams.

All mentioned above tells us that good preparation is the way to success. Therefore, all of us should keep Lincoln's remark in our minds, and be well prepared before doing everything. Only in this way can we have greater chances to make success.

练习二

范文

Nothing Succeeds Without a Strong Will

You might hear the humorous saying "Quitting smoking is the easiest thing in the world. I've done it hundreds of time." This is close to suggest that nothing succeeds without a strong will.

Many people have more than one attempt to quit smoking, but they might smoke again after a short time of quitting. From this example, we can learn if one's will is weak, no matter how many times he tries, he might fail in the end. Instead, just like an old proverb says, "Where there is a will, there is a way". For instance, Edison invented the light bulb after hundreds of failures. It was just a strong will that helped him make the final success. Moreover, around us there are many successful people with a strong will, like Liu Xiang, Yao Ming.

As for students like us, a strong will is of course very important. If we give up easily when meeting difficulties, we'll never make any achievements. In conclusion, a strong will is an essential quality for anyone who wants to make success.

五、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay **commenting on the proverb** "Practice Makes Perfect." You can give examples to illustrate your point. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

范文	点评
"Practice makes perfect" is a proverb (1) full of logic. It tells us that one can (2) be proficient in some skills by practicing it again and again. (3) The truth of it is deep and profound. There are (4) too numerous examples supporting this argument to mention one by one. (5) A case in point is the important role of practice in English study. If we want to master English, a large deal of	(1) 形容词短语做后置定语，意为"充满哲理"。 (2) 意为"精通……"。 (3) 意为"其中蕴涵着深远的道理"。 (4) 意为"不胜枚举"，引出例证常用句式。

practice in listening, speaking, reading and writing are essential. (6①) It is consistent practice (6②) that builds an excellent English learner. (7) For another example, if we want to be proficient in using the computer, we also need lots of practice. (8) Without practical operating experience, one can not become an expert on computer. (9) All the above-mentioned tell us that practice plays a very vital role in our study and work. (10) However, what is worth noting is that if there is no right (11) theoretical direction, practice might go towards a wrong direction. Therefore, we should (12) combine theory with practice in realizing our goals.	(5) 意为“典型的例子”。 (6) 强调句型，突出 consistent practice。 (7) 用于引出另外的例子。 (8) 表示条件，相当于一个虚拟条件句，丰富了句式。 (9) 得出结论常用句式。 (10) 转折引出注意事项。 (11) 意为“理论指导”。 (12) 意为“理论和实践相结合”。

星期五　应用类作文结构

一、常见结构公式陈列

六级写作已经考过的应用类作文包括：建议信、投诉信、拒绝信、倡议书。另外，求职信、申请信、祝贺信等书信类作文以及竞选演说辞、景点介绍和海报等校园生活中常涉及的应用文体也在大纲考查范围之内。下面我们列举了10种易考的应用类作文结构：

1 建议信结构公式

右上角：日期

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：交代建议针对的背景事件，说明写信目的：针对该事提出建议，引出对建议的具体阐述。

第二段：具体阐述自己的建议并说明理由。

第三段：表达良好祝愿和期望。

右下角：署名

例（2001 年 6 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a letter. Suppose you are Zhang Ying. Write **a letter to Xiao Wang**, a schoolmate of yours who is going to visit you during the week-long holiday. You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 表示欢迎。
2. 提出对度假安排的建议。
3. 提醒应注意的事项。

参考范文

A Letter to a Schoolmate

June 23, 2001

Dear Xiao Wang,

I am very glad to learn that you will visit me soon. Here I am writing to give you my advice about the arrangement of your coming holiday in Hangzhou.

In my opinion, West Lake should certainly be your first destination since it is such a famous and beautiful place. Then, I suggest you go to Lingyin Temple, Luhe Tower and Yuewang Shrine. Besides, if you have time, Qiandao Lake is also a good site you could not miss. Of course, besides visiting the places of interest, you should taste the local flavor snacks of Hangzhou, like small steamed buns and West Lake vinegared fish. Finally I must remind you that you should not leave your belongings unattended since there are so many people on the train and at the railway station.

I am sure you will enjoy your visit in Hangzhou. If you have any questions or requirements, do not hesitate to tell me. I am looking forward to seeing you soon.

Truly yours,

Zhang Ying

2 投诉信结构公式

右上角：日期

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：表明自己的身份，说明写信目的：因何事投诉何人或机构。

第二段：具体阐述投诉的内容和投诉的理由。

第三段：提出解决建议并期望尽快解决，然后表示感谢。

右下角：署名

例（2002 年 1 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **A Letter to the University President About the Canteen Service on Campus**. You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

假如你是李明，请你就本校食堂的状况给校长写一封信，内容应涉及食堂的饭菜质量、价格、环境和服务等，可以是表扬，可以是批评建议，也可以兼而有之。

参考范文

A Letter to the University President
About the Canteen Service on Campus

Dec. 21, 2002

Dear President,

My name is Li Ming. I am a junior from the Civil Engineering School. I venture to write you a letter to make a complaint about the canteen service of our school.

The focus of the complaint is the poor quality and high price of the food. On the one hand, not only does the food in our canteen not taste good, but also often the rice is very hard, the steam bread is cold, and the vegetables are overcooked. On the other hand, the price of the food is so high that many poor students are burdened heavily. Under these circumstances, I find it impossible for us students to fully concentrate on the study and enjoy the campus life.

I will be very obliged if you can consider my complaint seriously. I do hope the service of the canteen will be much improved as soon as possible. Thank you for your time and kind consideration.

Sincerely yours,
Li Ming

3 拒绝信结构公式

右上角：日期

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：交代写信目的：委婉表达自己对邀请、请求等的拒绝，并向对方表示感谢。

第二段：具体阐述拒绝对方的理由。

第三段：希望不会给对方带来不便，向对方表示抱歉和祝愿。

右下角：署名

例（2005 年 12 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **a letter to a company declining a job offer**. You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 对公司提供的职位表示感谢。
2. 解释为何不能接受所提供的职位。
3. 希望予以谅解，并表示对公司的良好祝愿。

参考范文

A Letter Declining a Job Offer

Dec. 24, 2005

Dear Mr. Wang,

I am very sorry to tell you that I have to decline your job offer. To be honest, it would be a very good chance for me to work in your company. However, the current situation doesn't allow me to do this.

This has been a difficult decision for me, but I have to do this. On one hand, I have accepted another job offer before you informed me your decision, which is more in line with my skills and career goals. On the other hand, two hours' commute to your building is really a burden on me. On account of all these, you can understand why I could not accept your offer.

I hope this does not cause you too much inconvenience. Anyway, I do appreciate your kindness to discuss the details of the position with me and give me time to consider your offer. Meanwhile, I wish that your company would find a more suitable talent as soon as possible.

Sincerely yours,
Jane

4 倡议书结构公式

右上角：日期

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：交代写信目的：倡议的人群和倡议的主题。

第二段：介绍倡议针对对象的具体情况（如需要帮助的人的具体困难）和倡议的具体内容（如捐钱、捐物）。

第三段：提供联系方式，再次发出倡议，呼吁大家的参与，表示感谢。

右下角：署名

例（2005 年 1 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **an open letter** on behalf of the Student's Union asking people to give help to a student who is seriously ill. You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 对病人的简单介绍：目前的病情和家庭情况。
2. 目前的困难：无法继续承担医疗费用，需要护理。
3. 希望捐助，联系方式。

参考范文

Your Help Needed

Jan. 22, 2005

Dear fellow students,

I am writing this letter to call on all the students in our university to do something for Li Ping, one of our schoolmates, who is suffering from a serious disease.

As some of you may know, Li Ping is one of the freshmen of the English Department. She is longing for the bright future like you and me. Unfortunately, last month, she was struck by leukemia. Now she is hospitalized and in a serious condition. What is worse, Li Ping comes from a poor village family and it is impossible for her family to raise such a large sum of money in such pressing time.

As you see, now Li Ping is in great need of financial aid and daily caring. So it is high time for you to extend your helping hands to her. If you would like to provide your love and care to Li Ping, especially in the form of donation, please call 12345678 or 23456789 at any time.

Thank you!

Sincerely yours,
The Students' Union

5 求职信结构公式

右上角：日期

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：交代写信目的：申请某职位，说明获得招聘信息的来源，表达申请职位的愿望。

第二段：介绍自己的学习经历、能力和特长，证明自己能够胜任工作。

第三段：感谢对方抽出时间和精力，告知对方随信附有自己的简历，并愿意提供进一步信息，希望得到面试机会。

右下角：署名

例

Direction: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **A Job Application Letter.** You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 说明获取该招聘信息的渠道，表达想要申请该职位的愿望。
2. 介绍自己的学习经历、专业能力和性格特点。
3. 希望能得到面试机会。

参考范文

A Job Application Letter

June 20, 2011

To whom it may concern,

I am writing to apply for the post of engineer advertised in *China Daily*. I believe my qualifications are ideal match of your requirements.

I will graduate on July 1 of this year from Dongbei University. My major in mechanical engineering and my training in this aspect definitely meet your requirements. In addition to learning the required courses, I have also accepted training in Professional Training Program at spare time. What's more, I have been an intern student in several companies related to my major, which provided me a great deal of experience in computer applications. I believe my training and experience will enable me to perform better than other candidates who are lack of working experience.

I would appreciate your time in reviewing my enclosed resume and if there is any additional information you require, please contact me. I will be very grateful if you can give me a personal interview at your convenience.

Sincerely yours,
Li Hua

6 邀请信结构公式

右上角：日期

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：交代写信目的：邀请某人参加某项活动，说明活动的时间和地点，正式向对方发出邀请。

第二段：介绍事件的具体安排和对方接受邀请的必要性。

第三段：希望对方能够接受邀请，期待对方的尽快答复。

右下角：署名

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **An Invitation Letter**. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

下个月你就要大学毕业了，因此你想举办一次同学聚会，特写信邀请你的朋友李亮参加，信件需包含以下内容：

1. 告知聚会的时间和地点。
2. 介绍聚会中的活动内容。
3. 希望对方一定参加。

参考范文

An Invitation Letter

June 15, 2011

Dear Li Liang,

On this June 30 I am going to graduate, so I am going to hold a party on Saturday evening in my house. It would be pleasant to have you here.

So interesting will this party be that you can't afford to miss it. For one thing, we can have a big meal, sing the popular songs and play games. For another, it also provides a good opportunity for you to meet many friends that you haven't seen for a long time.

What an important thing it is to get your participation! First, you are my best friends and bring home to me many things. Second, we haven't seen each other for quite a long time and I am eager to see you. The party would not be complete without you!

The party will begin at 7:30 p. m. Is it possible for us to see you at 7:00 on Saturday evening in my house? I do hope you can come.

Sincerely yours,
Sun Li

7 道歉信结构公式

右上角：日期

左上角：称呼

正文：第一段：交代写信目的：因某事向某人道歉，恳请对方接受自己的歉意。

第二段：向对方解释导致自己所犯过失或错误的原因。

第三段：希望对能够得到对方的理解和原谅，希望有机会补救，并提出补救措施。

右下角：署名

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **An Apology Letter** to one of your friends, who yesterday came to see you when you were out. You should write at least 150 word, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 对朋友表示歉意。
2. 解释昨天不在家的原因。
3. 约定时间，再次见面。

参考范文

An Apology Letter

Jan 24, 2011

Dear Mary,

I am excessively sorry for my absence yesterday when you come to see me during your trip. Now, I am writing you this letter of apology to show my deep regret. Please accept my sincere apology with gratitude.

I hope you will understand me and excuse me for my absence. The reason for my absence was that I had an engagement with some friends and, ignorant of your visit, accompanied them to the cinema. Besides, not until nine o'clock in the evening did I come back. Therefore, it's not in my power to arrange time to meet you.

Naturally, I hope you won't leave the city this week so that I can call on you. I shall be obliged if you will kindly tell me when and where you are convenient. In that case I can take you to some places that may interest you. I hope to see you soon.

Sincerely yours,
Li Ming

8 海报结构公式

标题：活动主题或直接用 Poster

正文：第一段：概括引出活动，交代活动主办单位、活动的时间和地点。

第二段：阐述活动的主要目的和具体安排。

第三段：说明参加活动的条件和方式，交代联系或咨询方式，呼吁大家的踊跃参与。

右下角：落款（写主办单位名称）

例（2006 年 6 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **a poster recruiting volunteers**. You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 校学生会将组织一次暑假志愿者活动，现招募志愿者。
2. 本次志愿者活动的目的、活动安排等。
3. 报名条件及联系方式。

参考范文

Volunteers Needed

The Students' Union of our university will organize a volunteer activity to the rural areas during the summer holidays. Now we are recruiting the volunteers.

This activity aims to help the children in rural areas improve their computer and English level, and meanwhile provide a platform for our college students to show and prove our abilities. It is planed to begin on July 5th and last 10 days. The volunteers will be assigned to different country primary schools to teach children how to use a computer and how to learn English well.

Any student who is good at English and computer is warmly welcomed. Those interested are expected to come to the office of the Students' Union to fill in an application form before July 1st. Please call 62511123 for further information. We are looking forward to your active participation.

The Students' Union

9 竞选演说词结构公式

左上角：称呼

第一段：表达自己的喜悦和荣幸之情，简要介绍自己，表明自己要竞选的职位。

第二段：说明自己具备的条件和优势，证明自己能够胜任。

第三段：承诺当选后会采取哪些措施，表明自己的决心，最后向听众表达祝愿和感谢。

例（2005 年 1 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **a campaign speech** in support of your election to the post of chairman of the student union. You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 你认为自己具备了什么条件（能力、性格、爱好等）可以胜任学生会主席的工作？
2. 如果当选，你将为本校同学做些什么？

参考范文

A Campaign Speech

Ladies and gentlemen,

I am Wang Lin from the Computer Science Department, and I am honored to stand here to give my speech. I will show you that I am the best candidate to the post of Chairman of the Student' Union.

I have gained a lot of experience and received wide praise from my classmates for my job as the monitor. Moreover, I am warm-hearted and always ready to help others, quick to react to the needs of my fellow students. Besides, I am good at organizing activities and have experience in holding contests and sports meetings.

Looking into the future, I will try my best to serve my fellow students if I am lucky enough to be the president of the Students' Union. On one hand, I will organize more activities to color our campus life. On the other hand, I'll reform the Student' Union, changing it from a problem-solving one into a service-providing one. And more channels will be opened for our students to voice opinions and needs.

I, Wang Lin, am worth your trust. Don't hesitate to vote for me. Thank you!

10 景点介绍结构公式

左上角：称呼

第一段：向大家表示欢迎，简要介绍自己的身份和任务，并表达自己的喜悦和荣幸之情。

第二段：具体介绍景点的内容和特点以及具体的行程安排。

第三段：提醒相关注意事项，并表示如有疑问欢迎咨询。祝愿大家玩得愉快，感谢大家的倾听。

例（2004 年 6 月）

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition entitled **A Brief Introduction to a Tourist Attraction**. You should write at least 150 words according to the following guidelines:

Your role: a tour guide

Your audience: a group of foreign tourists

Your introduction should include:

1. Some welcoming words
2. The schedule for the day
3. A description of the place the tourists will be visiting (e. g. a scenic spot or a historical site. etc.)

You should make the introduction interesting and the arrangements for the day clear to everybody.

参考范文

A Brief Introduction to a Tourist Attraction

Ladies and Gentlemen,

Welcome to China and thank you for your trusting our travel agency. I am Lisa. It's my pleasure to be your guide.

The following is the schedule of the day. In the morning, the first spot we are going to visit is the Great Wall, the grandest fortification in ancient China. Then I will take you to the Ming Tombs, which is one of the best-preserved tombs in China and the last home for 13 emperors in Ming Dynasty. In the afternoon, we will go to the Summer Palace, the royal park for ancient Chinese emperors. That's the end of our visiting of today.

By the way, please bring a plastic bag with you to hold the rubbish you will make so as to protect our environment. If any of you have questions, please feel free to ask me at any time. I hope that you will enjoy your day. Thank you very much for your attention.

二、典型作文操练

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a letter of suggestion to your friend Li Ming. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words according to the outline given below:

你的朋友李明在国外留学，即将完成学业，不久前他曾给你来过信就是否回国工作以及应该从事什么工作征求你的意见。请根据下列提示回信：

1. 根据朋友的情况给出你的建议。
2. 针对需要注意哪些问题，给出你的建议。
3. 希望能够早日见面。

练习二

Direction: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **A Letter of Complaint.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words according to the guidelines given below in Chinese:

设想你刚买了一台电脑，发现有质量问题，送货还要额外收钱，你因此给店长写一封信。信中必须包括以下内容：

1. 事情的起因。
2. 电脑存在的质量问题。
3. 给他们提出合理建议，并希望他们尽快给你解决问题。

练习三

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an open letter on behalf of the students' union asking students in your university to give help to children suffering from the earthquake. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words following the outline given below:

1. 寒冬将至，但地震灾区的孩子们仍然缺少足够的保暖衣物。
2. 请你以学生会的名义写一封倡议书，希望大家捐款、捐物，帮助灾区孩子们顺利过冬。

练习四

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to writ a letter to apply for a membership in a community service team. You should write at least 150 words and base your composition on the outline given below:

1. 简单介绍自己。
2. 说明申请加入该社区服务队的原因。
3. 请求回复并表示感谢。

参考范文

练习一

A Letter of Suggestion

March 20, 2010

Dear Li Ming,

I am delighted to learn that you are going to be graduated from Australian National University. As to your question about where you should work, I think you should come back to China. On the one hand, what you are studying is badly needed nowadays in China and I am sure that you will have a broad development. On the other hand, it will be much more convenient for you to look after your parents and communicate with your friends.

As to what kind of job you should enter, I suggest you find a workplace which matches your own specialized field. It is unnecessary for you to worry about the lack of job opportunities, since the computer technology in China as you have been studying is becoming more and more advanced and the specialized talents are greatly needed. I believe that you will achieve your ambition in no time.

Please inform me if there is something I can do for you. I am looking forward to meeting you in China.

Sincerely yours,
Wang Hong

练习二

A Letter of Complaint

April 6, 2010

Dear Manager,

I am a customer of your franchised store. I venture to write you a letter about the computer I bought in your store last week. The focus of the complaint is the low quality of the computer.

For one thing, the computer could not be properly shut down only two days after I bought it. For another, the LCD monitor is not so good as you have promised, even it appears less clear than my old monitor. Under these circumstances, I found it impossible for me to go on using this computer.

Honestly speaking, the salesmen in your store are polite. But it's obvious that you didn't make a careful examination on the computer before selling. Besides, I suggest your store deliver the goods for free. All in all, there is still much room for improvement.

I do hope you give me a satisfactory reply as soon as possible. Thank you for your time and kind consideration.

Sincerely Yours,
Li Feng

练习三

Your Help Needed

April 21, 2010

Dear fellow students,

I am writing this letter to call on all of you to donate either money or clothing to those children in Sichuan Province. All of you must still remember the tragedy

happening in that area several months ago, which nearly destroyed all of the property people there have. Since now the freezing winter is coming, people, especially the children, are faced with the risk of being frozen to death.

Therefore it is very urgent for us to help them get through this difficulty. If you are willing to help them, you can bring what you want to donate to the Students' Union office. We will then hand in your denotation to the Red Cross in our city, who will express our concern to those children in trouble in the remote Sichuan Province. I believe with our little help, they can become more confident and braver to conquer the temporary difficulty. As a well-educated undergraduate, we must have known this simple truth "A little love one devotes to others will make the world more beautiful". So please join us in the action and extend our love into a spirit that dares any possible difficulties.

Thank you!

Sincerely yours,
Students' Union

练习四

An Application for Membership

May 11, 2010

Dear Mr. Li,

My name is Susan, and I am a Junior in Shanghai University. I am writing to apply for a membership in the community service team which aims to help the old and the handicapped. I will be very grateful if my application can be considered and accepted. There are several reasons contributing to my application. First of all, as a college student, I am eager to do something for the society. In addition, I want to bring others convenience and strength and at the same time gain pleasure and satisfaction by joining the team. Therefore, I am in great need of such an opportunity to help people in need of care and help. I sincerely hope you will grant me such a membership in your community service team. At the same time, I am excessively sorry for any inconvenience or trouble that might have been aroused by my application. If you need to know more about me, please feel free to contact me at any time at xxxxxxxxx. Thank you for your kind consideration. I am looking forward to hearing from you.

Sincerely yours,
Julie

三、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write **A Letter of Apology** to your teacher. You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

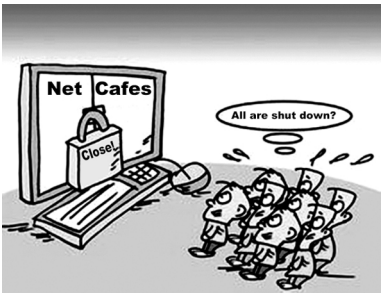
1. 表达自己对未能按时交论文一事的歉意。
2. 说明未能按时交论文的原因。
3. 表示自己将尽快补交论文并保证以后按时交作业。

范文	点评
March 10, 2009 Dear Mr. Wang, (1) I am writing you this letter to apologize for my failing to hand in the paper on time. I am very sorry for (2) the inconvenience brought by my delay. (3) Please accept my sincere apology with gratitude. (4) Here I want to explain why I didn't manage to finish my paper on time. Last Monday, I (5) was knocked down by a bad cold. I had a high fever and intense headache (6) so that I was too weak to write a single word. Therefore, it's not (7) in my power to finish the paper. I hope you could understand me and excuse me for my delay. I will (8) do my utmost to finish my paper and hand it in (9) as soon as possible. In my opinion, the importance of punctuality (10) cannot be emphasized too much, so I assure you that I will try to hand in my homework on time in future. Sincerely yours, Yu Ming	(1) 道歉信开头常用句式。 (2) 意为“由……带来的不便”。 (3) 意为“请接受我诚挚的歉意”，表示道歉的常用句式。 (4) 列举原因常用句式。 (5) 意为“被……击倒”。 (6) 引导结果状语从句，意为“以至于”。 (7) 意为“在能力范围之内”。 (8) 意为“尽最大的努力”。 (9) 意为“尽可能快”。 (10) 意为“再怎么强调也不为过”，表示非常重要。

星期六　一周复习效果检验

Test 1

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Should All Net Cafes Be Shut down.** Your essay should start with a brief description of the picture. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.



Test 2

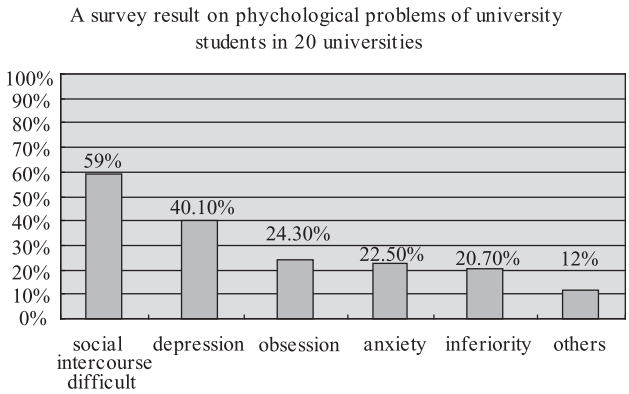
Direction: For this part you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay entitled **On Punctuality** by commenting on the saying "Waste people's time is equal to murder." You can give examples to illustrate your point. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

Test 3

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **How to Improve Chinese Students' Creativity.** Please give your comments and suggestions. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

Test 4

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Psychological Health of University Students** based on the statistics provided in the graph below. Please give a brief description of the graph first and then make comments on it. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.



Test 5

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Will Newspapers Be Replaced by Electronic Media.** Give your opinions and reasons. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

Test 6

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **College Students' Paying Less Attention to Politics.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 现在的很多大学生对时政关心不够。
2. 导致这一现象的原因有哪些？
3. 你对此的看法是……

Test 7

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Classroom Etiquette at College.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 目前，大学生迟到、旷课等违反教室礼仪的现象十分常见。
2. 分析不遵守教室礼仪的不良影响。
3. 大学生应该遵守教室礼仪。

Test 8

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Don't Aim High but Accomplish Little**. You should write at least 150 words

but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 现代社会上有很多人“眼高手低”，他们有着宏伟的目标和想法，实际能实现的却很少。
2. 造成这一现象的原因是什么？
3. 你认为“眼高手低”会带来哪些后果？

参考范文

Test 1

框架搭建：由图画和提示内容可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段结合图画描述某县政府关闭网吧这一举措及目的，引出人们对此事的不同看法；第二段对比阐述两种看法各自的理由；第三段表明“我”更倾向于哪种看法并说明理由。

Should All Net Cafés Be Shut down

The cartoon vividly describes a phenomenon that some local governments have ordered to shut down all net cafes. They do so mainly to restrict the teenagers getting online. Some people believe it is an effective measure to prevent the overindulgence in the internet. However, others argue it is a foolish conduct.

Those people who hold the first opinion says teens are too young to restrict themselves. Without proper supervision, they tend to develop addictions. However, still others do not agree this. In their opinions, Internet cafés are there for those who need easy Internet access. Shutting down all the cafés limits their rights. Besides, they argue, it is not because of the existence of net cafés that teenagers develop Internet addiction.

Weighing up these two arguments, I am inclined to the latter one. For one thing, the policy isn't fair to those who have no access to the Internet at home. What's more, in information age, the teenagers should not be isolated from the Internet. Considering these, I think that our schools and parents should not count on shutting down net cafés but should give teenagers more instruct on how to use the Internet.

Test 2

框架搭建：由题目内容可知，本文应为一篇道理阐释类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段提出论点：守时是一种非常重要的品质；第二段论证守时的必要性；第三段重申守时的重要性，指出我们应该养成守时的好习惯。

On Punctuality

The famous saying "Waste people's time is equal to murder." shows us the importance of punctuality. Punctuality has been always regarded as a virtue, especially in modern society. For anyone, whether in those important occasions such as in an interview or in a business negotiation, or in daily life, it is quite necessary to be punctual.

There are many facts which can support this argument. First of all, to be punctual shows our sincerity and respect for others. An unpunctual person will lose others' trust. Moreover, sometimes only a few minutes' delay may bring bad results. For example, a doctor's coming late five minutes for the operation may endanger the patient. Besides, no teacher likes a student who is often late for class; no boss is willing to employ a man who always comes late for work.

All mentioned above tell us that punctuality is an indispensable virtue for everyone. An unpunctual person cannot be welcomed by others even if he does well in other aspects. Therefore, when we are young, we should try to form the habit of being punctual, since the habit is much easier to acquire in our youth than when we are older.

Test 3

框架搭建：由标题和题目内容可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述目前中国学生缺乏创造力的主要表现；第二段分析导致中国学生缺乏创造力的主要原因；第三段说明应该如何增强大学生的创造力。

How to Improve Chinese Students' Creativity?

Nowadays, lack of creativity is becoming a serious problem among Chinese students. Though they often win the first prizes in many international competitions, very few of them can practically contribute to the world scientific research. Even worse, once they meet something that they are not familiar with, they do not know how to handle it.

There are many factors resulting in this problem. Among these, our education system plays a vital role. In primary and secondary schools, students are stuffed with piles of knowledge for the exams and have little chance to develop their creativity. What's more, under our education system, students lack the ability to find proper problem-solving methods by themselves.

Considering the importance of creativity, I think it is high time we paid more attention to its improvement. Above all, less emphasis should be laid to the exams

and more time should be put on developing interest. Moreover, students should be encouraged to be actively involved in class activities and show their own thoughts. Besides, schools should give students more room for self-development. Only through these ways can our creativity be improved in the near future.

Test 4

框架搭建：由标题和题目内容可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段根据图表中的数据描述大学生目前在心理方面的主要问题；第二段分析导致大学生心理问题的原因；第三段说明应该如何解决大学生的心理健康问题。

Psychological Health of University Students

As is apparently showed in the bar chart above, at present university students suffer from various kinds of psychological problems, among which social intercourse difficulty and depression top the list, taking up 59% and 40.1% respectively. In addition, students suffering from other psychological problems like obsession, anxiety and inferiority also constitute a high proportion.

Then what contributes to such serious psychological problems of universities students? First of all, sudden change of living environment is a challenge to many freshmen. They can not adjust themselves to the new environment. Moreover, the intense competition and the severe employment situation bring great psychological pressure to college students. In addition, emotional and financial problems also influence a student's psychological health.

Considering the seriousness of the problem, it is a must to take effective measures to ensure the healthy growth of university students. First, organizations and departments concerned should strengthen psychological instruction and guidance on university students. Second, students should learn to confront problems and try to find the real cause of problems. Third, attending collective activities is an effective way to relieve pressure and relax ourselves. Finally, if the problem is nearly beyond your control, don't hesitate turn to professional psychological guidance.

Test 5

框架搭建：由标题和题目内容可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段概述电子媒体的发展，引出争议问题：传统报纸是否会被取代；第二段指出一些人的看法并阐述理由；第三段表明“我”的相反看法并陈述理由。

Will Newspapers Be Replaced by Electronic Media?

Nowadays, more and more people like to get their news from electronic media such as computers, mobile phones. So some people propose such a question: Will Newspapers be replaced by Electronic Media? I think the answer is "Yes".

Of course, traditional newspapers have its advantages. For example, it has a big circulation and a wide coverage. But it is worth noting that its dull form and time lag has made it fall behind TV and the Internet. In my view, it doesn't take too much time before traditional newspapers are replaced by electronic media.

The following reasons can support my argument. First, electronic media is spreading more quickly and widely. Wherever and whenever something happens, we can know it almost immediately. Second, with electronic media, we have a more convenient channel to get news without the need to buy the newspaper everyday. From the foregoing, it is just a matter of time that traditionally newspapers disappear from our life.

Test 6

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述现在大学生不关心时政的现象及主要表现；第二段说明导致大学生不关心时政的主要原因；第三段谈谈"我"对大学生不关心时政现象的看法。

College Students' Paying Less Attention to Politics

Nowadays, college students pay less attention to current affairs. Many of them are interested in all kinds of entertainment news and fashion trend, but few would like to keep up with the state affairs. Why has this happened?

The following reasons contribute to this phenomenon. Firstly, college students are faced with great pressure from school work and employment, who have little spare time to spend on current affairs. Secondly, some college students think it does no good to their future employment to keep informed of state affairs since most companies aim to seek their profits other than serve the state. Finally, our education does not put enough emphasis on the students' knowledge of current affairs.

In my opinion, it is quite necessary for college students to keep our ears to the ground. We will go out of the campus and go into the society very soon. If we do not keep up with current events and have no enough knowledge of our society, we could not adjust ourselves to it. Therefore, I think every college student should pay enough attention to current affairs around us.

Test 7

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述大学生违反教室礼仪的现象及表现；第二段分析不遵守教室礼仪的不良影响；第三段说明大学生应该遵守哪些教室礼仪。

Classroom Etiquette at College

In recent years, lack of classroom etiquette has become quite a serious problem on campus. Many students assume it's OK to be late a few minutes or skip a class occasionally. What's worse, they don't think it matters when they talk, eat and doze off in the class.

Though it seems that they are small things, these behaviors can bring great negative effects. Above all, they influence the normal class order. This shows some kind of disrespect for the teacher and the other students. Moreover, ignorant of the basic code of conduct, these students may unconsciously make themselves a thorn in the side of their teachers or classmates.

Considering the seriousness of the problem, it is an urgent thing to improve classroom etiquette in college campus. First of all, every college student must attend every class, which undoubtedly is the most important classroom etiquette. Moreover, to be punctual is also a necessary manner we should obey. Besides, as a college student, we should concentrate on our class and be cooperative with our teacher. Only in this way can the classroom really become an environment for learning and can we really enjoy our class.

Test 8

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述“眼高手低”的现象及主要表现；第二段说明导致人们“眼高手低”的原因；第三段分析“眼高手低”会带来哪些后果。

Don't Aim High But Accomplish Little

In real life, some people often aim high but accomplish little. They dream of buying the best future for themselves, while they don't know how to perform basic duties in their daily lives. They shower themselves with endless fancy idealism, whereas they remain powerless and unable to shoulder any heavy task.

Why do some people aim high but accomplish little? The reasons vary. Relatively speaking, some have stronger academic background, but they don't possess practical problem solving skills. Some are well equipped with intelligence,

but weak in will power or physical power. Besides, some could not establish a positive attitude to their abilities.

In my opinion, the side effects of aiming high but accomplishing little may be listed as follows. Firstly, it makes these people unable to keep the right orientation. Secondly, such people are more likely to fail to seize opportunities. Thirdly, it leads to the feeling of being beaten down by fate. In a word, it exerts a negative influence on one's life and psychological well being.

第四周

熟悉段落构成，掌握基本功能句，确保11分

熟悉六级写作中常见的10大段落类型：概述现象段、描写图表段、说明原因段、说明方法段、说明好处段、说明危害段、提出观点段、总结观点段、论证观点段、对比论证段，了解各类段落类型的句型构造，学会写各类段落的基本功能句。这样，无论在考场上碰到何种提纲，考生都能做到快速成段，自然过渡。

星期一　如何写概述现象段和描写图表段

一、段落基本句型构造

1 概述现象段

概述现象段通常出现在说明现象类作文的第一段，其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话概括现象的总体情况，这是段落的主题句；然后具体描述现象的突出表现或具体变化，以支持主题句。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay entitled **Digital Age**. You should write at least 150 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 如今数字化产品得到了越来越广泛的使用，举例说明。
2. 数字化产品的使用对人们工作、学习和生活产生的影响。

第一段：概述现象段

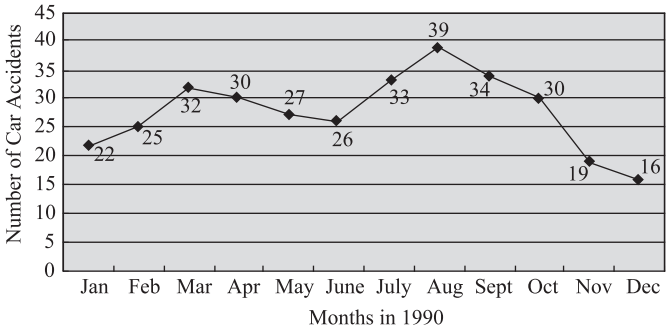
①Nowadays, digital products are extremely popular and play a very critical role in modern society. ②Taking a look around, you can find too numerous examples to mention individually, and the best one may be the computers. ③In addition, other digital products, like digital camera, digital TVs, etc., have gradually become indispensable parts of our life.

2 描写图表段

描写图表段通常出现在图表阐释类作文的第一段，其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话概括图表所反映的总体现象、变化或问题，这是段落的主题句；然后用2~3句话具体描述图表中数据的对比或变化情况，用以支持主题句。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Car Accidents Declining in Walton City.** You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the graph and the outline given below in Chinese:



1. 描述图表中反映的车祸发生率的变化。
2. 分析该市车祸发生率下降的原因。
3. 你对该市今年车祸发生率走势的预测。

第一段：描写图表段

①As is indicated in the above graph, the rate of car accidents in Walton City rises and falls with the change of months. ②From January to March, the number of car accidents rises from 22 to 32, and then drops to 26 in the next three months. After that, it climbs up again to 39, increasing by 50%. ③However, from then on, the curve descends all the way to the lowest point, 16 to be exact.

二、各类功能句常规写法

1 概述现象段

1）概述现象

① **Nowadays**, **there follows a craze for** diplomas and certificates in our society.
现在，社会上流行一股文凭热。

② **Nowadays**, **we often hear** people's complaints about dishonesty.
现在，我们经常听到人们抱怨不诚实的现象。

③ **With the development of** market economy, fake commodities **are becoming a more and more serious problem**.
随着市场经济的发展，假冒伪劣商品越来越成为一个问题。

④ **In the past two decades**, China **has experienced an alarming increase in** teenage smoking.
在过去的20年中，中国的青少年吸烟人数有了惊人的上升。

⑤ **In recent years**, **there has been a dramatic increase in the number of** school dropouts in the countryside.
近年来，农村辍学人数急剧上升。

⑥ **As** the socialist market economy in China **is expanding**, education **is becoming more** closely related to the market.
随着社会主义市场经济在中国的发展，教育与市场的关系正变得越来越密切。

⑦ **The early 90's saw an unprecedented tide of** the workers flooding into big cities.
90年代初期出现了前所未有的涌入城市的民工大潮。

⑧ **In the past three decades**, **China has witnessed dramatic improvement in** the living standard of people.
在过去的30年里，中国人的生活水平有了巨大的改善。

⑨ **Ever since the beginning of** market economy, advertisements **has become an essential part of** our daily life.
从市场经济初期开始，广告就已经变成我们日常生活中必不可少的一部分。

⑩ **Nowadays many** young people **prefer to** stay single **instead of** getting married.
现在，许多年轻人宁愿单身也不愿意结婚。

⑪ **With** banks' **more focus on** college market, **an increasing number of** college students have applied for a credit card and begun to consume by it.
随着银行对大学市场给予更多的关注，越来越多的大学生申请并开始使用信用卡。

⑫ **As more people focus on** health diet, green food has begun to **draw more and**

more attention from the public.

随着更多的人开始关注健康饮食，绿色食品已经引起了越来越多公众的注意。

2）具体描述现象表现

① **Nowadays**, **we can easily find** all kinds of computers **everywhere**, **especially in** large cities.

现在，我们随处都可以很容易地找到各种各样的计算机，尤其是在大城市。

② **In the old days** only national leaders visited foreign countries. **Nowadays** mutual visits between nations have been extended to the provincial or municipal level.

过去只有国家领导人之间会互访，现在国家间的互访已经扩展到省、市级别。

③ Grain, **which used to be** the main food of most people in China, **is now** playing a less important role in people's diet.

谷物过去是中国大多数人的主要食物，现在在人们的饮食结构中所占的地位正在下降。

④ **On the other hand**, the consumption of high-nutrition food such as milk and meat has increased rapidly.

另一方面，人们对牛奶、肉类等高营养食物的消费却迅速增加。

⑤ Sports are **so** popular on campus **that** they have become an indispensable part of college education.

体育运动在校园里如此流行以至于它们已经成为大学教育不可或缺的一部分。

⑥ **Almost every day we can see** flashing fire engines rushing through the streets with their horns blaring.

几乎每一天我们都能看到闪动的消防车鸣着笛冲过街道。

⑦ Miss Li's **case is not unique**, **and now more and more** city adults spend their leisure time trying to improve themselves at night school or college.

李小姐的情况并不是特例，现在越来越多城里的成年人利用业余时间参加夜校来提高自己。

⑧ **We are surprised to learn that** a pop singer can make over 100 thousand for one performance, **while** an average farmer may take several years to earn that much.

我们很惊奇地发现，一个流行歌手一次演出就能够赚到 10 万，而一个普通的农民需要好几年才能赚到这些钱。

⑨ **What amazes us most is that** some fake commodities are quite similar to the real ones.

让我们感到非常惊奇的是，一些假货造得和真货非常像。

⑩ The schoolbags on their shoulders are getting **heavier and heavier**, and the hours spent on homework **longer and longer**.

他们肩上的书包越来越重，他们花在作业上的时间越来越多。

⑪ **Nowadays there are more and more** secondhand goods in the market, **such as** secondhand books, furniture, appliances, cars, **and so on**.

现在，市场上有越来越多的二手商品，例如二手书、二手家具、二手电器、二手车等。

2 描写图表段

1）概述图表

① **As is indicated / revealed / showed in the (above) graph**, there have been some obvious changes in the diet of the Chinese.

正如图表中显示的，中国人的饮食结构已经发生了明显的变化。

② **According to the figures given in the table**, online shopping is becoming more and more popular/gaining more and more popularity.

根据表格中给出的数据，网上购物正变得越来越流行。

③ **As the survey results show**, life expectancy in developing countries has increased a lot in the past 3 decades.

正如调查结果显示，在过去的30年里，发展中国家的人均寿命已经提高了很多。

④ **This two charts give us a general illustration of** the distribution of family income in country A and country B.

这两张图为我们概括地描述了A、B两国的家庭收入分配情况。

⑤ **It can be seen from the statistics that** the world's population is growing steadily at a tremendous rate.

从统计数据我们可以看出，世界人口正在持续稳定地大幅度增长。

⑥ **From the above chart, we can see clearly that** the enrollment of Chinese universities has been on the rise in recent years.

从上图我们可以很明确地看出，近年来中国大学的招生人数一直在增长。

2）概述图画

① **As is described/shown in the picture**, a group of students are raising their hands to give answers to the question in a joyful and active way.

正像图画中描述/显示的那样，一群兴高采烈的学生正在积极地举手回答问题。

② **As is vividly depicted in the picture**, lots of people suffer from "smart phone addiction".

正如图片中生动描述的那样，许多人患有"智能手机成瘾症"。

③ **As can be seen from the picture**, a girl receiving the university admission notice

is stopped by her father.
正像我们从图画中所看到的，一个女孩收到了大学录取通知书，却被自己的父亲阻止。

④ **Just as is revealed in the picture above**, many people are so addicted to the Internet that they neglect the real world.
正如上图所揭示的那样，许多人十分沉迷网络，达到忽略现实世界的地步。

⑤ **The purpose of the picture is to show us** the importance of cooperation.
这幅图的目的是为了给我们展示合作的重要性。

⑥ **We can see from this picture that/ From the picture above**, **we can see that** two teachers are talking about how to get students' attention.
从这幅图中我们可以看到，两个老师正在就如何引起学生的注意展开讨论。

⑦ **The cartoon vividly illustrates/ demonstrates the fact that** today's children lack independence.
这幅卡通画生动地揭示了如今的孩子们缺乏独立性的现实。

⑧ **The picture describes a prevailing phenomenon that** some people simply go online for the answer to everything, and neglect the importance of independent thinking.
图片描述了一个当前流行的现象：一些人一味地通过上网寻找解答任何问题的方法，忽视了独立思考的重要性。

⑨ **In this picture**, **we are surprised to see** a bird is standing firmly and erectly against the snowstorm.
在图画中我们惊奇地看到，一只小鸟在暴风雪中屹立不动。

⑩ **Looking at the picture**, **we can't help thinking of** more and more serious problem of food safety.
这幅图片让我们不禁想到越来越严重的食品安全问题。

⑪ The drawer reminds us of a common social phenomenon.
图画的作者提醒了我们一个普遍的社会现象。

⑫ This picture sets me thinking for a long time.
这幅图让我思考良多。

3）具体描述图表数据

① **From** 1997 **to** 2002, **there is a rapid/dramatic/abrupt rise/increase in** the use of computers.
从 1997 年到 2002 年，在计算机的使用方面有了快速/巨大/急剧的增加。

② **During** the past decade, the price of computers **has declined /decreased /fell / dropped markedly**.
在过去的 10 年里，计算机的价格明显下降了。

③ **Only** 5 years **later**, **the number increased to** 10,000.
仅仅5年以后，这个数字就上升到了10万。

④ **The figure has nearly doubled/tripled**, **as against that of** last year.
与去年相比，这个数字几乎上涨到去年的两倍/三倍。

⑤ **The number is 3 times as much as that of** last year.
数量是去年的3倍。

⑥ **According to the figures given in the table**, **since** 1996, **the amount of** money spent on food **had decreased gradually**, **accounting for** 35 **percent in** 2000.
根据表格中的数据，从1996年起，人们在食品上的消费开始逐渐下降，到2000年已经下降到了35%。

⑦ **From the chart**, **an increasing number of people would rathe**r choose self-help tour **than** follow a tour group.
从图表中来看，越来越多的人宁愿选择自助游而不愿跟团旅行。

⑧ **In** 1995, **the number of** people traveling abroad **was only** about 10,000. **However**, 5 **years later**, **it increased to** nearly 40,000, **and by 2005**, **the number had reached** over 120,000, **which was** more than ten **times than** ten years ago.
1995年，出国旅行的人数只有1万，然而，5年以后，这一数字就增加到了4万，到了2005年，出国旅行的人数已经超过了12万，比10年前的10倍还要多。

⑨ **The proportion of** grain which used to be the main food of the Chinese people **has decreased by** 4%. **In contrast**, **the proportion of** milk and meat in people's diet **has increased**.
过去在中国人的饮食中占据主体地位的谷物的比例下降了4%，与之形成对比的是，牛奶和肉类在人们饮食中的比例却增加了。

⑩ **By comparison with/Compared with** 2 years ago, **this figure has increased from** less than 1.5 million **to** nearly 3.4 million.
与2年前相比，这一数字已经从不到150万增加到了将近340万。

⑪**It is obvious that there is a sharp rise in** TV-watchers **from** about 60 thousand **to** 90 thousand, **while a great fall in** filmgoers **during the same period**.
很显然，看电视的人数迅速增加，从大约6万人上升到9万人，然而，在同一时期看电影的人数则有了大幅度的下降。

⑫ An average family in country A has to spend **87%** of its yearly income on housing and food **while** a family in country B only spends **58%**.
A国普通家庭年收入的87%都用于住房和食品，而在B国这一部分的消费只占58%。

⑬ **As indicated by the date given in the graph**, life expectancy in developing countries **has climbed from** about 40 years **in** the 1960's **to** about 60 **in** the 1990's, **increasing by** 20 years **within** 3 decades.
正像图表中数据所显示的，发展中国家的人均寿命已经从20世纪60年代的

40 岁攀升到 20 世纪 90 年代的 60 岁，也就是说，在 30 年间提高了 20 岁。

⑭ **It can also be seen**, **as a sharp contrast**, **that there was a sharp drop in** infant mortality, **by** 15%, **from** 250 deaths per 1000 births **to** about 100 deaths per 1000 **during the same period**.

我们也能够看出，与此形成鲜明对比的是，同一时期的婴儿死亡率却下降了 15%，从每 1000 个婴儿中死亡 250 个下降到大约 100 个。

三、典型段落操练

要求：请撰写下列作文，注意其中的概述现象段和描写图表段的写法。

练习一

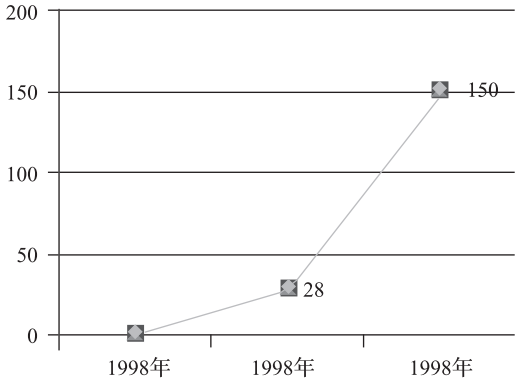
Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Accompanying Parents**. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 近年来，许多高校都出现了大学生家长陪读的现象。
2. 导致这一现象的原因。
3. 谈谈你对此的看法。

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Personalized Services online.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the chart and the outline (given in Chinese) below:

某城市网络个性化服务交易情况（百万元）



1. 现在网络个性化服务在大中城市越来越流行（网络个性化服务：顾客通过Internet把求购商品的信息，如大小、颜色、样式等送给生产厂家，生产厂家根据顾客要求生产出产品）
2. 分析网络个性化服务流行的原因。
3. 谈谈“我”对网络个性化服务的看法。

参考范文

练习一

Accompanying Parents

第一段：概述现象段

In recent years, there have appeared many parents accompanying their children studying at college, which has aroused the great concern. The parent accompanying the child is mostly the mother. In addition, there are many parents both coming to accompany their child, who rent a house nearby their child's college and take care of the child while working.

第二段：说明原因段

The reasons for this phenomenon are varied. Among them, parents' concern about their child plays a critical role. These parents want to urge their child's study as well as take care of their child's life. What's more, more and more children with

Internet addiction is an important reason for the increase of the accompanying parents. Besides, nowadays, the majority of college students are the only child, who lack of independence.

第三段：总结观点段

No doubt, accompanying parents do help a lot in the child's life and study. However, with parents around them, college students lose many chances to face difficulties and frustrations. This will lead to the lack of their independence. Therefore, I think accompanying parents should not be encouraged, and parents should give their child more useful instruction instead of too much care.

练习二

Personalized Services online

第一段：描写图表段

According to the chart, we clearly learn that personalized online services

are more and more popular among people. In 1997, the turnover of personalized online service was only 1 million Yuan in that city. Then 8 years later, by 2006, the turnover of personalized online services in this city had soared sharply to 50 million.

第二段：说明原因段

There are many reasons accounting for tremendous growth of personalized online services. Firstly, the personalized services emphasize to meet the customers' individual needs. This kind of service will surely win the popularity in a society where more and more people attach vital importance to their personal preferences. Secondly, e-service is convenient and time-saving. Finally, as a new business, personalized online service caters for the fashion, and therefore attracts a large number of young people.

第二段：总结观点段

As far as I am concerned, the personalized online service is one of promising businesses. For one thing, the ever-developing science and technology will cut down the cost of e-commerce and thus make it more affordable for a wider range of consumers. For another, the convenience of Internet and the popularity of individuality will attract more people to choose personalized services via internet. To conclude, personalized online services will have a greater development space in the future.

四、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Green Food.** You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 近年来，“绿色食品”越来越流行。
2. 分析这种现象产生的原因。
3. 谈谈你对该现象的看法。

范文	点评
As more and more people focus on health diet, green food has begun to (1) draw more and more attention by the public. In recent years, the market demand for green food has (2) increased dramatically, and all kinds of green food have (3) emerged in an endless stream. (4①) Why does green food become so popular in China?	(1) 意为“引起越来越多的公众注意”。 (2) 意为“显著地增加”。 (3) 意为“层出不穷”。 (4) 引出原因时常用的句式。
(4②) The following reasons can account for the popularity of green food. (5①) Above all, (6) compared with ordinary food, green food is healthier, safer and more nutritious. (5②) Moreover, nowadays, many vegetables are polluted because of the usage of agricultural chemicals, (7) while green food is free of pollution. (5③) Besides, (8) with the improvement of the living standards, more people can afford a healthier but more expensive lifestyle. So green food, (9) despite its higher price, still becomes people's favorite food.	(5) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰，意思连贯。 (6) 过去分词短语做状语，意为“与……相比”。 (7) while 表示对比。 (8) 意为“随着生活水平的提高”。 (9) 插入语，意为“尽管价格较高”。
(5④) However, nowadays the market is full of real and fake green food, (10) making many consumers confused. (5⑤) Therefore, the government must strengthen the supervision and administration of green food market. (5⑥) Besides, consumers should increase the knowledge of green food. (11) Only in this way can green food play a more positive role in people's life.	(10) 现在分词短语做状语。 (11) 倒装句，“only + 状语”提前引起部分倒装。

星期二　如何写说明原因段和说明方法段

一、段落基本句型构造

1 说明原因段

说明原因段一般出现在图表阐释类和说明现象类作文的第二段，其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话引出下文对现象或问题原因的说明，这是段落的主题句；然后用3~5句话列举2~3点具体的原因，用以支持主题句。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay entitled **What Electives to Choose**. You should write at least 150 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 各大学开设了各种各样的选修课。
2. 学生因为各种原因选择了不同的选修课。
3. 以你自己为例……

第二段：说明原因段

①There are many different factors deciding what electives the students choose. ②Among all these factors, the interest of the students plays a very important role. ③The students, of course, would like to learn what he or she is interested in. ④Moreover, many students will consider whether they could learn some practical skill by the elective, because nowadays companies are placing emphasis on a candidate's practical skills. ⑤Besides, the ability and the prestige of the teacher is also an important factor influencing the student's choice.

2 说明方法段

说明方法段一般出现在对策方法类作文的第二段（偶尔也会出现在第三段，具体根据提纲）。其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话引出下文对解决办法、应对措施或决定因素的说明，这是段落的主题句；然后用3~4句话列举2~3点具体的方法、措施或决定因素，用以支持主题句；最后再用一句话对前面的方法作出总结（这句话有时可省略）。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Reduce Waste on Campus**. You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 目前有些校园内浪费现象严重。
2. 浪费的危害。
3. 从我做起，杜绝浪费。

第三段：说明方法段

①Considering the seriousness of the problem, it is urgent for us to take effective measures to eliminate waste on campus. ②Firstly, we college students must stop wasting water, electricity and food in our daily life. ③Secondly, we should learn to be economical and try to avoid spending money on something useless. ④Thirdly, we have responsibility to call on all our schoolmates to fight against waste. ⑤Only in this way can waste on campus be eliminated in the near future.

二、各类功能句常规写法

1 说明原因段

1）引出原因

① **There are many factors explaining/accounting for/contributing to** this phenomenon.（First of all/Above all, … Moreover, … Besides, …）
有许多因素导致了这一现象。（首先，……其次，……另外，……）

② **There are several reasons which may account for** my preference of the program.
以下一些原因可以解释我对这一课程的偏好。

③ **There are a large number of reasons for** this social phenomenon, **but in general, they come down to three major ones.**（Firstly, … Secondly, … Finally, …）
导致这种现象的原因有很多，但总体来说，主要有三点。（首先，……其次，……最后，……）

④ **There are mainly two reasons behind** this phenomenon.（First, … Second, …）
在这一现象背后主要有两点原因。（一是……，二是……）

⑤ **There are mainly three different reasons for** college students **to** take a work-

study program.
大学生参加勤工俭学主要有三个方面的原因。

⑥ **There are many factors deciding/influencing** my choosing future job.
有许多因素决定/影响我对将来工作的选择。

⑦ **The reasons for** this phenomenon **mainly lie in** the following two aspects.
产生这一现象的原因主要有以下两个方面。

⑧ **The reasons for** education to enter the market **are obvious**.
教育走向市场化的原因是显而易见的。

⑨ This extravagant spending **is mainly caused by/ due to** the following reasons/ factors.
这种过度消费主要是由以下因素/原因引起的。

⑩ **The following reasons are responsible for** the boom in continuing education.
下列原因导致了继续教育的热潮。

⑪ **The following three factors contribute to** the conflict.
以下三点因素导致了这个冲突。

⑫ **The following reasons can account for** the popularity of green food.
下列原因能够解释绿色食品流行的原因。

⑬ **Why** does "blog" become so popular in such a short time?
为什么"博客"在这么短的时间内会如此流行呢?

⑭ **But what lead to** the conflict between parental hopes and personal ideals?
但是，是什么导致了父母的期望和孩子的理想之间的冲突呢?

2）列举原因

① **One of the main reasons for** this change **is that** the living standard of Chinese people has been improved greatly.
产生这个变化的一个主要原因是中国人的生活水平得到了很大改善。

② **Among these reasons**, the enrollment expansion of universities **plays a very vital role.**
在所有的原因中，大学扩招起着很关键的作用。

③ First, the interest **plays an important role in** one student's choosing an elective class. / The interest **is an important factor which influences/decides** one student's choosing an elective class.
首先，兴趣在学生选择选修课时起到至关重要的作用。/兴趣是影响/决定一个学生选择一门选修课的重要因素。

④ The weak supervision and management of traffic control sectors **is（also）a**

noticeable reason.

交管部门的监管不力（也）是一个值得关注的原因。

⑤ Poor parents in rural areas cannot afford the high education for children, **which becomes a main reason for** their children's getting poor in the future.

在农村，贫穷的父母没有钱让他们的孩子接受高等教育，这是日后这些孩子变穷的主要原因。

⑥ More and more vehicles on road **increase the chances of** accidents.

汽车数量的增多增加了发生交通事故的几率。

⑦ The high social position of civil servants **is an important factor** drawing many people to choose it.

公务员有较高的社会地位，这是吸引人们选择它作为职业的一个重要因素。

⑧ More and more people become aware that those disasters **have much to do with** what we have done to the earth.

越来越多的人开始意识到，这些灾难的发生和我们人类对地球的所作所为有很大的关系。

⑨ Secondhand goods transactions **make it possible for people to** make good use of the goods which may be useless in their hands.

二手货交易使人们可以充分利用手里那些闲置的东西。

⑩ A part-time job can help release financial burdens on those poor students, **and hence** reduce the risk of their dropping school for lacking money.

兼职工作可以缓解贫困学生的经济负担，继而减少了他们因为缺钱而辍学的危险。

⑪ **This results in/leads to/produces** a decreased chance for any individual graduate to find a job.

这使得大学毕业生找到工作的机会减少了。

⑫ Some teachers' classes could not attract students' interests **so that** some students would rather skip classes to study what they are interested in.

一些教师的课不能引起学生的兴趣，以至于一些学生宁愿选择逃课去学习他们感兴趣的东西。

⑬ Nowadays college students get **so** much love **that** they are insensitive to others' care and help.

现在的大学生受到如此多的关爱，以至于他们对其他人的关心和帮助变得麻木不仁。

⑭ **Because of/Due to/Thanks to** the poor Internet administration and weak network security, our information might be open, stolen or sold.

由于网络管理的欠缺和网络安全的薄弱，我们的信息可能被公开、偷窃或出售。

2 说明方法段

1）引出方法

① **But/Then how to** build an ideal teacher-student relationship?
但是/那么，如何才能建立一种理想的师生关系呢？

② **However**, **how should** a college freshman adapt himself to these differences?
然而，大学新生应该怎样适应这些不同呢？

③ **The following measures can be taken to** reduce campus waste.
下列措施可以用来减少校园浪费。

④ **Therefore**, **it's high time for us to take/that we took effective measures to** fight against cyber crimes.
因此，该是我们采取有效措施来抵制网络犯罪的时候了。

⑤ Obviously, **it is necessary to take some effective measures to reduce this phenomenon**.
显然，有必要采取有效的措施来减少这种现象。

⑥ **In order to** solve the conflict, both parents and children should pay their efforts.
为了解决这一冲突，父母和孩子双方都要付出努力。

⑦ **Considering the seriousness of the problem**, **it is necessary for** college students **to** learn how to keep psychologically healthy.
考虑到问题的严重性，了解如何保持心理健康对于大学生来说是十分必要的。

⑧ **Considering the seriousness of the problem**, **effective measures should be taken to** protect us against noise.
考虑到问题的严重性，应该采取有效措施来保护我们免受噪声的干扰。

⑨ **Considering the above factors/the above-mentioned**, **we should/must** be careful in selecting and using references books.
考虑到以上因素/综上所述，我们应该/必须谨慎地选用参考书。

⑩ **Considering the bad effects of** depression, it **must be taken more seriously**.
考虑到抑郁症的负面影响，我们必须更加重视它。

⑪ **Taking the above-mentioned into consideration**, I think, **it is high time that we took effective measures to** improve public morals.
考虑到以上因素/综上所述，我认为，是时候采取有效措施提高公共道德了。

2）列举方法

① **First of all**, the teacher and the student **should** respect each other, **which is the**

precondition of good relationship.

首先，老师和学生应该互相尊重，这是建立良好关系的前提。

② **Second**, **attending collective activities is an effective way to** relieve pressure.

第二，参加集体活动是缓解压力的一个有效方法。

③ **To** communicate with each other actively **is necessary to** their understanding each other.

积极地与对方沟通对于彼此间的相互理解是必需的。

④ **Third**, **you should** learn to relax yourself **by** taking to exercise or other recreational activities.

第三，你应该学会通过体育锻炼和其他娱乐活动放松自己。

⑤ We **should** learn to be tolerant and consider more for others, **which is necessary for** group living.

我们应该学会容忍和多为他人考虑，这对于集体生活来说是必需的。

⑥ **In addition**, we can **turn to** the recommendation of teachers and students around us.

此外，我们可以求助于老师和同学的推荐与帮忙。

⑦ **Second**, society and schools **must** increase input in moral education **and try to** build the atmosphere of being grateful.

第二，社会和学校必须增加对道德教育的投入，并努力营造一个感恩的氛围。

⑧ **Whatever** your ideal is, careful plan and preparation **is vital to** realizing it.

无论你的理想是什么，要想实现它，仔细的规划和准备都是至关重要的。

⑨ An optimistic, positive mind **is indispensable in** the process of your pursuing your ideal.

乐观、积极的心态在你追求理想的过程中是不可或缺的。

⑩ To those patients with depression, **first of all**, **it is important to** accept treatment timely **instead of** covering or ignoring the disease.

对于抑郁症患者，首先，重要的是要及时接受治疗，而不能掩盖或忽视它。

⑪ **Actually**, **the best** treatment is **a combination of** medication and psychological help.

实际上，最好的方法是将医学治疗和心理辅导相结合。

⑫ **Secondly**, more advanced technology **should be developed to** reduce industrial noise and traffic noise.

第二，应该开发更多先进的技术以减少工业和交通噪声。

⑬ **Besides**, **more** talented people **should be trained and more** effective firewalls **should be** built up **so as to** make the Net immune to all kinds of viruses.

此外，应该培养更多优秀的人才并建立更有效的防火墙，以便使网络不受各种病毒的侵害。

⑭ **To** reverse the trend **is not a light task**, **and it requires the common efforts of all citizens**.
要扭转这一趋势并不容易，它需要所有公民的共同努力。

⑮ **We must look for all immediate methods**, **because the present situation**, **if permitted to continue**, **will sure lead to serious results**.
我们必须立刻寻找解决办法，因为现在的形势如果持续下去的话，势必会导致严重的后果。

⑯ **There is no immediate solution to the problem of** energy shortage, **but** our small economical behaviors in daily life **might be quite helpful/beneficial**.
能源短缺问题并没有立竿见影的解决办法，但是在我们日常生活中很小的节约行为可能会带来很大的帮助。

⑰ **No easy method can solve the problem of** pollution **in a short time**, **but** the general awareness of the necessity/importance of environmental protection **might be the first step on the right way**.
目前还没有简单的办法能够在短期内解决污染问题，但是，使人们普遍认识到保护环境的必要性/重要性或许是有效的第一步。

3）总结方法

① **Only in this way can we** make full use of reference books.
只有这样，我们才能充分地利用参考书。

② **Only through these methods/measures could noise problem be solved** fundamentally.
只有通过这些方法/措施，噪声问题才能够从根本上得到解决。

③ **Only in this way can people reduce the chance of** suffering from depression.
只有这样，人们才能够减少患上抑郁症的机会。

④ **Only when** campus newspapers are allowed to voice the feelings and ideas of students, **can they** become more popular among students.
只有当校报能够反映学生的感情和想法时，它们才能更受学生的欢迎。

⑤ **As long as** both parents and children learn to think from the other side's point of view, the conflicts between them **can be** avoided.
只有父母和孩子都能够从对方的角度考虑时，他们之间的冲突才能够避免。

⑥ **In a word**, the improvement of public morals **depends on all of us in this society**.
总之，公共道德的提高要靠我们所有人。

⑦ **In a word**, **it takes our common efforts to** defeat cyber crimes.
总之，战胜网络犯罪需要我们共同的努力。

⑧ **In a word**, **only if** you have an ideal, **you can** have the chance of realizing it.
总之，只要有理想，你就一定有机会实现它。

三、典型段落操练

要求：请撰写下列作文，注意其中的说明原因段和说明方法段的写法。

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **The Imitation of Brand-name Products.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 现在市场上有很多仿名牌商品。
2. 分析导致这一现象的原因。
3. 说明可能带来的问题。

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **How to Support the Old**. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 目前在赡养老人方面存在的问题（子女相互推卸责任，独生子女负担过重等）。
2. 造成这些问题的原因是什么？
3. 应该如何关心老人？

参考范文

练习一

The Imitation of Brand-name Products

第一段：概述现象段

Nowadays, there are many fake brand-name products in the market. They imitate those brand-name products in style and material, but in fact their qualities are much poorer than that of the real ones. However, despite this, still many consumers would like to buy these fake brand-name products.

第二段：说明原因段

Why do these fake brand-name products become so popular? The following three reasons can explain this. Firstly, making and selling fake brand-name products can bring great profits. Secondly, the price of fake brand-name products is lower than that of the real ones, which to some extent satisfies those who like famous brands but cannot afford them. Thirdly, the law to crack down on the manufacture and sale of fake products is not enough.

第三段：说明影响段

Although these fake brand-name products have their market needs, they undoubtedly bring many negative influences. For one thing, they invade the benefits of those real famous brands and disturb the normal market order. For another, their low quality makes consumers suffer losses. Therefore, I hope that the imitation of brand-name products should be stricken more strictly.

练习二

How to Support the Old

第一段：概述问题段

In recent years, the problem of supporting the old has become a serious problem. Some dissatisfactory facts are often seen. For example, in some families the aged parents are kicked around like a football among their children. Besides, some families might have two old couples, each having only one child, so the young couple complain about their heavy burden.

第二段：说明原因段

There are many factors resulting in the current situation. Incomplete system is an important one. Nowadays, the aging population keeps increasing, without a wholesome social system, there will surely appear many problems. In addition, modern people, especially young people, are facing with great pressure, so it is difficult for them to afford the burden of supporting the aged.

第三段：说明方法段

Considering the importance of the problem of supporting the old, I think it is high time we took effective measures to solve it. Firstly, the government should redouble its efforts to establish a comprehensive and efficient social security system for the old. Secondly, the community should launch more collective activities for the old so that the elderly won't feel lonely. Thirdly, the offspring should shoulder their responsibilities. In a word, it depends on common efforts from the whole society to get the final solution to the problem.

四、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **The Branch Campuses of the Universities.** You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 近年来很多大学都在郊区建立了分校。
2. 大学在郊区成立分校的原因有哪些?
3. 谈谈你的看法。

范文	点评
In recent years many universities have built up their branch campuses in suburban areas. Now (1) it is very difficult to find a university (2) without a branch campus. Some of them even have more than one branch campus.	(1) it是形式主语，不定式是真正的主语。 (2) 介词短语充当后置定语，修饰 a university。
(3) There are two main reasons behind this phenomenon. (4①) Firstly, (5①) it is the enrollment expansion of universities (5②) that forces universities to build up branch campuses.	(3) 引出原因常用句式。 (4) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰、意思连贯。 (5) 强调句型，突出主语“the enrollment expansion of universities”。
(6) As more and more freshmen are admitted, the original facilities (7) including classrooms, apartments, dining halls, laboratories, libraries are (8) not enough any more. (4②) Secondly, the quiet environment in suburban areas is more suitable for students to study. So most of branch areas have (9) been located in suburban areas.	(6) as 引导时间状语从句，意为“随着”。 (7) 现在分词短语充当后置定语，修饰 facilities。 (8) 意为“不再”。 (9) 意为“坐落于，位于”。
As a college student, (10) I think, it is necessary for the university to build up a branch campus. (11) However, the building of branch campuses brings some problems. The students in some branch campuses cannot enjoy good enough facilities and teachers (12) due to limited resources. (4③) Therefore, the university should (13) take a full account before it decides to build up a branch campus.	(10) 插入语，不影响句子其他成分。 (11) 转折引出可能带来的问题。 (12) 意为“因于，由于”。 (13) 意为“在做某事之前考虑周全”。

星期三　如何写说明危害段和说明好处段

一、段落基本句型构造

1 说明危害段

说明危害段一般出现在对策方法类作文的第二段或是对比分析类作文的第二段，其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话总述问题的危害或弊端，这是段落的主题句；然后用三四句话列举两三点具体的危害或弊端，用以支持主题句；最后再用一句话对这些危害或弊端作出总结，引出下面对解决方法或观点的阐述（本句也可能放在下一段开头）。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Reduce Waste on Campus**. You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 目前有些校园内浪费现象严重。
2. 浪费的危害。
3. 从我做起，杜绝浪费。

第二段：说明危害段

①As everyone sees, this phenomenon produces harmful effects in many aspects. ②Above all, the waste of those precious resources such as water and electricity will bring great economic loss to our country. ③Also, as these resources are not inexhaustible, wasting them will be a threat to human's future survival. ④Besides, our waste will undoubtedly burden our family and society heavily. ⑤Therefore, it is high time for us to take effective measures to eliminate waste on campus.

2 说明好处段

说明好处段一般出现在说明现象类作文的第二段或是对比分析类作文的第一段或第二段（具体根据提纲），其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话总述问题的好处或优点，这是段落的主题句（如果出现在第一段，该句前面一般还有一句对主题的总述）；然后用三四句话列举两三点具体的好处或优点，以支持主题句。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay on the topic **The Pros and Cons of College Students' Taking Part-time Jobs.** You should write at least 150 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 分析大学生做兼职的利与弊。
2. 谈谈你的看法。

第一段：说明好处段

①Nowadays many college students take part-time jobs in their spare time. ②It is no doubt that taking a part-time job brings about several advantages to college students. ③Above all, part-time jobs provide students a valuable chance to put their knowledge into practice. ④Moreover, the experience they get from part-time jobs will prepare them for the future job market. ⑤Besides, students can get some money to help unload the burden on their families.

除了说明危害段和说明好处段以外，六级作文中还经常涉及说明影响段（大多出现在说明现象类作文中），其结构与说明危害段和说明好处段基本相同，影响的内容可能有好有坏，也可能属于中性（无所谓好坏），考生在具体写作时要注意灵活处理。

二、各类功能句常规写法

1 说明危害段

1）引出危害

① However, **problems may also arise**.
然而，也可能会出现问题。

② These immoral behaviors **have brought great bad/negative effects on** our society.
这些不道德的行为已经给我们的社会带来极大的负面影响。

③ Depression **can bring great bad influences/effects on** one's study, work and life.
抑郁会给人的学习、工作和生活带来极大的不良影响。

④ Noise **brings great harm to** our daily lives.
噪声给我们的日常生活带来很大的危害。

⑤ **However**, the use of the so-called "convenience goods" **is extremely harmful in many ways**.
然而，使用这些所谓的"便利品"有很多害处。

⑥ **It is very clear that** this phenomenon **produces harmful effects in many aspects**.

很显然，这种现象会产生很多危害。

⑦ Psychological problems **are likely to lead to very serious results**.
心理问题可能会导致非常严重的后果。

⑧ **On the other hand**, private tutoring **has also some disadvantages**.
然而，私人家教也有一些缺点。

⑨ **As every coin has two sides**, recycling textbooks **has also some disadvantages**.
正如每个硬币都有两面，循环利用教科书也有一些弊端。

⑩ **However**, many others hold that the holiday economy **do more harm than good**.
然而，也有许多人认为，假日经济弊大于利。

⑪ **However**, relaxing the limit of age and marriage **might bring some problems**.
不过，放宽年龄和婚姻方面的限制可能会带来一些问题。

⑫ **In fact**, depression **affects not only** one's mind **but also** his body.
实际上，抑郁既会影响人的思想也会影响人的身体。

⑬ **However**, deciding everything for children **does not help them but harm them in many ways**.
然而，为孩子决定一切不但对他们没有帮助，反而会有很多害处。

⑭ **Though** most of students' taking seats in advance is for the purpose of better study, **this kind of phenomenon has great negative effects**.
尽管大多数学生提前占座是为了更好地学习，但是这种现象却有很大的负面影响。

⑮ A smart use of reference books **is certainly beneficial**, **but** the misuse and overuse of them **may cause a lot of problems**.
明智地使用参考书当然有益，但是误用或过度使用这些书就可能会带来很多问题。

⑯ If this trend continues, it **will exert undesirable/disastrous effect/influence**.
这种趋势如果持续下去的话，将会带来不良的/灾难性的影响。

2）列举危害

① **First**, the travel craze **puts a heavy burden on** the traffic system.
首先，旅游热潮给交通系统造成了沉重的负担。

② **Second**, thousands of tourists flood into scenic spots, **causing** over-crowdedness and safety **problems**.
第二，成千上万的游客涌向各个景点，带来过度拥挤和安全问题。

③ **Secondly**, some students rely on the reference books **too much**, **which is unfavorable to** the improvement of their ability to work out the solutions by themselves.
第二，有些学生过分依赖参考书，这不利于培养他们独立解决问题的能力。

④ **Thirdly**, there are some reference books filled with mistakes, **which might mislead** students.

第三，一些参考书中错误多多，可能会误导学生。

⑤ **Finally**, disposable products **make people** develop a throwaway habit, **which is harmful to** our social atmosphere.
最后，一次性产品可能会让人们养成随手扔东西的习惯，这将对整个社会的风气造成不利的影响。

⑥ **On one hand**, it is a selfish behavior, **which will damage** other students' interests.
一方面，这是一种自私的行为，会损害其他同学的利益。

⑦ **For one thing**, married students have to take care of their family, **which brings more difficulties for** school management.
一方面，已婚学生必须要照顾家庭，这会给学校管理带来更多的困难。

⑧ **For one thing**, it takes up **so much** of the pupil's time **that** he can hardly find enough time for rest and entertainment.
一方面，这会占用学生太多的时间，导致学生几乎没有足够的时间休息和娱乐。

⑨ **Moreover**, one's violating public morality **not only invades others' benefits but also does harm to himself**.
而且，违反公共道德不仅侵犯他人的利益也会伤害到自己。

⑩ **Furthermore**, disposable products **cause serious** pollution to our environment.
而且，一次性产品会给环境造成严重的污染。

⑪ **More seriously/Even worse**, some students **might lose control of** their emotions and behaviors.
更糟的是，一些学生可能会无法控制自己的情绪和行为。

⑫ **What's worse**, depression **is one of the main reasons that** people kill themselves.
更糟的是，抑郁是导致人们自杀的主要原因之一。

⑬ These disasters **have killed** millions of people, **destroyed** countless homes, **and wiped out** numerous pieces of fertile land.
这些灾难已经夺走了数百万人的生命，摧毁了无数的家园，还吞噬了大量肥沃的土地。

⑭ Long exposure to noise **will lead to the loss of** hearing **and possibly** drive people mad.
长期接触噪声会导致失聪，还可能使人发疯。

⑮ **For example**, if most people buy pirated products, those original producers will **suffer great damage and might lose** the enthusiasm to continue their producing, **which in turn influences** consumers.
例如，如果大多数人都购买盗版产品，那些正版产品的生产者将遭受极大的损失，而且可能会失去继续创作的热情，这反过来会影响到消费者。

⑯ Many college students **are too much indulged in** these games **so that** their health and academic performances are seriously affected.
许多大学生过分迷恋这些游戏，以至于他们的健康和学习成绩受到了严重的影响。

2 说明好处段（或说明影响段）

1）引出好处（或影响）

① **The advantages of** this policy **are obvious.**
该项制度的好处十分明显。

② Telecommuting system **has many advantages.**
远程办公系统有很多优点。

③ **Compared with** traveling alone, traveling with a companion **also has its advantages**.
和独自旅行相比，结伴旅行也有其优点。

④ **Undoubtedly**, college students **can benefit a lot from** physical exercise.
毫无疑问，大学生能够从体育锻炼中得到很多好处。

⑤ These cultural activities **have brought many benefits for** college students.
这些文化活动已经给大学生带来了很多好处。

⑥ Pets' service **does good to both** the society **and** the individual.
宠物服务既有益于社会也有益于个人。

⑦ No doubt, digital products **have brought us great convenience and pleasure**.
毫无疑问，数码产品已经给我们带来了极大的便利和快乐。

⑧ The increasing number of people traveling abroad might **have both its advantages and disadvantages**.
出国旅行人数的增加可能有利有弊。

⑨ **As everyone sees**, this phenomenon **has brought considerable effect/influence on** people's work and life.
正如大家看到的，这种现象已经给人们的工作和生活带来了极大的影响。

⑩ **Undoubtedly**, it will **produce profound/far-reaching/remarkable effect/influence on** people's life.
无疑，它将会对人们的生活产生深远的/显著的影响。

⑪ **It is obvious that** physical exercise **is very beneficial/favorable to** the healthy development of college students.
显然，体育锻炼对大学生的健康发展非常有益。

2）列举好处（或影响）

① **Firstly**, it **provides** more people **with** chances to receive higher education.
首先，它为更多的人提供接受高等教育的机会。

② **First of all**, these lectures **broaden** the students' knowledge horizon **and cultivate** their interests in different fields.
首先，这些讲座拓宽了学生的知识面，培养了他们对不同领域知识的兴趣。

③ **Moreover**, traveling alone **tends to bring** the traveler **unexpected surprise**, **such as** making a new friend and enjoying a different scenery.
而且，独自旅行往往会带给旅行者意外的惊喜，例如结交到新朋友，欣赏到别样的风景。

④ **Moreover**, physical exercise **is an effective way to** release pressure.
而且，体育锻炼是缓解压力的一种有效方式。

⑤ **Besides**, by attending practical activities, students can have more chances to contact others, **which can help** them **improve** their social skills.
此外，通过参加实践活动，学生可以获得更多和其他人接触的机会，这有助于提高他们的社交能力。

⑥ **Besides**, social practice **helps strengthen** students' sense of social responsibility.
此外，社会实践有助于增强学生的社会责任感。

⑦ **Besides**, lectures **make** the life of the students **colorful**.
此外，讲座使学生的生活变得丰富多彩。

⑧ **Thanks to** these cultural activities, our college life has become more colorful and enjoyable.
由于有了这些文化活动，我们的大学生活变得更加丰富和愉快。

三、典型段落操练

要求：请撰写下列作文，注意其中的说明危害段和说明好处段的写法。

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Mass Media.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 大众传媒的巨大作用是不言而喻的。
2. 但大众传媒也会存在一些问题，比如……
3. 谈谈你的看法。

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Free Tickets for Travel**. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 近两年来，各地纷纷向消费者发放旅游消费券，赠送旅游门票。
2. 这样做有哪些好处？
3. 谈谈你对此的看法。

参考范文

练习一

Mass Media

第一段：说明好处段

Mass media play an important role in our lives, which influence us in many ways. Below are listed their most commonly seen functions. First, mass mediakeep us well informed of the happenings of the world. Second, mass media deliver us all kinds of information on products and services through colorful advertisements. Third, mass media give us entertainment. Television, radio broadcasting, films, books provide us with a big variety of fun every day.

第二段：说明危害段

However, mass media have their problems. First, mass media could be utilized to fulfill harmful purposes such as preaching unhealthy values, attacking social policies and so on. Second, some advertisements will mislead consumers to make unwise purchases. Third, the violence in the media should be partly responsible for the violence in the reality.

第三段：总结观点段

From my point of view, it goes without saying that mass media are an indispensable part in our lives. However, we should not depend on them too much. We must have a clear knowledge of their disadvantages while making use of their advantages.

练习二

Free Tickets for Travel

第一段：概述现象段

Recently, in many cities, consumption tickets or entrance tickets for travel are distributed to the consumers for free. The move is welcomed by many people. They scramble to get these tickets vie Internet or on the phone.

第二段：说明好处段

No doubt, this move brings a win – win result. On the one hand, consumers

have chance to enjoy the travel for less money. On the other hand, free tickets attract more travelers, which will surely bring more profits for travel agencies and other related departments. Besides, the development of travel industry will drive the development of many other industries.

第三段：总结观点段

In my point, free distribution of the tickets for travel is a good policy and it should be continued. But the high ticket price is still a big problem in the travel industry of our country, which can not be solved only through free tickets. Therefore, travel agencies and other related departments should produce more good policies beneficial to the people.

四、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **College Students Should Attend Physical Exercise.** You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 有些大学生不喜欢参加体育锻炼，这种做法是相当不可取的。
2. 大学生参加体育锻炼的好处。
3. 你喜欢参加何种体育锻炼？

范文	点评
Physical exercise is a necessary part of college life. (1①) <u>However</u>, still some college students do not like to attend sports activities. They think those activities waste their time and influence their study. (2) <u>Indeed</u>, (3) <u>it is very unwise for college students to</u> keep distance from physical exercise. Physical exercise (4) <u>is very beneficial to</u> college students. (1②) <u>First of all</u>, (5) <u>attending sports activities</u> can help college students build a strong body and keep abundant energy. (1③) <u>Moreover</u>, physical exercise is (6) <u>an effective way to release pressure</u>	(1) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰、意思连贯。 (2) 意为“实际上，事实上”，相当于 in fact。 (3) 固定句式：It is … for sb. to do sth. 其中 it 是形式主语，不定式短语是实际的主语。 (4) 意为“对……有益”。

and keep a pleasant mood. (1④) Besides, (7) by attending physical activities, students can have chances to contact and communicate with others, (8) which can help them improve their social skills. Nowadays colleges and universities provide many sports facilities for students to do physical exercise. Students can choose freely (9) according to their interests and needs. (10) As for me, I am keen on all kinds of ball games, (11) especially football and basketball. From these games, I have gained great pleasure and made many friends. (1⑤) To conclude, every college student (12) should not hesitate to attend sports activities.	(5) 动名词短语做主语。 (6) 意为“缓解压力的一种有效的方式”。 (7) by 表示方式、方法。 (8) which 引导非限制性定语从句。 (9) 意为“根据自己的兴趣和需要”。 (10) 用于引出个人喜好。 (11) 意为“尤其是，特别是”。 (12) 意为“应该毫不犹豫地做某事”。

星期四　如何写提出观点段和总结观点段

一、段落基本句型构造

1 提出观点段

提出观点段分为两种：

第一种是提出一种正确的观点，一般出现在论证观点类作文的第一段。其基本的句型构造是：先用1~2句话引出要论证的观点；然后用2~3句话阐述观点蕴含的道理。

第二种是提出两种对立的观点，一般出现在对比分析类作文的第一段。其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话引出要讨论的主题；然后用1~2句话提出关于该主题的两种不同的看法。

需要注意的是，第二种提出观点段有时也可以是先提出对立观点中的一种观点，然后进行简单论证，之后第二段再提出另外一种观点并进行论证。考生在写作时可根据具体情况灵活处理。

2 总结观点段

与提出观点段一样，总结观点段也分为两种：

第一种是对一种观点进行总结，一般出现在论证观点类作文的第三段。其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话重申所论证观点的正确性或其中的道理；然后用2~3句话提出建议、倡议或正确的做法，呼应论点。

第二种是对两种对立的观点进行总结，一般出现在对比分析类作文的第三段。其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话表明自己的倾向或选择；然后用2~3句话说明自己的倾向或选择的理由；最后用一句话提出建议或正确的做法，与前面的内容呼应。

需要注意的是，总结观点段也有可能出现在其他类型作文的第三段，比如说明现象类作文的提纲中就经常会要求考生谈谈对现象的看法，考生在写作时应根据提纲灵活处理。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Knowledge Is Power**. You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 知识就是力量。
2. 试举例论证。

第一段：提出观点段

①It is generally accepted that knowledge is power. ②The truth of it is self-evident. ③With knowledge, one can find his position in the society. ④And the history of the human civilization is the process of accumulation of knowledge.

第三段：总结观点段

①All mentioned above tell us that the power of knowledge is infinite. ②It is knowledge that has brought us such a prosperous and strong country. ③Therefore, we must try hard to acquire as much knowledge as we can to build a beautiful world.

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Making Friends Similar or Different?** You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 很多人认为结交性格相似的朋友比较好。
2. 另一些人则认为结交性格互补的朋友比较好。
3. 你的看法。

第一段：提出观点段

①When it comes to choosing friends, there is no complete agreement among people. ②Some people take it for granted that it's better to make friends with similar characters. ③However, others maintain that friends with complementary characters seems advantageous.

第三段：总结观点段

①Weighing up these two arguments, I prefer to have both types of friends. ②For one thing, everyone has his strong points, and we can learn more from each other. ③For another, friendship has something to do with fate, and it shouldn't be arranged in advance. ④Taking above-mentioned factors into consideration, I may reasonably conclude that friendship is so valuable in our life that we should treasure it regardless of characters.

二、各类功能句常规写法

1 提出观点段

1）概述引出观点

① "Practice makes perfect" **is a proverb full of logic**.
"熟能生巧"是一句充满哲理的谚语。

② **The proverb** "Where there is a will, there is a way" **has been generally accepted for many years**.
许多年来，"有志者，事竟成"这句谚语一直得到人们的普遍认可。

③ **There is a widespread proverb**, "Man proposes, God disposes", **which means that** the planning lies with man, the outcome with Heaven.
有一句广泛流传的谚语："谋事在人，成事在天"，意思是说，事情是由人来规划的，但是结果却不是人所能控制的。

④ **There is an old/popular saying/proverb which goes that** "Practice makes perfect."
有这样一句古老的谚语："熟能生巧。"

⑤ **It has been widely accepted that** union is strength.
人们一直相信：团结就是力量。

⑥ Economy **is a traditional Chinese virtue**, **which is very important to** the healthy development of our whole society.
节约是中华民族的一项优良传统，它对于我们整个社会的健康发展至关重要。

⑦ **Nowadays there are still many people who** take "Silence is gold" as a doctrine. **However**, **indeed**, in many cases, silence is not gold, especially in modern society.
现在，仍然有很多人把"沉默是金"当做信条。然而，事实上，在许多情况下，沉默并不是金，尤其是在现代社会。

⑧ **No doubt**, opportunity can bring one's abilities and skills to full play. **However**, one's success is **not** decided only by opportunity **but** depends on many other factors.
无疑，机会可以让一个人的技能得到充分发挥，但是，一个人的成功并不只是由机会决定的，而是取决于许多其他的因素。

2）阐述观点中的道理

① **It tells us that** after practicing doing something again and again, one can do it perfectly.
它告诉我们，经过反复实践以后，人能够熟练地完成某项工作。

② **It reminds us that** if we are to achieve our final goal, we have to do it in a down-to-earth way.
这提醒我们，如果要想实现最终的目标，我们就必须脚踏实地。

③ **It means that** as long as a person possesses a strong will, he will certainly accomplish a task no matter how difficult it is.
这意味着，一个人只要拥有坚强的意志，不管多么困难的任务，都能够完成。

④ **This proverb reflects** a relation between success and luck, **that is**, we should always work hard in order to achieve our goal, **though in many cases** our final outcome may be unsatisfactory.
这句谚语反映了成功和运气之间的关系，也就是说，我们应该努力去实现我们的目标，尽管许多时候我们可能得不到令人满意的结果。

⑤ **The truth of this saying is** not to give up comfort but to enhance efficiency.
这句话的意思并不是要我们放弃舒适，而是要提高效率。

⑥ **The truth of it is deep and profound.**
其中的道理是深远的。

⑦ **Indeed**, **whether** in the past **or** at present, economy **is praiseworthy and should be popularized in our society**.

事实上，无论过去还是现在，节约都值得称颂并应该在全社会普及。

3）引出有争议的话题

① **Recently**, China has banned all supermarkets, department stores and shops offering plastic bags for free, **which has caused wide attention**.

最近，中国已经禁止了所有超市、商场和商店免费提供塑料袋，这引起了广泛的关注。

② In recent years, more and more celebrities have been admitted to famous universities even without an entrance examination. **This phenomenon has become a subject of widespread controversy**.

近几年，越来越多的名人甚至没有经过入学考试就被著名的大学录取，这一现象引起了广泛争议。

③ Many people like reading books. **However**, **how to** get the book to read, buy it or borrow it, **differs from one to another**.

许多人喜欢读书，然而，关于书究竟是应该买来读还是应该借来读，人们看法不一。

④ **Some people propose such a question**: Will traditional newspapers be replaced by electronic newspapers?

一些人提出这样一个疑问：传统的报纸会被电子报纸取代吗？

⑤ **Different people hold different views about whether or not** one should expect a reward when doing a good deed.

现在，对于做好事是否应该得到回报这一问题，不同的人有不同的看法。

⑥ **Nowadays**, **there is a heated debate as to whether** textbooks should be recycled.

现在，关于教科书是否应该循环使用的问题，存在着广泛的争议。

⑦ Nowadays **there is no complete agreement on** the relation between diploma and ability.

现在，关于文凭和能力的关系，人们看法不一。

⑧ **When it comes to whether** the university campus **should** be open to tourists, **there is no complete agreement among people**.

当谈到大学校园是否应该对游客开放这一话题时，人们持有不同的观点。

⑨ **When it comes to** school activities, **there is no consensus of opinions among people**.

当谈到学校活动时，人们看法不一。

⑩ **As to** the employment orientation, **different students have different opinions/choices**.

关于就业方向，不同的学生有不同的想法或选择。

⑪ **Opinions vary from** individual **to** individual, **from** culture **to** culture.

不同的人，不同的文化，对这一问题的看法都不相同。

⑫ **When asked** which mode of travel they like, **different people will offer different preferences**.

当被问及喜欢哪种旅行方式时，不同的人有不同的偏好。

⑬ Under the influence of these changes, **some people come to the conclusion that** traditional virtues, like thrift, honesty, and being happy to help others, are out of date, **to which I could not give my consent**.

在这些变化的影响下，一些人得出这样的结论：节俭、诚实、乐于助人等传统美德已经过时了。对此，我不能同意。

⑭ **Some people think** college students should often take part in school activities, **while others argue** the main task for students is learning, so they shouldn't pay too much attention to school activities.

一些人认为大学生应该经常参加学校活动，而其他一些人则认为学生的主要任务是学习，不该过分关注学校活动。

⑮ **Faced with** the phenomenon of "DINK", **quite a few people think** that it is a fashion, **but other people conceive differently**.

面对"丁克"现象，相当一部分人认为这是一种时尚，但是也有很多人并不认同。

⑯ **There are always many arguments about** the advantages and disadvantages of examination. **Some people think** examination is the only best way to test how examinees have mastered what they have studied. **However**, **still others do not agree with this.**

关于考试的利弊一直存在许多争议，一些人认为考试是测试知识掌握程度的最好方式，而也有人不同意这种说法。

⑰ There are more and more people looking for jobs every year, **but they have different views about** what kind of job they should choose. **Some of them focus their attention on** the jobs that promise high salaries. **Others show a preference for** those jobs that offer chances to learn skills and advancement possibilities.

每年都有越来越多的人在找工作，但是他们对于应该选择什么样的工作却有着不同的看法，一些人看重能够提供高薪的工作，还有很多人倾向于那些能够提供专业技能学习并有晋升空间的工作。

2 总结观点段

1）总结观点

① **All the above-mentioned tell us that** practice plays a very vital role in our study and work.

综上所述，实践在我们的学习和工作中发挥着极其重要的作用。

② **Therefore**, **we should** combine theory with practice in realizing our goals.

因此，我们在实现目标的过程中，应该把理论和实践相结合。

③ **Judging from the evidence offered**, **we might safely draw the conclusion that** if we wish to succeed, we must firstly have a resolution and remember the saying, "Where there is a will, there is a way."

综上所述，我们可以得出这样的结论：如果想要成功，我们首先必须要有决心，并且铭记"有志者，事竟成"这句话。

④ **From the above-mentioned**, **we can conclude** that it is not the opportunity itself that can decide one's success or failure.

综上所述，我们可以得出这样的结论：机会本身并不能决定一个人成功与否。

⑤ **Therefore**, **whatever we do**, **we should not** pay too much attention to the speed and ignore these laws.

因此，无论做什么，我们都不应该过分追求速度而忽视这些法则。

⑥ **Therefore**, **I think it is a trend that** traditional newspapers will be replaced by electronic newspapers.

因此，我认为，传统报纸被电子报纸取代是一个趋势。

⑦ **To conclude/In a word**, **it is every citizen's responsibility to** do good deeds without expecting any reward.

总之，做好事不求回报是每一个公民的责任。

⑧ **In general**, **the advantages of science far outweigh its disadvantages.**

总体来说，科学的好处远远超过它的弊端。

⑨ **But**, **in sum**, the examination **does more good than harm**. **Therefore**, **I think** the correct attitude towards examination should be to take full advantage of it and avoid its disadvantage.

但是，总体来看，考试肯定是利大于弊。因此，我认为，对待考试的正确态度应该是"扬长避短"。

2）表明观点、倾向或选择

① **Weighing up these two arguments**, **I prefer the first/former/second/latter one**.
权衡两种观点，我宁愿选择前者/后者。

② **Weighing up these two arguments**, **I think** a university should be an open place.
权衡两种观点，我认为大学应该是一个开放的地方。

③ **Weighing up the advantages and disadvantages**, **I think** textbooks should be recycled.
权衡利弊，我认为，教科书应该循环使用。

④ **Considering the above-mentioned**, **I think**, traditional virtues remain indispensable elements in the Chinese character in modern society.
综上所述，我认为，传统美德仍然是现代中国不可缺少的元素。

⑤ **In my view**, our happiness and the realization of our ideal should depend on individual struggle.
我认为，我们的幸福和理想的实现应该靠我们的个人奋斗。

⑥ **As for me/Personally**, **I am in favor of** charging for plastic bags.
我个人非常赞成塑料袋收费。

⑦ **As for me**, **I will give my vote to** the development space first and then high salaries.
至于我，我会把发展空间放在首位，然后再考虑高工资。

⑧ **As far as I am concerned**, **I think** the examination is very useful to both teachers and students.
就我而言，我认为，考试对于老师和学生都非常有用。

⑨ **From my point of view**, luck does influence us sometimes, **but** in any case we are the master of our own fortune.
在我看来，运气有时候的确会影响我们，但是不管在什么时候，我们才是命运的掌控者。

⑩ **However**, **compared with** the negative aspects, **I think**, the blessing of science is more evident.
然而，和其负面影响相比，我认为，科学的好处更加显而易见。

3）引出注意事项

① **But it is notable/worth noting that** costs related to the recycling of textbooks should be controlled in an acceptable range.
但是值得注意的是，循环使用教科书的成本应该控制在可以接受的范围内。

② **But of course**, we shouldn't neglect our studies.
但是，当然，我们不应该忽视学业。

③ **However**, **we must keep it in our mind** that study is the most important thing for us.
然而，我们必须记住，对我们来说学习是最重要的事情。

④ **However**, **sometimes**, some professors are too indulged in their scientific research projects for fame or higher position so as to ignore their teaching.
但是，有时候，一些教授为了名利而过分专注于科研，从而忽视了教学。

三、典型段落操练

要求：请撰写下列作文，注意其中的提出观点段和总结观点段的写法。

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **The Protection of Traditional Architecture**. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 现在，人们越来越重视对传统建筑的保护。
2. 有人甚至提出新的建筑物也应该依照传统的方式来建造。
3. 你对此的看法是……，为什么？

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **A Rolling Stone Gathers No Moss.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 常言说“滚石不生苔”，指的是没有定性的人或组织永远不会有大成就。
2. 试举例说明。

参考范文

练习一

The Protection of Traditional Architecture

第一段：提出观点段

These days, people are putting more and more emphasis on the protection of traditional architecture. Some people even say that new buildings should be set up in the conventional way, to which people have no complete agreement.

第二段：对比论证段

Some people think it a good way to inherit and pass the traditional culture. Besides, they say building or maintaining traditional buildings can raise art sense

and increase choices of people's housing. However, others hold the opposite. They say that most of traditional buildings are not suitable for the modern transportation. Besides, the increasing population puts serious pressure on housing supply. Modern buildings, compared with traditional buildings, can use space more efficiently.

第三段：总结观点段

Weighing up the cons and pros, I am inclined to the latter opinion. Of course, traditional architecture is precious and should get more protection and inheritance. However, new buildings are built in a typical way does more harm than good in the improvement of people's being.

练习二

A Rolling Stone Gathers No Moss

第一段：提出观点段

The proverb "A rolling stone gather no moss" has been generally accepted. It tells us that a person who never settles down in one place will not be successful. The truth of it is deep and profound.

第二段：论证观点段

There are numerous examples supporting this argument. A case in point is Wal-Mart. It might have stood a lot of chances to cash in on the other fields, but it keeps devoting single-mindedly to retailing, thus securing its leading position. This example reminds us that we are more likely to succeed by sticking to one field, for we develop single-minded devotion and focus our attention, energy and resources on what we are doing. For another example, employers seldom promote those employees with the experience of short-term jobs because they question their professional proficiency and loyalty.

第三段：总结观点段

Judging from the evidence offered, we might safely draw the conclusion that it would be better to engage in one job or field. Otherwise, we would have no advantage and characteristic in our work or business. Therefore, we should settle down in one right place and try our best to achieve the success.

四、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **To Become a Specialist or a Generalist?** You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 有人认为一个学生应该努力成为一个“专才”。
2. 而其他人则认为学生应该成为“通才”，才能在现代社会立足。
3. 你的看法是……

范文	点评
(1①) When it comes to whether a student should become a specialist or a generalist, (1②) there is no complete agreement among people. (2①) Some people think that it is best for college students to (3) focus on developing skills in one field to become a specialist. (2②) However, others maintain that a versatile generalist (4①) is more welcomed in the competitive job market. (5) Those people who hold the former opinion believe that it is impossible to demand college students to become an all-round generalist within four years. (6①) In addition, in their opinion, (7) with increasing elaboration of social division, the specialists with professional skills (8) are in more urgent need in every field. (9) However, still others advocate the different opinion. They hold that college students should stretch themselves to (10) as many fields as possible to adapt to (11) the increasingly fierce competition. (6②) Besides, generalists who have knowledge on several areas (4②) are highly demanded in the information age. (12) Personally, I am in favor of the former opinion. (6③) For one thing, (13) I don't think it is advisable that college students equally spend their time and energy on several fields at the same time. (6④) For another, the development of high-tech needs specialists and enterprises usually offer specialists higher salaries. (14) Taking above-mentioned factors into consideration, I may reasonably conclude that to be a specialist is the right choice for most students.	(1) 引出有争议的话题的常用句式，when it comes to… 意为“当谈到或提及……”。 (2) 提出对立观点的常用句式。 (3) 意为“注重，集中”。 (4) 被动语态使用恰到好处。 (5) 用于引出第一种观点的理由。 (6) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰，意思连贯。 (7) 意为“随着社会分工越来越细”。 (8) 意为“更加急需”。 (9) 用于引出对相反观点的论证。 (10) as… as 表示同级比较，意为“尽可能多的领域”。 (11) 意为“越来越激烈的竞争”。 (12) 用于引出个人观点。 (13) 注意否定转移。 (14) 得出结论时常用的句式，意为“鉴于以上因素，我可以合理地得出这样的结论：……”

星期五　如何写论证观点段和对比论证段

一、段落基本句型构造

1 论证观点段

论证观点段一般出现在论证观点类作文的第二段，其基本的句型构造是：先用一句话承上启下，引出接下来对上段提出观点的论证；然后用3~4句话列举论据来论证观点的正确性。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Knowledge is Power**. You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 知识就是力量。
2. 试举例论证。

第二段：论证观点段

①The infinite power of knowledge has been proved by many remarkable examples. ②A case in point is the function of knowledge in the development of one nation. ③Whether in war times or in peace times, one nation who doesn't emphasize knowledge is doomed to fall behind others. ④For another example, in people's normal life, knowledge plays a vital role. ⑤It is knowledge that has brought us such hi-tech products as computers and televisions which make our life enjoyable and colorful.

2 对比论证段

对比论证段一般出现在对比分析类作文的第二段，其基本的句型构造是：先用2~3句话阐述第一种观点或选择的理由；然后再通过一个转折句引出第二种观点或选择，再用2~3句话阐述第二种观点或选择的理由。

需要注意的是，有时候对比论证段可以分为两段，第一段先提出第一种观点并进行论证，第二段再提出第二种观点并进行论证，考生在写作时可根据提纲和自己的写作习惯灵活处理。

例

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Making Friends Similar or Different?** You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 很多人认为交性格相似的朋友比较好。
2. 另一些人则认为还是结交性格互补的朋友比较好。
3. 你的看法。

第二段：对比论证段

①Those people who hold the former opinion believe similar friends have more common ideas and interests. ②So, it is happier and easier for them to get along with each other. ③However, still others hold the different opinion. ④They argue that by making friends with different characteristics, they can complement each other. ⑤Besides, in their opinions, different friends can broaden each other's minds.

二、各类功能句常规写法

1 论证观点段

1）举例论证

① **There are numerous examples supporting this argument.**
有大量的例子支持这一观点。

② **There are many examples which can support this argument.**
有大量的例子支持这一观点。

③ **There are too numerous examples to mention one by one.**
例子太多，不胜枚举。

④ **Let's take** finding a job **as an/another example.**
让我们以找工作为（另一个）例子。

⑤ Han Xin of the Han Dynasty **is a typical example of** those who have patience.
汉朝的韩信就是一个典型的有耐心的人。

⑥ **A case in point** is the important role of patience in English study.
一个典型的例子就是耐心在英语学习中的重要作用。

⑦ **A good example to illustrate** is higher divorce rate in recent years.

近年来的高离婚率就是一个很好的例证。

⑧ **For another example**, if we want to be proficient in using the computer, we also need lots of practice.

再比如说，如果我们想要熟练地使用计算机，也需要大量的练习。

2）列举论据

① **The following reasons/facts can support the argument.**

下面的理由/事实能够支持这一观点。

② **There are many facts which can prove the argument.**

有许多事实能够证明这一观点。

③ **This argument can be proved by the following facts.**

这一观点能够被下列事实所证明。

④ **This is close to suggest that** a strong will is a vital factor to one's final success.

这就证明，坚强的意志是一个人取得最终成功的关键因素。

⑤ **Without** practical operating experience, **one can not** become an expert on computer.

没有实际的操作练习，人不可能成为计算机方面的专家。

⑥ As we know, **it was** just the virtue of economy **that** helped our country to get through the difficult periods in the days of founding of the new China.

如我们所知，正是节约的美德帮助我们国家度过了新中国成立初期那段艰苦的岁月。

2 对比论证段

1）提出或论证第一种观点

① **Those who advocate** college students' frequent attending school activities **say that** these activities provide students good chances to meet more people and make more friends.

提倡大学生应该经常参加学校活动的人认为，这些活动可以给学生提供更多接触他人和结交朋友的机会。

② **People holding the first view usually think** that more money will result in more happiness.

持第一种观点的人通常认为，钱越多越幸福。

③ **Some people object strongly** that universities lower admission requirements for celebrities. **They hold that** this admission pattern will damage the basic fairness

rule of education.

一些人强烈反对大学降低标准招收名人，他们认为这种招生模式会破坏教育的公平原则。

④ **Most people welcome this measure. They believe charging for plastic bags** will to some extent force people to reduce using plastic bags, **which** will help improve our environment.

大多数人欢迎这项措施，他们认为塑料袋收费会在某种程度上减少塑料袋的使用，这将有利于改善环境。

⑤ **Quite a few people's answer is yes. They say** electronic newspapers can be updated instantly.

相当一部分人的回答是肯定的，他们指出，电子报纸能够即时更新。

2）提出或论证相反观点

① **However, still some other people/others think differently/do not agree this/hold the opposite opinion.**

然而，还有一些人持不同的观点。

② **However, still others don't agree this argument. They think that** university professors are the main force of scientific research work.

然而，还有一些人不同意这种观点，他们认为，大学教授是科研工作的主力军。

③ **However, the holders of the second view argue** that one should develop his skills as roundly as possible.

然而，持第二种观点的人认为，人应该尽可能全面地培养自己的技能。

④ **However, there are many others who take** Leifeng as a model.

然而，也有许多人把雷锋当做榜样。

⑤ **But it doesn't mean that** a good marriage can ensure a real permanent happiness.

但是这并不意味着，好的婚姻就一定能够带来真正长久的幸福。

⑥ **However, there are many others who do not favor** the university campus being open to tourists. **In their opinions**, tourists will destroy the quiet environment and influence students' normal study. **Besides, they argue that** too many tourists will add a burden to the security department of the university.

然而，有许多人并不赞成大学校园对游客开放。他们认为，游客会破坏大学的安静环境并影响学生的正常学习。此外，他们认为，太多的游客会增加大学安保的负担。

三、典型段落操练

要求：请撰写下列作文，注意其中的论证观点段和对比论证段的写法。

练习一

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **A Little Leak Will Sink a Great Ship.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 为什么说“千里之堤毁于蚁穴”？
2. 论证其中的道理。

练习二

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Should Dangerous Sports like Boxing Be Banned?** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 有些人认为拳击、赛车等危险运动应该被禁止。
2. 但很多人表示反对。
3. 谈谈你的看法和理由。

参考范文

练习一

A Little Leak Will Sink a Great Ship

第一段：提出观点段

“A little leak will sink a great ship”, as an old saying, has been generally accepted. It tells us the negligence towards slight fault can cause big mistake or even tragic consequences. The truth of it is deep and profound.

第二段：论证观点段

There are numerous examples supporting this argument. A case in point is many famous companies have gone bankrupt just because of a long-term small problem or mistake in the management. This is close to suggest a slight fault could grow into a big disaster. For another example, some students committed suicide due to the pressure accumulated in study process or daily life. Indeed, the pressure could surely been minimized or avoided if we had attached enough attention to the

trivial matters. Moreover, some girls go on diet for keeping slim. Skipping one meal occasionally might mean nothing, but often eating nothing all day leads to a serious malnutrition.

第三段：总结观点段

Judging from the evidence offered, we might safely draw the conclusion that the devil is in the details. It will be too late when a slight fault grows into a big failure. To conclude, we should be careful enough in our work or everyday life.

练习二

Should Dangerous Sports like Boxing Be Banned?

第一段：提出观点段

When speaking of dangerous sports like boxing, auto racing, people have no complete agreement.

第二、三段：对比论证段

Some people propose that these sports should be banned since they are full of cruelty and violence. They think the popularity of boxing and auto racing is the reflection of barbarism of human beings. Besides, these sports are so dangerous that many people get seriously injured and even lose their lives.

However, other people insist these sports have their necessity of existence. They say that boxing matches attract universal interest because they do bring people excitement and fun. Also, the sport like boxing, auto racing can embody courage, power and people's pursuit of the limit.

第四段：总结观点段

Weighing up the cons and pros, I am for the opinion of banning these dangerous sports. My reasons can be listed as follows. Firstly, despite the fact that these sports can bring excitement, this excitement is produced on the basis of cruelty and violence. Secondly, the violence shown in these sports is partly responsible for the violent behaviors in our society. From the outgoing, I can safely draw on the conclusion that those dangerous sports like boxing, auto racing should be banned as early as possible.

四、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Which Mode of Travel Do You Like?** You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 有的人喜欢参加旅行团旅行。
2. 有的人喜欢自己独自旅行。
3. 你喜欢的是……

范文	点评
(1①) When asked which mode of travel they like, (1②) different people will offer different preferences. (2①) Some people are in favor of the package tour. (2②) However, others would like to travel on their own. (3) Those people who hold the first opinion believe package tour saves them a lot of trouble, (4) such as finding the accommodation. (5①) In addition, they say, package tour can relatively (6) ensure the safety of the tourists. (7) However, still others think differently. In their opinions, they can get (8) a greater degree of independence and freedom, and can take their time to (9) appreciate the views. (5②) Besides, they argue that it will cost (10①) less to travel on one's own (10②) than join package tours. (11) Weighing up these two arguments, I prefer to the latter one. (5③) For one thing, I do not have to obey the regulation set by the travel agency. (5④) For another, I can decide by myself (12①) when to start on my way, (12②) where to linger a little longer (12③) and which spot to skip over to save energy and time for another spot. (13) Considering all these, I think traveling on my own is a better mode of travel.	(1) 引出有争议话题的常用句式。 (2) 提出对立观点的常用句式。 (3) 引出第一种观点的理由。 (4) 表示列举。 (5) 衔接词语使文章条理清晰，意思连贯。 (6) 意为“确保，保证”。 (7) 引出对相反观点的论证。 (8) 意为“更大的自由度”。 (9) 意为“欣赏”。 (10) 注意比较结构的使用。 (11) 用于表明自己的倾向。 (12) 平行结构增加了文章的文采。 (13) 意为“鉴于这些”，用于得出结论。

星期六　一周复习效果检验

Test 1

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Learn to Compromise.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 日常生活中，我们不可避免要和别人产生分歧或争执。
2. 很多时候，我们应该学会妥协。
3. 谈谈你对妥协的看法。

Test 2

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Is It Necessary to Donate for the Dying Terminally Ill Patients?** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 对于是否应该给身患绝症的人捐款，一些人认为没有意义。
2. 然而另一些人则持相反意见。
3. 谈谈你对此的看法。

Test 3

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **We Should Enhance the Consciousness of Protecting Rights**. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 目前，我国消费者的维权意识还相当薄弱。
2. 分析造成这种状况的原因。
3. 消费者应该提高维权意识。

Test 4

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **High Income of Entertainment Stars**. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 现代社会，娱乐明星的收入远远高于大众的工资水平。
2. 有人认为这是不公平的，也有人认为这很正常。

3. 你对此的看法是……

Test 5

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Should Children Carry Cell phones to School?** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 随着手机的普及，许多孩子开始携带手机上学。
2. 分析其中的利弊。
3. 你如何看待？

Test 6

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Choices after Graduation**. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the table and the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 根据下图描述某高校近两年毕业生去向分布情况。
2. 分析这样分布的原因。
3. 你对此有何看法？

毕业去向	就业	考研	出国留学	其他
所占比例	52%	31%	14%	3%

Test 7

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Celebrity Spokesperson**. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 现在，明星为产品或活动代言的现象十分普遍。
2. 分析明星代言中存在的问题。
3. 谈谈你对明星代言现象的看法。

Test 8

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **No pains, no gains**. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 为什么说“不劳就无获”？
2. 试举例论证。

参考范文

Test 1

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出分歧和争执的不可避免性和解决的必要性；第二段说明应该如何学会妥协，解决分歧或争执；第三段针对该问题谈谈“我”的看法。

第一段：概述问题段

There are times in our daily life when we have disagreement with others and have quarrels with them. Afterwards, we may feel upset, regretting such irrational behavior. But once again ignited, we lose our temper again. Obviously, these quarrels produce bad influence on our personal relationship.

第二段：说明方法段

Considering these bad influence, we should learn to avoid quarreling and make a compromise. The first step is to control our temper. Take a few deep breaths and try to keep calm. The second step is to start communication. We should listen to the viewpoint of the counterpart again patiently. This will ensure there is no misunderstanding between us and demonstrate that we are willing to compromise. If we do have contrary views with the counterpart, the third step comes to a real compromise. Force ourselves to think in the counterpart's way. Maybe our ideas will be improved with his suggestions.

第三段：总结观点段

From my point of view, it is necessary to learn to compromise not only in our work but also in our life. If we prefer to compromise rather than explode, we are likely to come up with a third way satisfying us both, and we are likely to have a happier life.

Test 2

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出对是否应该给身患绝症的人捐款的不同看法；第二段对比论述两种看法各自的理由；第三段谈谈“我”对这一问题的看法和理由。

Is It Necessary to Donate for the Dying Terminally Ill Patients?

第一段：提出观点段

Have you ever heard of the dying terminally ill patients who badly need medical treatment but lack money? When people talk about donating to them, debate occurs. Some people think doing this is of no sense, while others believe the donation helps those desperate patients a lot.

第二段：对比论证段

Those who object to this kind of donation say it is nothing different from wasting money since these money cannot save the dying person' s life. Also, maintaining a terminally ill patient's life will only last his pains. However, many people don't agree to this. They say this donation mean love, care and encouragement. Even if the patient's life cannot be saved at last, he or she will feel the warmth in the last period of his or her life. Besides, they believe love might make a miracle.

第三段：总结观点段

As for me, it is necessary to donate for those people in need even if they are terminally ill patients. The magnificence of the human civilization lies in paying respect to life. Today our pocket money may save tomorrow's promising talents. Remember, life is the most precious property on this wonderful planet.

Test 3

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段提出“消费者维权意识薄弱”的问题，指出问题的主要危害；第二段分析导致消费者维权意识薄弱的原因；第三段说明应该如何提高消费者的维权意识。

We Should Enhance the Consciousness of Protecting Rights

第一段：概述问题段

Nowadays, there are still quite a few consumers in China who keep silent when their rights and interests are invaded. However, the weak consciousness of protecting rights makes consumers suffer great damage, not only materially but also mentally. Even worse, consumers' ignorance and silence encourage those shameless merchants.

第二段：说明原因段

The weak consciousness of protecting rights is due to the following reasons. Among these, the high cost plays a vital role. Many times, the cost paid to safeguard rights is even higher than the compensation they finally get. In addition, being unfamiliar to the related laws and regulations is a big obstacle for consumers to protect their rights.

第三段：说明方法段

Considering the importance of protecting rights, I think it is high time we paid more attention to the problem. Firstly, as consumers, we could not keep silence again but should try to defend our rights and interests. Secondly, Consumers' Associations and other departments concerned should give more publicity to the laws and regulations related to protecting rights. Thirdly, more helps and facilities should be provided to those consumers whose interests are infringed. Only in this way can consumers' consciousness of protecting rights be enhanced in a short time and can consumers' interests be safeguarded.

Test 4

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出娱乐明星的收入远远超出大众工资水平这一现象，引出人们对其的不同看法；第二、三段对比论述两种看法各自的理由；第四段谈谈“我”对娱乐明星高收入现象的看法和理由。

High Income of Entertainment Stars

第一段：提出观点段

In modern society, entertainment stars have much higher incomes than professional workers like doctors and teachers. This has always been a debate topic.

第二、三段：对比论证段

Many people think it is unfair. They say a singing star or a movie star doesn't create greater value than a doctor or a teacher. They only have different social division of labor. An entertainment star should not be paid far more money than a professional just because he is liked and focused on by more people.

However, there are many others who accept it as a normal phenomenon. They say higher demand brings higher value. Entertainment stars entertain a nation or even the whole world, so they should get higher income. Besides, they say entertainment stars are public figures, who produce greater social benefits as well as facing more pressure.

第四段：总结观点段

From my point of view, entertainment stars should not be paid so much because they are no difference from us. In my opinion, although they entertain us, their value is not worth much higher incomes. The value of our world is created together by those with real knowledge and skills like doctors and teachers. Therefore, I think it is quite unfair that an entertainment star make more money than a professional like a doctor or a teacher.

Test 5

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段说明孩子携带手机上学的好处；第二段说明孩子携带手机上学的问题；第三段谈谈“我”孩子带手机上学的看法。

Should Children Carry Cell phones to School?

第一段：说明好处段

Nowadays many children are carrying cell phones to school. It is no doubt that it has many advantages. Above all, parents can keep contact with their children whenever they want. It is helpful to parents' supervising and watching their children. In addition, if something happens to the child, he can call their parents at once.

第二段：说明害处段

However, problems may also arise. Carrying cell phones to school will influence the children's study. For example, some children send short messages in the class; the sudden phone ring in the middle of class will disturb the class order. What's worse, some children cheat on exams with the help of cell phones.

第三段：总结观点段

Weighing the advantages and disadvantages, I think it is ok for children to carry cell phones to school. Undoubtedly, it helps parents keep their children under control. But the disadvantages of cell phones could not be neglected. To conclude, schools should give necessary supervision and control to the use of cell phones at school.

Test 6

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇图表阐释类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段根据图表中的数据，描述近两年某高校毕业生去向分布情况；第二段分析导致这样分布的原因；第三段谈谈“你”对毕业生去向的看法。

Choices after Graduation

第一段：描写图表段

From the above table, we can see that the students of this university have three main choices after graduation. Of these choices, the students who have found a job only take up 52%. In contrast, the percentages of students who pursue further study by taking the postgraduate entrance exam or going abroad have become higher than before. Indeed, this phenomenon is also quite common in other universities.

第二段：说明原因段

The following factors can account for the choices of graduates. Above all, with the enrollment extension of universities, college graduates are facing the severe employment situation, which forces them to find another way out. Moreover, in information age, knowledge is updated very rapidly. Many college students find their knowledge is not enough for their future career. Besides, some college students would not like to enter the society and want to escape from the reality temporarily by going to further study.

第三段：总结观点段

From my point of view, one's choice after graduation should be based on his individual condition. Though taking the postgraduate entrance exam or going abroad for further study is a good choice, it is not necessarily true of everyone, because it might involve many factors, such as your future career direction and your economic condition. Therefore, we should take a full account before we make our decisions.

Test 7

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述明星代言这个普遍现象；第二段说明明星代言中存在的问题；第三段谈谈“我”对明星代言现象的看法。

Celebrity Spokesperson

第一段：概述现象段

Nowadays, everyday we can see many celebrity spokespersons promoting a product or a social campaign on TV, Internet or other media. This is an intensely popular trend that we cannot fail to notice.

第二段：说明问题段

There is no doubt that the celebrity spokespeople could boost the sale of a product. However, some celebrities, who lack sense of responsibility and enough knowledge of the product they will speak for, have become the marketing tool of some companies. Besides, some celebrity spokespersons, for economic profits, help the companies exaggerate their products, even those companies producing and selling fake and inferior items. This kind of behavior has produced great negative impacts on consumers and the whole society.

第三段：总结观点段

From my point of view, celebrity spokespersons play a positive role. As is seen, some stars' endorsement of social activities and public campaigns raises public awareness, giving rise to changes in public behavior. However, those irresponsible speaking behaviors should be severely criticized and penalized. The related departments should make detailed rules and regulations on the behavior of speaking.

Test 8

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇道理阐释类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段提出“不劳而无获”的观点，解释其中的道理；第二段举出典型例子论证该观点；第三段重申“不劳而无获”的道理，总结全文。

No pains, No gains

第一段：提出观点段

“No pains, no gains”, as an old proverb, has been generally accepted. It tells us nothing can be gained without painstaking efforts and that no knowledge or skill can be acquired without sweat or toil. The truth of it is deep and profound.

第二段：论证观点段

There are numerous examples supporting this argument. A case in point is the birth of Darwin's theory of evolution. This is close to suggest any great discovery is not the work of a moment but is preceded by years of patient, arduous observation. For another example, Edison invented the electric light after getting through countless trials and experiments. His famous words, “Genius is 99 percent perspiration and 1 percent inspiration.”, just reveals the secret of thousands of successful men and women. Moreover, this proverb is true of our English study. Only through a great deal of practice can we speak fluent English.

第三段：总结观点段

Although it is an old saying, "No pains, no gains" has its profound and realistic significance in our college studies. To acquire knowledge or skills in a particular field, persistent efforts are undoubted required. To conclude, "No pains, no gains." is still totally right today and we should keep it in our minds.

第五周

灵活变换句式，瞄准用词亮点，突破14分

灵活变换长句短句、主动被动、强调、倒装等各类句式，巧妙运用限定词语、动态名词、抽象名词等亮点词语，谙熟并牢记100个六级写作闪光句式和用词，可为您的作文锦上添花，在考试中博得高分。

星期一　把握组句技巧和用词原则

一篇文章除了要有合理的组织结构以外，更重要的是要有合理、多变的句式和规范、准确的用词。遣词造句能力是体现学生语言功底的基本技能，是考生写出高质量文章的保证。

一、组句技巧

1 句子应紧凑连贯

句子中各成分之间要衔接紧密、连贯并富有条理。我们可以通过关联词语引导从句或并列句来体现句子的内部关系，也可适当使用分词结构和一些独立的短语或是插入语成分来代替从句。此外，句子之间还要注意指代、时态、语态、人称和数等方面的连贯和一致。

如： 原句：Teenagers are pressured by school work and they are also encouraged by their peers, and under these, they resort to smoking, and sometimes they feel a little guilty.

优化：**Pressured** by school work **and encouraged** by their peers, teenagers often resort to smoking, **though** they feel a little guilty sometimes.（优化后的句子结构紧凑、意思连贯）

原句：The following ways can be adopted to improve **our** study efficiency.

First, you should make a detailed study plan.

优化：The following ways can be adopted to improve **our** study efficiency. First, **we** should make a detailed study plan.（改成 we 后与前面的 our 在人称上保持一致）

2 句式应有变化

一篇文章要使人觉得内容丰富、语言生动，就应该重视句式的变化，如主动句和被动句搭配使用、适当穿插倒装句和强调句等特殊句式。另外，不要一味地使用常见的“主语＋谓语”的开头方式，可以适当搭配以分词、副词等开头的句式。

如： 原句：They say that people obtain most of their knowledge through reading extensively.

优化：They say that **it is** through reading extensively **that** people obtain most of their knowledge.（优化成强调句）

原句：The competition is becoming increasingly fierce, so it is more difficult to find a job than before.

优化：**With the competition becoming increasingly fierce**, it is more difficult to find a job than before.（介词短语开头）

3 句子表达要简洁

造句时，要注意避免赘言重复。只要意思表达清楚，多余的词语就没有必要了。有时有的考生纯粹为了凑字数，加上了一些不必要的成分，导致语义含混不清、啰唆冗长。

如： 原句：I think *Gone with the Wind* is one of those good films which I enjoyed watching very much.

优化：*Gone with the Wind* is a film I enjoyed very much. /I enjoyed the film *Gone with the Wind* very much.（将多余的成分去掉后，句子表达更加简洁）

4 长短句要结合

在写作中，一味地采用长句或短句都是不可取的，要将简单句和带有衔接词的复杂句交替使用，这样才能够使文章句式丰富，富有节奏感。

5 少用问句，尽量不用感叹句和祈使句

有些考生喜欢开篇问一连串的问题，想以此引起阅卷老师的注意。一般来讲，一篇作文中可以偶尔出现一两个问句，太多则会适得其反。

感叹句和祈使句多用于口语之中，不太适宜在六级的书面写作中出现。尽管在抒发感情和发出呼吁时也可以使用，但多数考生对这两种句式的把握能力不够，因此建议考生尽量不要使用。

二、用词原则

1 用词要简洁

能一个词表达清楚的意思，就不要加上多余的成分，另外还要注意不要造成意义上的重复累赘。

如：原句：What you have done is **illegal under the law**.

优化：What you have done is **illegal**.

2 用词要多样

注意不要一味地重复使用某个词汇，可适当转换成同义词或短语。也不要一味地使用同一种词性，要学会使用不同的词性。

如：原句：This can definitely **make them work more enthusiastically**.

优化：This can definitely **stimulate their working enthusiasm**.

3 多用朴素、易懂的词

对考生来说，生僻或华丽的辞藻驾驭起来比较难，很容易使用不当，很多时候不但不能给文章增色，反而可能会使阅卷老师困惑，起到负面作用。因此，建议考生在写作时尽量选用自己熟悉的词语。

如：原句：Parents in China always have **altercations** about their children's education.

优化：Parents in China always have **quarrels** about their children's education.

4 多用具体的词

如果词的概括性太强，往往让人觉得抽象、笼统，会给人模糊不清的感觉，

词义比较具体的词会使表达更加准确和生动。

如： 原句：Some people like to **read the newspaper very quickly** and try to find some interesting stories.

优化：Some people like to **flip through the newspaper** and try to find some interesting stories.

5 注意使用限定词

在写作时适当使用限定词来修饰可以使论述更加客观、适度，避免观点的绝对化。

如： **In general**, young people seem more prone to job-hopping.

Nowadays the increasingly severe employment situation is **perhaps** the biggest challenge facing college students.

三、典型真题词句点评

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Reading Selectively or Extensively?** You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 有人认为读书要有选择。
2. 有人认为应当博览群书。
3. 你的看法。

范文	点评
(1) When it comes to reading way, there is no complete agreement among people. (2①) Some people (3①) take it for granted that reading should be selective. (2②) However, others (3②) maintain that it (4①) does more good to read extensively. (5①) Those people who hold the first opinion (3③) believe reading selectively	**句式上：** 本文长短句搭配合理，句式富于变化，句子之间和句子内部紧凑连贯，句子表达简洁明快。 **用词上：** 本文用词简洁具体，富于变化，词性多样，体现出较强的语言驾驭能力。 (1) 用于引出有争议的话题时常用的句式。 (2) 用于提出两种对立观点时常用的句式。

can save much time and (6) enable them to have enough time to (7) digest (8) what they have read. (9①) In addition, they (3④) insist that books of low quality (10①) may (4②) do harm to the youths (11①) who lack enough ability to tell the true from the false. (5②) However, still others think differently. (3⑤) In their opinions, students cannot get a general view about the world (12) without extensive reading. (9②) Besides, extensive reading can (13) extend their range of knowledge and broaden their vision. (14) Weighing up these two arguments, I prefer the former one. (9③) For one thing, (15) as a college student, we should choose those books (16) suitable to our reading level. (9④) For another, without selection, our reading (10②) may become (17) aimless and blind, (11②) which will be (18) less efficient. (19) Considering these, we (10③) may reasonably conclude that college students should read selectively.	(3) 用不同的词表示“认为”，用词富于变化。 (4) 前者意为“有好处”，后者意为“有害处”。 (5) 用于引出每一种观点的理由。 (6) 意为“使……能够”。 (7) 意为“消化”，用词形象生动。 (8) what 引导宾语从句。 (9) 列举时常用的衔接词语，使文章条理清晰。 (10) 使用限定词，使表达更加客观。 (11) 注意定语从句的运用。 (12) 介词短语“without…”相当于条件从句。 (13) 意为“拓宽知识面和拓展视野”。 (14) 用于表明个人倾向，动名词短语开头。 (15) 介词短语开头，句式富于变化。 (16) 形容词短语做后置定语。 (17) 形容词使用恰当。 (18) 比较级使用恰当。 (19) 用于得出结论，动名词短语开头。

四、每日佳作赏析

Directions: In this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Say No to Pirated Products**. You should write at least 150 words following the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 目前盗版的现象比较严重。
2. 造成这种现象的原因及危害。
3. 我们应该怎么做？

范文	点评
Nowadays piracy（1）is becoming more and more of a problem in China. Almost any product,（2）such as tape, CD and hi-tech device, can be copied.（3）Shortly after a（4）newly-developed product is put on the market, people will（5）unsurprisingly find its pirated（6）counterparts in stores. （7①）It should be paid attention to that piracy causing great harm.（8①）On the one hand, pirated products often sell well（9①）due to their（10）unbeatable advantage in price（11）in spite of their relatively poor quality, and the original ones,（12）on the contrary, sell poorly.（8②）On the other hand, pirated products may also（13）have negative impacts on customers（14）since those legitimate producers' enthusiasm（7②）may be greatly hurt（9②）as a result of money loss.（8③）Therefore,（15）it is high time that we took measures to solve the problem（16）as soon as possible. （8④）First of all, stricter laws and regulations should be（17）issued to punish piracy behaviors.（8⑤）Moreover,（18）as customers, we should（19）develop our consciousness to resist pirated products.（20）Only in this way can this problem be solved radically.	（1）引出问题时常用的句式。 （2）插入语，表示列举。 （3）意为“……之后不久”。 （4）复合形容词，意为“新开发的”。 （5）副词使用恰当，意为“毫不令人惊奇地”。 （6）意为“相似之物”。 （7）被动语态使用恰当。 （8）衔接词语使文章条理清晰、意思连贯。 （9）表示原因的不同短语。 （10）意为“无可比拟的价格优势”。 （11）意为“尽管”。 （12）插入语，意为“相反”。 （13）意为“对……有负面影响”。 （14）since 引导原因状语从句。 （15）引出解决办法时常用的句式，意为“该是……的时候了”。 （16）意为“尽可能快”。 （17）意为“发布，颁布”。 （18）介词短语开头。 （19）意为“培养我们……的意识”。 （20）“only＋状语”位于句首，引起倒装。

星期二　如何合理搭配长短句

在实际写作中，一味地采用长句或短句都是不可取的，长短句应交替使用。英语的句子主要可分为简单句、并列句和复合句三种。一般来说，写作中是以简单句为基础，配以适当的并列句和复合句。简单句也可长可短，一般会加些附属成分，如分词短语、不定式短语、介词短语和副词短语等。

一、长句的用法

长句含有许多修饰语，适合表达准确而复杂的思想，解释观点或理论，描写细致的事物。写作时，要注意前后句子之间是否存在联系，善于发现简单句之间的关联，用恰当的连接词将简单句连接起来，组成准确地道的复杂长句，增加文章的气势。

如：原句：Lies do harm to those who are being told. Lies also do harm to those who tell them.

优化：Lies **not only** do harm to those who are being told, **but also** do harm to those who tell them.

原句：Natural resources are very limited. They will be exhausted in the near future. It is not true. But it becomes a major concern around the world. This is a widely accepted fact.

优化：**It is widely accepted fact that** there is a major concern around the world **for the exhaustion** of limited natural resources in the near future, **though** it is unlikely to be true.

二、短句的用法

长句固然能表达出复杂而缜密的思想，但如果片面追求复杂句式，华而不实，反而成为表达的累赘。因此，写作中句子的长短应根据表达的需要，有话则长，无话则短。

短句比较简洁、明快、有力，适合陈述重要的事实或想法。短句不仅指句子长度较短，也指句子内部结构精炼。

如：原句：Many automobile parts that are made of plastics and other synthetic

materials do not last long.

优化：Many automobile parts **made of** plastics and other synthetic materials do not last long.

原句：He didn't have enough experience, which is the reason why he didn't do the work well.

优化：He didn't do the work well **for lack of experience**.

三、长短句变换练习

要求：将下列长句或短句进行优化改写，使其更符合表达需求。

1. If students who wish to have overseas academic experience have got the chances and financial resources, they should seize the opportunity to go abroad and broaden their vision, while if conditions don't permit them to go abroad, they can pursue their studies at top universities in our country.
2. China's seven-day Labor Day and the National Day holidays now is entering their seventh. The possibility of cancelling the holidays, usually called "Golden Week", has become a widely discussed topic.
3. They argue that "Golden Week" is very effective. It introduces the idea of vacation travel to Chinese.
4. Firstly, a lot of visitors swarm into scenic spots suddenly. It will bring environmental stress.
5. The meaning of his statement is that he is of the opinion that the death penalty should be allowed.
6. Thirdly, after "Golden Week", the number of tourists declines greatly. It results in the serious imbalance in travel industry. It does not really boost travel industry in a long run.
7. We need more flexible holidays. Thus we can satisfy the traveling desire of Chinese people. At the same time, we can avoid huge consumption imbalance between the "Golden Week" and usual times.
8. People who choose to further their studies abroad insist that if they go to study overseas they can get many benefits in different ways.
9. The place where they study is not very important for them, and instead, it is what they can learn that is the most important.
10. Second, if they complete part or all of their education overseas, they can gain a broader or different perspective on their field of study.

参考答案

1. If students who wish to have overseas academic experience have got the chances and financial resources, they should seize the opportunity to go abroad and broaden their vision. **On the other hand**, if conditions don't permit, they can pursue their studies at top universities in our country.
2. **With** China's seven-day Labor Day and the National Day holidays now **entering** their seventh, the possibility of cancelling the holidays, usually called "Golden Week" has become a widely discussed topic.
3. They argue that "Golden Week" **is very effective in introducing** the idea of vacation travel to Chinese.
4. Firstly, **the sudden swarming** of visitors will bring environmental stress on scenic spots.
5. **He thinks that** the death penalty should be allowed.
6. Thirdly, after "Golden Week", the number of tourists declines greatly, **which** results in the serious imbalance in travel industry **instead of** really boosting travel industry in a long run.
7. We need more flexible holidays **to satisfy** the traveling desire of Chinese people **and avoid** huge consumption imbalance between the "Golden Week" and usual times.
8. People who choose to further their studies abroad insist that **overseas study can benefit them in different ways**.
9. **What counts is not** the place where they study, **but** what they can learn. / **It is not** the place where they study **but** what they can learn **that counts.**
10. Second, **completing part or all of their education overseas helps them gain** a broader or different perspective on their field of study.

四、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Your Attitude Towards Criticism.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 每个人都可能会受到别人的批评。
2. 不同的人对待批评的态度是不同的。
3. 你怎么看待别人对你的批评？

范文	点评
Every one of us may be criticized by others in our life. (1) For example, (2①) workers who fail to accomplish their tasks may be criticized by their employer; (2②) students who have poor performance in exams may be criticized by their teachers and parents. (3) However, attitudes towards criticism (4) differ from person to person. (5①) Some people will become annoyed, and will try to defend themselves (6) by all means. (5②) Some people may (7) be indifferent to criticism. They just regard criticism as nonsense. (5③) But other people accept criticism modestly and find their shortcomings from others' criticism, (8) who (9) tend to (10) stand a good chance of success. As for me, I welcome others' criticism. I have always believed that old Chinese saying (11) "Good medicine that tastes bitter will help one's illness". In my opinion, (12) though criticism will make us unhappy, it can help us know our shortcomings and inadequacy. Therefore, we should (13) place more emphasis on others' criticism, (14) instead of being annoyed with or (15) turn a deaf ear to it.	(1) 举例说明。 (2) 排比句，结构相同，增加气势。 (3) 转折引出对批评的不同态度，使上下文过渡自然，衔接紧密。 (4) 意为"各人不同"。 (5) 列举了不同人的不同态度。 (6) 意为"尽一切办法，务必"。 (7) 意为"无动于衷，漠不关心"。 (8) who引导非限制性定语从句。 (9) 意为"易于……，有……倾向"。 (10) 意为"很有可能，大有机会"。 (11) 引用谚语"良药苦口利于病"。 (12) though引导让步状语从句。 (13) 意为"更加强调或重视"。 (14) 意为"而不是"。 (15) 意为"充耳不闻，置之不理"。

星期三　如何制造亮点句式

一篇文章如果反复使用同一句式，就会显得单调无味、毫无生气，因此写作时一定要注意句式变换。今天我们的任务就是学会如何制造亮点句式，把作文变得丰富多彩、充满生气。

一、倒装句和强调句

1 什么是倒装句

句子成分在句子中都有一定的位置，但有时为了修饰原因，可以把某些句子成分前后倒置，以达到突出强调的作用。英语中倒装主要有两种：全部倒装和部分倒装。

（1）全部倒装是指主语和谓语完全倒置，常用于记叙或描写。

（2）部分倒装是指只将助动词提到主语前面，而主要动词仍然保留在原来的位置上，常用于议论或说明。

如：原句：By reading widely, he can really make remarkable achievements in his study.

优化：**Only by reading widely can he** really make remarkable achievements in his study.

2 什么是强调句

写作中，常使用强调句来达到突出重点的目的。强调句的基本结构是：It is（was）+被强调的部分+that（who）+句子其他成分。

如：原句：Not how much you read but what you read really matters.

优化：**It is** not how much you read but what you read **that** really matters.

二、含有插入语的句子

插入语是一种独立成分，通常与句中其他成分没有语法上的关系，将它删掉之后，句子结构仍然完整。插入语大都是对一句话进行附加说明或解释，通常由一个词、一个短语或一个句子构成，常置于句首、句中或句末，一般用逗号或破折号与句子隔开。插入语有时表达说话者的态度和看法，有时起强调的

作用，有时是为了引起对方的注意，有时起转移话题或说明事由的作用，有时还可以承上启下，使句子衔接得更紧密。

写作中常用到的插入语包括：

副词和副词短语：indeed（的确），surely（无疑），however（然而），frankly（坦率地说），obviously（显然），naturally（天然地），luckily/happily for sb.（算某人幸运），fortunately（幸好），strangely（奇怪地），briefly（简单地说），personally（依个人之见）。

形容词或形容词短语：true（真的），funny（可笑的），needless to say（不用说），most important of all（最为重要），worse still（更糟糕的），even better（更好）。

介词短语：in conclusion（总之），in a word（简而言之），in short/in brief（简而言之），in general（一般说来），in a sense（在某种意义上），in one's view（在某人看来），in one's opinion（按照某人的看法），in fact（事实上），at first（首先），in addition（此外），of course（当然），to one's surprise（使某人惊奇的是），to one's regret（使某人遗憾的是），for example（例如），on the contrary（相反），in other words（换句话说），on the other hand（另一方面）。

分词短语：strictly speaking（严格地说），generally considering（一般认为），considering/taking… into consideration（考虑到，鉴于），judging from（根据……判断）。

不定式短语：to be sure（无疑），to sum up（概括地说），to tell the truth（说实话），to be frank/to be honest（说实在的，老实地说），to make matters worse（更糟的是），to start with/to begin with（首先，第一）。

简短的句子：I am sure（我可以肯定地说），I believe/think（我相信），do you know（你知道吗），you see（你明白），I'm afraid（恐怕），it is said（据说），I suppose（我想），what's more（而且），what's worse（更糟糕的是），that is to say（也就是说），what is important（重要的是）。

如：原句：I think that computer games can also do some good to young people.

优化：Computer games, **in my opinion**, can also do some good to young people.

原句：The above-mentioned show that it is no doubt that college students should often attend sports activities.

优化：**Considering the above-mentioned**, it is no doubt that college students should often attend sports activities.

三、含有平行结构的句子

平行结构指的是将结构相同或相似、意义并重、语气一致的语言成分并行

排列的一种修辞手法。这种结构层次清晰、语意顺畅，能够起到加强语气、增强表达效果的作用。

如：原句：This phenomenon, in my opinion, has upgraded the quality of people's life. And it has also improved the value of consumption of our modern society.

优化：This phenomenon, in my opinion, has **not only** upgraded the quality of people's life **but also** improved the value of consumption of our modern society.

原句：Many people get up early to jog along country lanes, or in order to observe the wonder of nature. And some also just watch the sun rise.

优化：Many people get up early **to jog** along country lanes, **to observe** the wonder of nature, **or just to watch** the sun rise.

四、含有非谓语动词的句子

非谓语动词包括：动词不定式、动名词、现在分词和过去分词。使用非谓语动词可以用较少的词表达同等甚至更加丰富的信息，使句子结构紧凑、逻辑严谨。

如：原句：It must be realized that people should be cautious when they decide which books they should choose to read since if they read bad books, it will be time-wasting and harmful.

优化：It must be realized that people should be cautious **when deciding which books to read** since **reading bad books** is time-wasting and harmful.

如：原句：Because one of my parents is laid off, my family can't possibly afford all my expenses at college.

优化：**With one of my parents being laid off**, my family can't possibly afford all my expenses at college.

五、含有谚语格言的句子

如果能在作文中恰当地引用一两句谚语格言，将会增加作文的表现力，展示出作者的语言功底，有助于获得阅卷老师的青睐。但需要注意的是，不要引用过于生僻或自己不太熟悉的谚语格言，否则引用不当，反而会适得其反。另外，谚语格言并不是越多越好，一般来说，一篇作文引用一句就可以了，最多不要超过两句。

如：原句：Doing part-time jobs has its disadvantages.

优化：**Every coin has two sides**. So does doing part-time jobs.

原句：Last but not the least, you need an intense interest in learning English.

优化：Last but not the least, you need an intense interest in learning English since "**Interest is the best teacher**".

六、亮点句式改写练习

1. Humor can help us ease tension, and also can overcome our frustration. In addition, dissolving countless irritations is the function of humor.（改写句子使其包含平行结构）
2. When I look into the future, I will try my best to serve my fellow students if I am lucky enough to be President of the Student Union.（用非谓语动词改写时间状语从句）
3. Whether a piece of work is hard or not, it requires patience and firmness for completion.（改写句子使其包含插入语）
4. In this way public property can be well preserved and put into better use.（将句子改写成倒装句）
5. We should not throw a burning match or cigarette butts into a wastebasket. And placing a lighted candle near curtains is also foolish. Moreover, we should not fail to extinguish a flaming fire.（改写句子使其包含平行结构）
6. It must be realized that people should be cautious when they decide which books they should choose to read since if they read bad books, it will be time-wasting and harmful.（用非谓语动词改写从句部分）
7. Fake commodities not only can disturb the normal marketing order, but also may threaten people's health and lives.（将句子改写成倒装句）
8. If either of them can be a little more tolerant, I think that this quarrel can be avoided easily.（改写句子使其包含插入语）
9. We have grown so old because the birthrate fell earlier in Western and Northwestern Europe than elsewhere, rather than because of any change in the death rate.（将句子改写成强调句）
10. I wish all of you to enjoy yourselves during this trip.（用古语"有朋自远方来，不亦乐乎"改写）
11. Some big factories which are armed with advanced machines and technology may neglect to reuse the large quantity of waste matter that is produced in the manufacturing process.（用非谓语动词改写定语从句）

12. Time is so precious that we can't afford to waste it.（将句子改写成倒装句）
13. Her talent but not her look really works in her career development.（将句子改写成强调句）
14. Millions of people have been killed by these disasters. They also destroyed countless homes, wiping out numerous pieces of fertile land.（改写句子使其包含平行结构）

参考答案

1. Humor can help us **ease** our tension, **overcome** our frustration **and dissolve** our countless irritations.
2. **Looking into the future**, I will try my best to serve my fellow students if I am lucky enough to be President of the Student Union.
3. A piece of work, **whether hard or not**, requires patience and firmness for completion.
4. **Only in this way can public property** be well preserved and put into better use.
5. **Throwing** a burning match or cigarette butts into a wastebasket, **placing** a lighted candle near curtains, **or failing** to extinguish a flaming fire is a foolish thing to do.
6. It must be realized that people should be cautious **when deciding which books to read** since **reading bad books** is time-wasting and harmful.
7. **Not only** can the fake commodities disturb the normal marketing order, **but also** may threaten people's health and lives.
8. If either of them can be a little more tolerant, this quarrel, **I think**, can be avoided easily.
9. **It is** because the birthrate fell earlier in Western and Northwestern Europe than elsewhere, rather than because of any change in the death rate, **that** we have grown so old.
10. **Just as the old saying goes**, "**It is such a delight to have friends coming from afar!**" I wish all of you to enjoy yourselves during this trip.
11. Some big factories, **armed with advanced machines and technology**, may neglect to reuse the large quantity of waste matter **produced** in the manufacturing process.
12. **So precious is time** that we can't afford to waste it.
13. **It is** her talent but not her look **that** really works in her career development.
14. These disasters have **killed** millions upon millions of people, **destroyed** countless homes, **and wiped out** numerous pieces of fertile land.

七、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Making All Decisions for Children.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 很多家长习惯于替孩子作决定，如选择学校，选择工作等。
2. 分析这种现象给孩子带来的影响。
3. 你的看法是……

范文	点评
In modern society, traditional patriarchy is still influencing Chinese parents. They (1) tend to make almost all decisions for their children, (2①) from (3①) choosing schools (2②) to (3②) picking up a profession, (2③) and to deciding whom they are to marry. (2④) Sometimes even many detailed things (4) such as clothing and diets have to be decided by parents. (5) However, deciding everything for children does (6①) not help them (6②) but harm them in many ways. (7①) On the one hand, it will make children lack independence and initiative, (8) which (9) is unfavorable to their development (10) in the long run. (7②) On the other hand, in many cases, parents' decisions for their children are not always (11) in accordance with their children's personal ideas and interest. It will make children form resistance and naturally influence their growth. (12) From my point of view, (13①) it is unwise for parents to make every decision for their children. (13②) It is obvious that parents cannot accompany their children all the time. Growing to be independent is the natural way for everybody. Therefore, in my opinion, parents should give their children rights to make their own decisions. They can help their children (14) but not replace them to make choices.	(1) 意为“易于……，有……倾向”。 (2) 针对 all decisions 作进一步说明，富有层次感。 (3) 都表示“选择”，用词富于变化。 (4) 表示列举。 (5) 转折引出下文，使上下文过渡自然、衔接紧密。 (6) 意为“不是……而是”，用于连接并列成分。 (7) 意为“一方面，……。另一方面，……”。 (8) which引导非限制性定语从句。 (9) 意为“不利于”。 (10) 意为“从长远来看”。 (11) 意为“与……一致”。 (12) 用于引出个人观点。 (13) it充当形式主语。 (14) 意为“而不是，而不要”。

星期四　如何制造亮点词语

一篇文章要想吸引阅卷老师的眼球，给人眼前一亮的感觉，没有地道准确的用词是不行的。今天我们的任务就是学会如何让自己的遣词更形象、更生动，使自己的作文亮起来、眩起来。

一、选用具体的词

和具有一般含义的词汇相比，具体词汇能够使语言表达更加准确、形象和生动。比如，good food 和 tasty / delicious / fresh food 相比，显然，后面的具体词汇更富有表现力。

但是，受汉语表达习惯的影响，很少有考生能用具体的词汇表达复杂的概念。这就暴露出考生对语言的驾驭能力不够。因此，考生在进行写作训练时，要有意识地选用比较具体的词汇，增强语言的表现力，为文章增加亮点。

如：原句：No one **saw** the bank being broken into.

优化：No one **witnessed** the bank being broken into.

原句：Sometimes women are still **made unable to have** equal rights in modern society.

优化：Sometimes women are still **denied** equal rights in modern society.

二、恰当使用限定词

限定词的使用能使论述更加客观、适度，避免观点的绝对化，提高说服力和可信度。

英语写作中常见的限定词有：may，maybe，perhaps，probably，mainly，generally，commonly，personally，comparatively，typically，usually，sometimes，often，most，mostly，nearly，almost，not necessarily，in general，at least，at most，may as well，if possible，had better，to some extent，to some degree，more often than not，for the most part 等。

如：原句：I don't agree with the first argument.

优化：I don't agree with the first argument **to some extent**.

原句：The first appearance will determine the applicant's fate.

优化：The first appearance **more often than not** will determine the applicant's

fate.

三、注意区分近义词

由于英语词义范畴非常广泛，即便是近义词或同义词也只是某种程度上的近似，不可能在意义上完全对等。这就需要考生在选词时斟酌其含义的微妙差别，辨析同义词在具体语境中的不同用法。

如： 原句：So there arises the **problem**: Will electronic books replace traditional books?（指“实际存在的问题”或“需要解决的现实问题”，不符合此处语境）

优化：So there arises the **question**: Will electronic books replace traditional books?（指“可获得解释或回答的问题”）

原句：After a good dinner together, all the guests relaxed and became quite **careless**.（指“漫不经心的，粗心的”，不符合语境）

优化：After a good dinner together, all the guests relaxed and became quite **familiar**.（指“随便的，熟悉的”）

四、学会使用动态动词

动态动词往往比 be，there be，make，need 等静态动词更有活力，可以达到更好的写作效果。

如： 原句：Please try our best to help this girl, help her to pass the most difficult period in life, and **make** her financial burden **less and less**.

优化：Please try our best to help this girl, help her to pass the most difficult period in life, and **relieve** her financial burden.

原句：Each day, we can see **there are** a lot of foods in the garbage cans.

优化：Each day, we can see many students **dump** foods in the garbage cans.

五、学会活用不同的词性

很多考生受汉语思维的影响，经常完全依据汉语的词性对译英文，导致造出来的句子十分生硬和死板。因此，考生在平时训练时一定要注意摆脱汉语思维的束缚，学会根据具体的语境活用不同的词类，这样才能写出地道生动的句子。

如： 原句：After we have **observed** them **carefully** and **analyzed** them **critically**, we may identify the conceptions that will actually contribute to the social

development.

优化：Through **careful observation and critical analysis**, we may identify the conceptions that will actually contribute to the social development.

原句：Environmental pollution will make it **impossible** for human beings to survive on the earth.

优化：Environmental pollution will deprive human beings of the **possibilities** to survive on the earth.

六、学会使用介词短语

英语中有很多介词短语都具有动词的特征，适合表达抽象的含义。学会活用这些介词短语不但可以丰富文章的用词，而且能够增强文章的表现力。另外，我们经常可以用介词短语代替从句，从而使语言表达更加简洁有力。

如：原句：His family obviously **cannot afford** the big sum of money for such an operation obviously.

优化：The big sum of money for such an operation is obviously **beyond what his family can afford**.

原句：Pirated products often cost much less than the original ones, so they enjoy unbeatable advantage in price **though their quality is relatively poor**.

优化：Pirated products often cost much less than the original ones, so they enjoy unbeatable advantage in price **despite their relatively poor quality.**

七、亮点词语改写练习

1. I'd like to make every effort to **let more people know** the idea that waste is disgraceful, and call on all my schoolmates to fight against waste. （用更动态的动词改写）
2. I'm sure you will soon find a **good** candidate for the position in that a few people are more suitable for it than I. （用更具体的词替换）
3. People **who are good at dealing with** social relations admit their mistakes, and take their share of blame. （用介词短语改写）
4. That capital punishment being **abolished** will benefit the harmony of the society. （用不同的词性改写）
5. If students develop the habit of waste, it will undoubtedly **become a heavy burden on** their parents. （用更动态的动词改写）

6. Above all, it teaches us that we shouldn't **have a strong wish to get** quick results.（用更具体的短语替换）
7. We shall only follow those conceptions that will **contribute** to the social development.（用不同的词性改写）
8. Opponents say capital punishment does not **effect** murder rates, but only **arouses** unhealthy interest in executions.（用恰当的近义词替换）
9. **If we combine all people's knowledge**, we can bring out a better solution as soon as possible.（用介词短语改写）
10. However, though celebrities are glamorous, they lead very stressful lives.（加上限定词，使表达更加客观）
11. Nuclear proliferation is always the top **problem** the participants have to discuss at this kind of meeting.（用恰当的近义词替换）
12. For one thing, celebrities don't **own** the privacy an ordinary person has.（用更具体的词替换）
13. College students cannot strike a balance between study and their part-time jobs.（加上限定词，使表达更加客观）
14. The team can be helpful with my questions and problems, thus **making my work efficiency become higher**.（用更动态的动词改写）

参考答案

1. I'd like to make every effort to **publicize** the idea that waste is disgraceful, and call on all my schoolmates to fight against waste.
2. I'm sure you will soon find a **well-qualified** candidate for the position in that a few people are more suitable for it than I.
3. People **with skill in** social relations admit their mistakes, and take their share of blame.
4. The **abolishment** of capital punishment will benefit the harmony of the society.
5. If students develop the habit of waste, it will undoubtedly **burden** their parents **heavily**.
6. Above all, it teaches us that we shouldn't **be over-anxious for** quick results.
7. We shall only follow those **contributive** conceptions to the social development.
8. Opponents say capital punishment does not **affect** murder rates, but only **arouses** unhealthy interest in executions.
9. **With the combination of all people's knowledge**, we can bring out a better solution as soon as possible.
10. However, though **to some extent** celebrities are glamorous, **most of them** lead

very stressful lives.

11. Nuclear proliferation is always the top **issue** the participants have to discuss at this kind of meeting.
12. For one thing, celebrities don't **have** the privacy an ordinary person has.
13. College students, **for the most part**, cannot strike a balance between study and their part-time jobs.
14. The team can be helpful with my questions and problems, thus **increasing my work efficiency**.

八、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Young People Should Have Ideals.** You should write at least 150 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 人，尤其是年轻人应该有理想。
2. 理想对于一个人的意义。
3. 我们应该如何实现自己的理想？

范文	点评
（1）"What are you going to do when you grow up?" When I was a child, people often asked me this question about ideal. （2①）Undoubtedly, every individual, （3）especially a young person, should have an ideal. （4）Hardly can we find any great people with no ideal when they were young. An ideal （5）is of vital importance to one's growth and success. （6①）On the one hand, an ideal is the target of one's life. （7）Once you decide what your ideal is, you know （8）where to go and which way to take. （2②）Otherwise, you might become puzzled in many things in your life. （6②）On the other hand, an ideal is （9）like the engine of vehicles. （10）Only when we have our own ideals, can we find （11）the origin of energy and enthusiasm in life, and become active and perseverant.	（1）疑问句开头，新颖独特，引人注意。 （2）副词或副词短语开头，丰富了句式。 （3）意为"尤其，特别"。 （4）倒装句，否定词前置。 （5）"be of + *n.*"相当于"be + *adj.*"。 （6）意为"一方面，……。另一方面，……"，常用于表示列举。 （7）意为"一旦"。 （8）"疑问词 + 不定式"充当宾语。 （9）比喻使用恰当。 （10）倒装句，"only + 状语"前置。 （11）意为"能量的来源"。

（12）Whatever your ideal is, careful plan and preparation（13）is vital to its final realization.（2③）Of course, the path（14）from where you are to where you want to get is not always smooth and straight. Therefore, an optimistic, positive mind is（15）indispensable in the process of your pursuing your ideal. In a word,（16）only if you have an ideal, can you have the chance of realizing it.	（12）意为“无论什么”，引导让步状语从句。 （13）意为“对……至关重要”。 （14）from… to 连接的两个宾语从句的使用突显语言功底。 （15）意为“不可或缺的”。 （16）意为“只要”。

星期五　100 个闪光词语和 100 个闪光句式

一、100 个闪光词语

1. a/the combination of 合成，组合

   例：It is **the combination of** wit and political analysis that makes his articles so readable.

   他的风趣和政治分析相得益彰，使他的文章脍炙人口。

2. a lifelong career/friendship/wish 一生的事业/友情/愿望

   例：For this type of person, the job is **a lifelong career**.

   对于这些人来说，工作就是一生的事业。

3. accordingly 于是，因此

   例：There aren't many jobs available. **Accordingly**, companies receive hundreds of resumes for every opening.

   公司目前的职位空缺不是很多，因此，每个空缺的职位都会收到成百上千份简历。

4. account for 占据

   例：In addition, the population in the countryside **accounts for** 80% of the population and the stability of the nation depends on them.

   另外，农村人口占据了总人口的80%，而且国家的稳定也取决于这些人。

5. additionally 另外，此外

   例：**Additionally**, physical exercise is an effective way to release pressure.

   此外，体育锻炼是缓解压力的一种有效的方式。

6. address a problem/question/issue 着手解决问题

   例：It is high time we **addressed** the problem of campus waste.

   现在该是我们着手解决校园浪费问题的时候了。

7. alleviate the problem/situation/suffering 缓解问题/形势/苦难

   例：We can almost always do something to **alleviate the situation**.

   我们几乎总是可以做些事情来缓解目前的形势的。

8. along with 除……以外

   例：Tobacco is taxed in most countries, **along with** alcohol.

   除酒之外，烟草在多数国家也都要征税。

9. amazing sight 令人惊讶的景象

   例：It is an **amazing sight** to see many bicyclists on Chang'an Avenue in the

morning head to work.

每天早上，在长安街上可以看到很多人骑着自行车去上班，这是一幅令人惊讶的景象。

10. apply to 适用

例：This saying **applies to** everyday life.

这个谚语适用于日常生活。

11. appropriate 适当的，合适的

例：This new education system is more **appropriate** to the needs of the students.

这种新的教育体系更符合学生的需求。

12. as is the case with 同样的情况

例：Parents are the main source of college funding, **as is the case with** most students.

父母是学生大学学费的主要来源，大多数学生都是这种情况。

13. as we know it 像我们知道的那样

例：If there were no electricity, our world would not be able to operate **as we know it**.

如果没有电，世界就不会是现在的样子。

14. at any cost 无论如何，不惜任何代价

例：Because of the belief that lucky numbers can bring good luck, they will try to obtain lucky numbers for things such as a car license plate **at any cost**.

因为相信幸运数字能带来好运，他们在买车时会不惜一切代价买到有幸运数字的车牌。

15. at sb. 's disposal 任某人处理，供某人使用

例：The library has a large number of reference books **at the students' disposal**.

图书馆有大量的参考书可供同学们使用。

16. attribute sth. to sth. /sb. 把……归因于或归功于某事/某人

例：The fall in the number of deaths from heart disease **is** generally **attributed to** improvements in diet.

心脏病死亡人数的下降被普遍归因于饮食方面的改善。

17. avenue 渠道，办法

例：We explored every possible **avenue**, but still couldn't come up with a solution.

我们寻找每一种可行的渠道，但仍然找不到解决的办法。

18. average person 普通人，一般人

例：Einstein's theory is really too difficult for the **average person** to understand.

爱因斯坦的理论对于普通人来说是很难理解的。

19. be informed of sth. 获悉，得知

例：People are **informed of** products and services by advertisements on TV.
人们通过电视广告了解到了各种产品和服务。

20. be tied to 被束缚着，被牵制着

例：Nowadays many people, especially young people do not like to **be tied to** a steady job.
现在许多人，尤其是年轻人，都不喜欢永远只做一种固定的工作。

21. belongings 所属物，随身物品

例：Please take care of your **belongings** during your travel here as there has been much theft reported.
请在此地游览期间保管好随身物品，据报道这里已经发生好几起盗窃事件了。

22. beyond 超出，越过

例：These expensive luxuries are far **beyond** the reach of ordinary people.
这些昂贵的奢侈品远远超出了普通人的负担能力。

23. broaden one's horizons 拓宽视野，开阔眼界

例：I'd like to work abroad to **broaden my horizons**.
我喜欢在国外工作来开拓我的眼界。

24. by/in contrast to/with 对比之下

例：**In contrast with** their system, ours seems very old-fashioned.
和他们的制度相比，我们的制度显得过于守旧。

25. call for 要求

例：Water shortage affects people's lives and has led to production shortages, all of which **call for** immediate action.
缺水影响了人们的生活和生产，因此我们需要立即采取行动来解决这个问题。

26. cater to 满足，迎合

例：There are magazines **catering to** different tastes and interests such as economics, sports, etc.
有各种杂志可以满足人们在经济、体育等不同方面的品位和兴趣。

27. common practice 司空见惯的事，惯例

例：It is a **common practice** in the US to tip the waiter.
在美国，给服务生小费是很普遍的现象。

28. compatible 和谐的，一致的

例：In my opinion, extensive and selective readings are **compatible** and can become a combination.
我认为广泛性阅读和选择性阅读是不排斥的，可以相互结合。

29. comply with 服从，顺从

例： All the drivers must **comply with** these safety rules.
所有司机都必须遵守这些安全规则。

30. conserve 节约，节省（电、水和能源等）

例： Everyone needs to make efforts to **conserve** water.
每个人都应该尽力节约用水。

31. continuing education 继续教育

例： One of the problems with **continuing education** lies not in learning, but in unlearning.
继续教育的问题之一不在于学习而在于忘却。

32. cut down 削减，减少

例： We must **cut down** our expenses.
我们必须削减开支。

33. despite/in spite of 尽管

例： **Despite** its possible risks, on the whole, the advantages of trying new things outweigh its disadvantages.
尽管可能存在风险，但从整体上来说，尝试新鲜事物的利大于弊。

34. enable… to 使……能够

例： Blog **enables** millions of people **to** have a voice and connect with others.
博客使数百万人能够抒发自己的情感并可以和其他人联系起来。

35. encompass 包含，包括

例： The study **encompasses** the social, political, and economic aspects of the situation.
这项研究包括了社会、政治和经济几个方面的内容。

36. enrich 使丰富

例： Hobbies can **enrich** our lives greatly as long as we are able to manage our time.
只要合理安排时间，业余爱好会大大丰富我们的生活。

37. exposure to 暴露，受到，经历

例： Prolonged **exposure to** the sun can cause skin cancer.
长期暴露在阳光下会导致皮肤癌。

38. fashion/fashionable 时尚/时尚的

例： As a result, sports are becoming popular and even **fashionable**.
因此，运动现在越来越流行，甚至成为一种时尚。

39. fast-paced 快节奏的

例： People today live a **fast-paced** life and are always in a hurry.
如今，人们的生活节奏很快，经常是匆匆忙忙的。

40. finance 供给……经费，负担经费

例：Nowadays many students take part-time jobs to **finance** their education.
现在许多学生做兼职工作来负担自己的学费。

41. focus on 集中精力，把重心放在……

例：Every student should **focus on** good study habits.
每个学生都应该集中精力培养好的学习习惯。

42. fund 提供资金

例：Previously in China, a university education was **funded** by the government.
以前，中国大学生的学费是由国家资助的。

43. have/gain access to/be accessible to 可以到达，可以使用

例：It is seen as an effective means of business communication where relevant staff **have access to** a computer network.
这被看做是一种有效的业务沟通方式，相关的员工都可以通过它使用同一个计算机网络。

44. have a hard time doing 感到为难

例：Many people still **have a hard time** saying "no".
很多人在说"不"的时候感到很为难。

45. hence 因此

例：The cost of transport is a major expense for an industry. **Hence** factory location is an important consideration.
交通成本对于一个产业来说是一项重大的支出，因此工厂选址十分重要。

46. highlight 突出，强调，重点

例：The report **highlighted** the problem of the old man.
该报告强调了老年人问题。

47. hold back 阻止，阻碍

例：Pollution has **held back** seriously the further development of mankind.
污染已经严重地阻碍了人类的进一步发展。

48. impress 使有印象，影响

例：Such research practices based on scientific principles **impressed** me.
这种在科学理论指导下的研究实践给我留下了很深的印象。

49. indeed 的确，其实

例：Dieting has its disadvantages. **Indeed**, it has great negative effects on one's health.
节食有它的弊端。事实上，它对一个人的健康有很大的负面影响。

50. in all walks of life 各个行业，生活的各个方面

例：This is indeed an important question **in all walks of life** and in any country.
这的确是一个各行各业以及任何一个国家都存在的重要问题。

51. in faith 的确

例：He doesn't know the answer **in faith**.
他确实不知道答案。

52. in favor of 支持，赞同

例：Most people are **in favor of** this practice.
大多数人赞同这种做法。

53. in general/generally 一般来说

例：Young people **in general** seem more prone to job-hop.
年轻人一般更容易跳槽。

54. in honor of 纪念，庆祝

例：**In honor of** the upcoming Teacher's Day, we plan a party for our teachers.
为庆祝即将到来的教师节，我们为老师们准备了一场晚会。

55. in the light of 依据，按照

例：Many old people tend to review a new thing **in the light of** past experience.
许多老人往往会依据过去的经验来评判新的事物。

56. in the long run 从长远来看

例：**In the long run**, this plan is not in accordance with our final goal.
从长远来看，这一计划与我们的最终目标不符。

57. in vain 徒劳，白费工夫

例：All our hard work turned out to be **in vain**.
我们所有的努力都白费了。

58. involve in 卷入……中

例：No one would like to **involve in** this matter.
没有人愿意牵扯到这件事中。

59. link 联系

例：However, there has been no medical research directly **linking** smoking to the disease.
然而，没有医学研究证明吸烟会直接导致肺癌。

60. live through 度过，经受住

例：Those that **lived through** the earthquake will cherish today's happy life more.
经历过地震的那些人会更加珍惜今天的幸福生活。

61. make up for 弥补

例：Elective courses can greatly **make up for** the inadequacy of compulsory courses.
选修课能够极大地弥补必修课的不足。

62. meanwhile 同时

例：The incomes of male professionals went up by almost 80%. **Meanwhile**, part-time women workers saw their earnings fall.
男性专业人员的收入上涨了将近80%，与此同时，兼职女性职工的收入却下降了。

63. mistrust 不信任

例：The effect is a general **mistrust** among consumers toward sellers and the free market in general.
这样做一般会导致消费者不信任销售商和自由市场。

64. more often than not 时常，往往

例：In fact, **more often than not**, customers were more interested in the software than the hardware.
事实上，消费者往往对软件比对硬件更感兴趣。

65. mutual 相互的

例：Differences foster **mutual** complementation and mutual support.
差异会促进相互之间的理解和支持。

66. (There is) no doubt 毫无疑问

例：There is **no doubt** that TV has greatly influenced our lives and the way we live.
毫无疑问，电视已经极大地影响了我们的生活和生活方式。

67. occasion 情况，场合，时机

例：As a general rule, people like to help each other, but there are **occasions** when you shouldn't hesitate to say "no".
一般来讲，人与人是应该互相帮助的。但在有些情况下，你还是应该毫不犹豫地说"不"。

68. on account of 由于

例：We delayed our departure **on account of** the bad weather.
由于糟糕的天气我们耽搁了出发。

69. on behalf of 代表，为了

例：**On behalf of** my colleagues and myself I thank you.
我代表我的同事和我本人向你表示感谢。

70. on no account 绝不

例：**On no account** should we follow blindly.
我们绝不应当盲从。

71. on second thought 进一步考虑

例：You should make decisions **on second thoughts**.
你应该进一步考虑后再作决定。

72. on the whole 总体来说

例： **On the whole**, young man agrees study most, least conservative thought.
总的来说，年轻人最爱学习，思想激进。

73. on the contrary 相反

例： I've never opposed it; **on the contrary**, I've always supported it.
我从未反对它，相反，我一直支持它。

74. out of reach 够不着的，负担不起的

例： Those who are not fond of traveling consider it costly and **out of reach** for the average person.
那些不喜欢旅游的人认为旅游费用高，一般人负担不起。

75. outweigh 超过，胜过，优于

例： The advantages far **outweigh** the disadvantages in this case.
在这件事上，利远大于弊。

76. overwhelm/overwhelming 淹没，压倒/势不可挡的，压倒性的

例： There is **overwhelming** evidence that smoking damages your health.
有大量的证据显示吸烟有害健康。

77. particulars 细节

例： For further **particulars**, contact the office.
详情请联系办事处。

78. pastime 消遣，娱乐

例： Reading novels is a favorite **pastime** because of the vivid descriptions and plots.
读小说是打发时光的好办法，因为小说里的描写和故事情节很生动。

79. perform/performance 表现

例： Good study habits are essential if one wants to **perform** well.
要想学习好，就要养成良好的学习习惯。

80. prevalence 流行

例： The **prevalence** of fake commodities is a problem in our society.
假货充斥市场已经成为社会的一个问题。

81. prevail 流行，盛行

例： Good will **prevail** over evil.
善良将战胜邪恶。

82. pros and cons 正反两方面

例： Weighing up the **pros and cons**, I am inclined to the latter opinion.
权衡利弊，我倾向于后一种观点。

83. prospect 前途，前景

例：Nowadays job **prospects** for college students don't look good.
现在大学毕业生的就业前景不好。

84. provided 假设

例：Some believe it is a waste of time to sit for the CET-6 because they have already passed the CET-4, which entitles them to graduate with a degree **provided** other requirements are met.
有些学生认为考英语六级是浪费时间，因为如果其他考试都合格了，只有通过了英语四级，学校才会允许他们毕业并授予学位。

85. raise the money（raise money）筹款

例：There are several possible ways to **raise the money** to pay for fees and tuition.
有很多种方式可以筹款交学杂费。

86. rather than 而不是，不愿

例：It is one's ability **rather than** the luck that plays a crucial role in his success.
在一个人的成功中起决定性作用的是能力，不是运气。

87. regardless of 不管，不顾

例：Some students buy whatever they like **regardless of t**he price.
一些学生想买什么就买什么，根本不考虑价格。

88. remain 保持，仍旧是

例：However, living standards and health conditions of people in developing countries **remain** unsatisfactory.
然而，发展中国家人民的生活水平和健康状况仍然不能让人满意。

89. stand out 突出，显眼

例：Her work **stands out** from the rest as easily the best.
她的工作成绩远比其他人的好。

90. set forth 宣布，提出

例：He **set forth** their aim in a speech.
他在一次演说中提出了他们的目标。

91. set out to 准备

例：Many graduating students **set out to** change the society around them, but ended up being changed by it.
许多即将毕业的学生都试图改变社会，但最终却被社会改变了。

92. strain 加大难度，增加困难

例：Industrial development requires a large amount of water, which further **strains** this precious resource.
工业的发展需要大量的水，这就进一步加重了缺水现象。

93. the reason behind 真正的原因，背后的原因，潜在的原因

例： This is **the reason behind** the recent rise in prices.

这就是最近物价上涨的真正原因。

94. the reverse 反过来

例： **The reverse** is actually the case.

事实刚好相反。

95. illustrate 说明

例： Here's another example to **illustrate** my point.

另一个例子可以说明我的观点。

96. to summarize（in summary）总之

例： **To summarize**, personal preference determines if one lives in city or countryside.

总之，住在城市还是乡村由个人喜好决定。

97. undermine 破坏，危害

例： Constant criticism will **undermine** one's confidence.

经常挨批评会摧毁一个人的自信。

98. vary from 不同

例： Hobbies **vary from** person to person based on educational backgrounds, income levels and interests.

由于教育背景、收入水平和兴趣的不同，人们的爱好也各异。

99. well-rounded 全面的，多才多艺的

例： We encourage the kids to be **well-rounded**.

我们鼓励孩子全面发展。

100. widen/enrich one's knowledge 扩大知识面

例： Travel allows people to learn about different cultures and **widen their knowledge**.

旅游可以让人们了解不同的文化，扩大知识面。

二、100 个闪光句式

1. As can be indicated/is revealed/is showed in the table/graph/chart, /According to the figures given in the table, /As the survey results show, /This chart shows that /It can be seen from the statistics that…

   正如图表中显示的/根据表格中给出的数据/正如调查结果显示/如图所示/从数据中我们可以看出，……。

2. From… to…, there is a slight/slow/steady/rapid/dramatic/abrupt rise/increase in

…

从……到……，在……方面有了轻微/缓慢/稳定/快速/显著/急剧的增长/增加。

3. During …/… later, the demand/income/price/production of … has declined/decreased/fallen/dropped rapidly/abruptly/markedly/sharply (from… to…)
在……期间/……时间以后，……的需求/收入/价格/产量已经（从……）急剧地下降（到……）。

4. The figure has nearly doubled/tripled, as against that of last year.
这个数字几乎上涨到去年的两倍/三倍。

5. The number is …times as much as that of…
数量是……的……倍。

6. By comparison with …, it increased/decreased/fell from … to…
与……相比，它从……增加/下降到……

7. According to the figures given in the table, the number of … has risen/declined dramatically in the past few years.
正如图表所示，近年来……的数量有了显著的增加/下降。

8. From the chart we can see clearly that the number of… has increased/decreased from… to…, and then to…
从图中我们可以清楚地看到，……的数量已经从……上升/下降到……，之后又（上升/下降）到……

9. An increasing number of… would rather… than…
越来越多的……宁愿……而不愿……

10. During the period between… and…, the percentage/number of… declined from… to…, while the percentage/number of… rose from… to…
在……期间，……的百分比/数量从……下降到……，而……的百分比/数量却从……上升到……

11. This table provides several important points of comparison between…
表格中显示了几个重要的对比点：……

12. There are some/two/many good reasons for … /to do…
有一些/两点/许多理由……

13. One of the main reasons for… is (that) …
……的一个主要原因是……

14. Among all these reasons/factors/causes, … plays an important role.
在所有的原因中，……起着很关键的作用/是主要的一个。

15. One may think of the trend as a result of…
人们可能会认为该趋势是由于……

16. The change in… largely results from the fact that…
……方面的变化很大程度是因为……

17. There are several causes for this significant growth in … First…
有一些原因导致了在……方面的显著增长。第一，……
18. A number of factors contribute to this change.
许多因素导致这一变化。
19. … is an important/vital factor/reason for… /plays an important/vital role in…
……是导致……的一个重要原因/在……方面起到至关重要的作用。
20. An increase/decrease in… results in/leads to/produces…
在……方面的增加/减少导致了……
21. The reasons for this phenomenon may be obvious. /There may be some obvious reasons for this phenomenon.
可能有几点很明显的原因导致该现象。
22. … is mainly due to the following reasons/factors.
……主要是由于以下原因/因素。
23. There are many factors deciding/influencing…
有许多因素决定/影响……
24. Effective measures should be taken as soon as possible to…
应该尽快采取有效的措施来……
25. It is an urgent thing to take effective methods to solve this problem.
当务之急是采取有效的方法解决这个问题。
26. Facing…, we should try our best to figure out the ways to change this situation.
面对……，我们应该努力想办法改变这种局面。
27. The following ways can be taken to…
可以采用下列方法来……
28. … is an effective way to….
……是一个……的有效方法。
29. By doing…, one person can…
通过……，一个人可以……
30. In order to…, … should…
为了……，……应该……
31. Taking the above-mentioned into consideration/Considering the serious effects of the problem, I think, it is high time that we took effective measures/for us to take effective measures to…
鉴于以上所述/考虑到问题的严重性，我认为，是采取有效的措施……的时候了。
32. We must look for all immediate methods, because the present situation of…, if permitted to continue, will sure lead to/result in…
我们必须立刻寻找解决办法，因为现在的……形势如果持续下去的话，势必

会导致……

33. There is no immediate solution to the problem of …, but… might be helpful/beneficial.
……问题并没有立竿见影的解决办法，但是……可能会有所帮助。

34. No easy method can be at hand to solve the problem of …, but the general awareness of the necessity/importance of … might be the first step on the right way.
目前还没有任何简单的办法能够解决……问题，但是，使人们普遍认识到……的必要性/重要性或许是有效的第一步。

35. To reverse the trend is not a light task, and it requires keen consciousness of…
要扭转这一趋势并不容易，它需要对……具有敏锐意识。

36. Different people have / hold different opinions / views on the question / problem / matter. Some believe that …; others argue that … (; still others maintain that…)
对于这一问题，人们的看法各不相同。一些人认为……；其他人认为……(;还有一些人坚持……)。

37. Some people hold the opinion that…, while others argue that…
一些人认为……，然而其他人争辩说……

38. When it comes to…, different people offer different views.
当谈到/涉及……时，不同的人有不同的看法。

39. As to…, there is no consensus/complete agreement among people.
关于……，人们的看法不一。

40. They think quite differently on this question.
他们对这一问题的看法完全不同。

41. Opinions vary from individual to individual, from culture to culture.
不同的人，不同的文化，对这一问题的看法都不相同。

42. However, still some other people/others think differently/do not agree this/hold the opposite opinion.
然而，还有一些人持不同的观点。

43. Faced with …, quite a few people argue that …, but other people conceive differently.
面对……，相当一部分认为……，但是其他人并不认同。

44. Now it is commonly held that…, but I doubt whether…
现在人们普遍认为……，但是我怀疑……是否……

45. A is to B what/ as C is to D.
A 之于 B，就像 C 之于 D。

46. In contrast (to) … /On the contrary …

与之形成对比的是/相反，……

47. Just as… , so…
正如……，……也一样。

48. A and B have… in common/have many common…
A 和 B 有共同的……

49. The same is true of… /The same can be said of…
同样的情况也适用于……

50. Although it may bring unfavorable consequences, we can be sure to conclude that this practice is favorable on the whole.
尽管这可能会带来不利的影响，但是我们可以确定这种做法从整体上来说是有利的。

51. The advantages of A are much greater than those of B.
A 的好处明显大于 B 的。

52. Compared with B, A has many advantages.
和 B 相比，A 有许多优点/能带来许多好处。

53. The advantages outweigh the disadvantages.
利大于弊。

54. Although A enjoys considerable advantage over…, it cannot compete with B in…
尽管 A 在……方面有相当大的优势，但它在……方面不能和 B 相比。

55. Contrary to widely accepted views, I believe that…
与普遍接受的观点相反，我认为……

56. It is one thing to…, it is quite another to…
……是一回事，但……就是另外一回事了。

57. … have drawbacks as well as merits.
……既有缺点也有优点。

58. A is superior/inferior to B (in…)
A（在……方面）优于/劣于 B。

59. A is just the opposite (of B).
A 恰恰与 B 相反。

60. A differs from B in that…
A 不同于 B 的是……

61. A is not the same as B.
A 不同于 B。

62. There is a general discussion today about the issue of… /Currently there is a widespread concern on…

现在对于……存在广泛的讨论/关注。

63. Now people in growing number are coming to realize/More and more people are realizing /have come to realize…
现在越来越多的人逐渐/已经开始意识到……

64. Recently/In recent years, the phenomenon/issue/problem of … has been brought into focus/ aroused public attention/become a heated topic/ been in the limelight.
近年来，……现象/问题成为公众关注的焦点。

65. With (the steady/rapid/amazing development of) …, people begin to… /there arises a heated debate as to…
随着……（的稳定/快速/惊人的发展），人们开始……/出现了对……的热烈讨论。

66. Nowadays, our society is witnessing more and more…
目前，社会上有越来越多的……

67. In the past/last/recent… years, there has been a sharp increase/decrease in… /… has experienced an alarming rise/decline (in…). According to an official report/survey/poll…
在过去的……年中，在……方面有了急剧的增长/下降。根据一项官方报告/调查/民意测验，……。

68. Until recently/For years, … has/have been regarded/viewed as … But some people are taking a fresh look at it.
直到最近/许多年来，……一直被认为是……但是现在一些人对它有了新的认识。

69. Most people used to… /In the past, … But many people don't share this view any more now.
大多数人过去……/过去……，但是现在许多人不再这样认为。

70. It is a tradition/common/practice/traditional way (to…). But now/in recent decades things have changed.
……是一个传统/惯例/传统的方式。但是现在/近几十年来，情况已经发生了变化。

71. Nowadays there is no agreement among people as to… Some people… while others may…
现在对于……人们（的看法或做法）并不一致。一些人……，然而其他人可能……

72. When asked…, a great majority of people/most people… But I think quite

differently.

当被问及……时，大多数人会……但是我有不同的看法。

73. When it comes to… /When faced with/In the face of…, quite a few people claim that…, while other people argue…

当谈到/面对……时，相当一部分人认为……，然而也有一些人认为……

74. Now, it is commonly/generally/widely believed/acknowledged/accepted that…

现在，人们普遍认为/承认/接受……

75. Now there is a growing awareness/recognition of the necessity to… /Now people are becoming increasingly aware/conscious of the importance of…

现在人们越来越意识到……的必要性/重要性。

76. …, which has been generally accepted. The truth of it is deep and profound/self-evident.

……一直被人们普遍接受。其中的道理是深远的/明显的。

77. Should/What…? Opinions on/Attitudes towards/Answers to the question vary from person to person.

……? 对于这个问题的看法/态度/回答因人而异。

78. "Why do/ have …?" Many people often ask/pose the question like this.

"为什么……?" 许多人经常问/提出这样的问题。

79. There is an old/popular saying/proverb which goes that… The truth of it is profound and significant. / Under its simplified cover, a truth is ironically pointed out, that is, …

有一句古老/流行的谚语说："……"。其中的道理意义深远。/简单的话语中蕴含着具有讽刺意味的事实，那就是……

80. One great… had ever said/once remarked, "……" Now it still has a realistic/profound significance. / It is still working in our modern society. / The remark is still confirmed by people in today's society.

一位伟大的……曾经说过："……" 现在这句话仍然具有现实/深远的意义。/在现代社会这个道理仍然适用。/在今天的社会中仍然有许多人相信这一点。

81. From the above-mentioned /what has been discussed above, /Judging from all evidence offered, we may safely arrive at/draw/come to/reach the conclusion that …

综上所述，我们可以合理地得出结论：……

82. Taking into account/Considering all these factors /In view of the above-mentioned facts, we should…

考虑到这些因素/鉴于以上事实，我们应该……

83. It is no doubt/denying that/ There is little/no doubt/denying that（considerable attention must be paid to）…
毫无疑问，（我们必须多加关注）……

84. It is, therefore, obvious/evident that… require immediate attention.
因此，很显然……需要立刻引起注意。

85. It is high time/It is an urgent thing that we put considerable/great/special emphasis on…
当务之急是重点关注……

86. In a word, it takes our common efforts/is everyone's responsibility to…
总之，……需要我们共同的努力/是我们每一个人的责任。

87. Only in this way/through these ways/when all measures go into action can the problem of… be solved in near future… /can we…
只有这样/所有的措施付诸行动的时候，问题才能够在不久的将来得以解决。/我们才能……

88. Therefore, think it over and make full preparation before you decide to…. /we should take a full account before we make our decisions.
因此，在决定……之前要考虑周全并作好充分的准备/我们应该仔细考虑之后再作决定。

89. Given the factors that I have just outlined, it is wise to support the statement that…
鉴于我刚才提到的因素，支持……观点是明智的。

90. All the available/striking evidence goes to show that… /points to the fact that…
一切现有的/有力的证据表明，……

91. All theevidence/analysis supports/confirms an unmistakable/unshakable conclusion/a sound view that…
所有证据/分析都证实了一个不可动摇的结论/合理的观点……

92. The conclusion is self-evident. …
结论不言而喻。……

93. Weighing up these two arguments/Taking into account all these factors, I am for… /I prefer …
权衡这两种观点/考虑到这些因素，我支持/宁愿……

94. Weighing the pros and cons of…, we can naturally arrive at the conclusion that…
权衡……的利弊，我们可以自然地得出这样的结论：……

95. Clearly/Obviously/No doubt, if we cannot… / if we ignore/are blind to…, it is very likely that…

显然，如果我们不能/如果我们忽视……很可能……

96. Any person/nation/society who/which ignores/is blind to/fails to… would pay a heavy price.
任何忽视/没能……的人/民族/社会，都将付出沉重的代价。

97. If we work on… from now on, in foreseeable future, we will not be cursed/overwhelmed by the same dilemma/problem.
如果我们从现在开始努力……那么在不久的将来，我们将不会再为相同的难题所困扰。

98. If we can solve the problem with no efforts spared, human beings will not be caught/stuck in the same conditions.
如果我们能够不遗余力地解决这一问题，人类将不会再陷入相同的困境。

99. Following these methods may not guarantee the success in…, but the pay-off will be worth the sweat we shed.
这些办法或许无法保证成功地……但这种努力是值得的。

100. It is essential/necessary/important/imperative that effective/quick/proper measures/actions/ steps should be taken to…
必要的是采取有效/快速/适当的方法/行动/措施来……

三、每日佳作赏析

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Internet and Privacy.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 网络几乎已经渗透到方方面面，包括个人隐私。
2. 网络会对个人隐私产生哪些影响？
3. 应该如何保障网络上的个人隐私？

范文	点评
Internet has (1) penetrated into all the aspects of our life and work. (2①) We can study and work by it; we can find a job by it; (2②) we can communicate by it; (2③) we can entertain by it; (2④) we can buy and sell by it. We can do almost everything on the Internet, (3) almost anywhere anytime.	(1) 意为“渗透进”。 (2) 排比句，结构相同，增强气势。 (3) 注意两个副词的使用。 (4) 意为“然而，与此同时”，转折引出网络的弊端。

(4) However, while providing services for us, Internet is (5) inevitably invading our privacy (6) to some degree. The services on most websites require our registration. If we want to enjoy these services, we have to provide much private information, (7) including our name, gender, address, telephone number and sometimes bank account number. (8) Due to (9) the poor administration and weak security, our information might be, stolen or sold on the Internet. (10) Even sometimes the information will be (11) misused by the criminals. (12) Considering the above-mentioned, we must (13) enhance the alertness (14) when using the Internet. First, when we need Internet service, we should try to log on those big legal websites. Second, if the service requires important private information, you should (15) think twice before you type it in.	(5) 意为“不可避免地”。 (6) 意为“在某种程度上”，限定词的使用，使表达更加严谨。 (7) 现在分词短语做后置定语。 (8) 意为“由于，因为”。 (9) 学会使用抽象名词。 (10) 表示递进，条理清晰。 (11) 意为“滥用”。 (12) 意为“鉴于以上论述”。 (13) 意为“提高警惕性”。 (14) 现在分词短语，使表达更加简洁。 (15) 意为“三思而后行”。

星期六　一周复习效果检验

Test 1

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Something I admire about the Western Culture.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 中西方文化存在冲突，但西方文化中也存在值得我们欣赏的地方。
2. 试列举其中的两至三点，并加以论述。

Test 2

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **How to Alleviate China's Traffic Congestion?** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 大城市的交通堵塞问题十分严重。
2. 目前政府已经采取了许多应对措施（如尾号限行）。
3. 我们应该怎么做？

Test 3

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Champion Spokesperson.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 现在，我们经常能看到一些高考状元为产品代言。
2. 这一现象引起了很大的争议。
3. 谈谈你对此的看法。

Test 4

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Exchanging Old Household Appliances for New Ones.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1. 近年来全国的一些城市开展了“家电以旧换新”活动。
2. 这种活动的目的是什么？

3. 谈谈你的看法。

Test 5

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **The Moonlight Clan.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline given below in Chinese:

1. 现在很多年轻人每个月都把自己赚的钱花光，他们被称作“月光族”。
2. 有人认为这是一种时尚的消费观念，但很多人表示反对。
3. 我对此的看法是……

Test 6

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a composition on the topic **Academic Cheating.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words, and base your composition on the outline (given in Chinese) below:

1）近来涌现出许多学术造假现象。
2）分析这种现象的不良影响。
3）谈谈你的看法。

Test 7

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Martial Arts Novels in the Textbooks**. People have different opinions on using some parts of martial arts novels in the Textbooks. Give your opinions and reasons. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

Test 8

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Credit Cards on Campus**. Explain the popularity of credit cards on campus, and give your suggestions on it. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

参考范文

Test 1

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇道理阐释类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出西方文化中也有值得欣赏的地方；第二段阐述西方文化中哪些地方值得欣赏；第三段重申西方文化的优点所在，并指出注意事项。

Something I Admire about the Western Culture

Despite the conflicts between western culture and our culture, there do exist some admirable ingredients in western culture. We should learn from them for our improvement. The following is some ingredients I like most in western culture.

First and foremost, I think the equality between parents and children should be admired by us. In the west, parents are not always superior to children, and they are more like close friends. Instead, Chinese parents make too many decisions for their children. The second ingredient I like is the independent personality. Western youngsters begin earning their pocket money early in their life. In contrast, Chinese children depend on their parents too much. Last, western people do not always assess a person according to his background, which give people more chance to make a success.

Considering the above-mentioned, we can reasonably conclude that in western culture there are many merits worth our learning. But it is worth noting that some people advocate that western culture is better than Chinese culture. This blind worship undoubtedly will bring bad influence. Therefore, I suggest we evaluate western culture objectively, and try to discard the dross and select the essential.

Test 2

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述大城市的交通问题及其严重性；第二段说明政府为缓解交通拥堵所采取的主要措施；第三段针对交通拥堵问题提出“我”的建议。

How to Alleviate China's Traffic Congestion?

As many people know, traffic congestion has become quite a serious problem in major cities. Every day it brings headaches not only for those commuters taking public transportation but also those driving private cars. Besides, traffic congestion reduces productivity by taking away valuable time from work. Therefore, how to reduce traffic congestion is worth paying more attention to.

Some measures have been taken to put traffic congestion under control. The car limit policy is a good one of them. In order to reduce traffic flow, every day some cars with different tail numbers are not allowed to run on the road. Moreover, our government has been trying to enlarge the capacity of public transit systems. Several subway lines are under construction. Besides, there are more roads to be built to accommodate the increase in traffic.

From my point of view, only these measures by the government are not enough, and we should make our contribution. Those owning cars should try to drive less and take public transportation more. Besides, more people should use bicycles as their traffic tools instead of cars. All in all, the final solution to the problem needs our common efforts.

Test 3

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出高考状元为产品代言这一现象，引出人们对其的争议；第二段对比论述两种观点各自的理由；第三段谈谈“我”对高考状元代言的看法和理由。

Champion Spokesperson

Nowadays, we often can see that some champions in the college entrance examination speak for some products. This phenomenon has sparked much debate.

Some people think it will create a win-win situation since it can bring profits for both the producer and the champion. Besides, they say these models in study get publicized, which to some extent will stimulate other students to study hard.

However, other people object to this strongly. They insist that this behavior should be banned because in most cases the champion has not used the product they speak for. Furthermore, if a champion is paid too much attention to or is often exposed to the media, it is not good for his or her growth.

Weighing up the cons and pros, I prefer to the latter opinion. In my opinion, a spokesperson must be responsible for the product he or she speaks for, but the young champion is not mature enough to do this. Besides, attending the commericial activities will influence the champion's normal study. Therefore, I think the champions' speaking behaviors should not be encouraged.

Test 4

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出人们对假日经济的争议；第二段对比阐述争议双方各自的理由；第三段表明个人对假日经济的看法并说明理由。

Exchanging Old Household Appliances for New Ones

Recently, some cities have initiated the activity of “Exchanging Old

Household Appliances for New Ones". The citizens can use their old TV sets, iceboxes or other household appliances to get a new one at a very low price. This activity is widely welcomed.

In general, this activity has two main purposes. First, it aims to pull domestic demand and boost consumption in the appliance market. Second, by this activity, the government wants to develop the consumers' consciousness of environmental protection, and build a set of effective systems of recycling household appliances.

From my point of view, this activity is beneficial to the country and the people. On the one hand, the citizens can enjoy favorable prices in purchasing the appliances. On the other hand, the old appliances can be recycled and reused. Therefore, I hope that this activity can be continued and more activities like this will be held in the future.

Test 5

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应该是一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述"月光族"现象，引出对该现象的不同看法；第二段分别阐述两种看法各自的理由；第三段表明个人对"月光族"的看法并说明理由。

The Moonlight Clan

Nowadays, more and more people, especially the young, are joining in the army of "the moonlight clan". These people exhaust their earnings every month without any savings. Many people think it a fashionable consumption style, while more other people object to it.

Those who support "the moonlight clan" think that these young people know how to enjoy life and have a higher life quality. However, more other people criticize "the moonlight clan". They say that the consumption habit of "the moonlight clan" is unhealthy and wasteful. In addition, no savings will place "the moonlight clan" in a difficult position in case of unexpected expenses.

Weighing up these two arguments, I support the latter one. I think the consumption style of "the moonlight clan" is not worth recommending and learning. Though "the moonlight clan" may acquire temporary satisfaction from their consumption, in the long term, it is a kind of unhealthy consumption style. Just as a proverb says, one should always prepare for a rainy day.

Test 6

框架搭建：由标题和提纲所列内容可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述学术造假现象及其主要表现；第二段说明学术造假现象的主要影响；第三段谈谈“我”对学术造假现象的看法。

Academic Cheating

In recent years, there have appeared many academic cheating in China scientific research. We often can see the reports from the media on academic plagiarism, fabrication and multiple publications. In addition, to our surprise, nearly half of the science-related workers in China's research institutes, universities and medical institutes think academic cheating is "common," according to a survey.

Undoubtedly, the phenomenon of academic cheating can bring great negative influence. Above all, it prevents scientific advancement and economic development. It is a great waste of our state property. What's more, our country's reputation suffers serious damage and social morality is adversely affected. Besides, fake academic works will waste other scientists and researchers' time and energy.

From my point of view, it is a hard work to eliminate academic cheating, but effective measures must be adopted to put it under control. For one thing, the force of supervision and administration should be strengthened. For another, the professional ability of editors in the academic journals ought to be enhanced urgently. In a word, we cannot allow academic cheating to keep so rampant.

Test 7

框架搭建：由标题和题目内容可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出有些学校课本中选用武侠小说这一现象，引出人们对其的不同看法；第二段对比论述两种看法各自的理由；第三段谈谈“我”对课本选用武侠小说的看法和理由。

Martial Arts Novels in the Textbooks

Recently, the compiling group of the Chinese textbooks has made a decision that some parts of a martial arts novel would be selected as one of the texts. This has sparked off a heated debate.

Some people think that it is a good idea. They say the martial arts novels are also a good literature type and should be included in the textbook. However, others

are strongly against this decision. They say it will do no good to students because these novels sing the praises for nothing but fighting and revenge.

In my opinion, it is not reasonable to select the text from a marital arts novel. Firstly, the main theme of these novels is revenge. Secondly, the characters do nothing but fight with each other. It seems they needn't make a living. Thirdly, there are all kinds of factions in the novels. Students who have not established their values and outlook of life will be affected by these ideas. Therefore, I insist that these novels should be removed from the textbook. Some good materials should be selected to instruct the students to form the correct outlook of life.

Test 8

框架搭建：由标题和题目内容可知，本文应该是一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述大学生使用信用卡的现状；第二段说明越来越多的大学生开始使用信用卡的原因；第三段针对大学生使用信用卡提出个人的建议。

Credit Cards on Campus

In recent years, credit cards have gained more and more popularity among college students. With banks' more focus on college markets, an increasing number of college students have applied for credit cards and begun to consume by them.

The following reasons can account for the popularity of credit cards in college. Firstly, a credit card provides overdrawing service, which is a big attraction for those students who have no much money for their domination. Secondly, a credit card can help release financial burdens on those poor students. Besides, many banks make some preferential policies on credit cards, like sending a gift, lowering year cost. Drawn by these policies, many college students apply for credit cards.

As far as I am concerned, it is not a bad thing for college students to own credit cards. However, there is misuse of credit cards among college students. For example, many students use credit cards to buy luxurious things they don't need really. Therefore, schools and banks have responsibility to let college students learn how to use credit cards properly. Only in this way can college students enjoy really the advantages of credit cards.

第六周

预测作文热点，进行实战演练

一、热点演练 30 篇

给出最新热点预测 30 篇，一方面进一步熟悉前面所讲内容，另一方面对最新命题热点有一个全面把握，最终在考场之上游刃有余。

热点演练 1

Directions: For this part you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay entitled **Keep a Neat Appearance** by commenting on the saying "Sometimes a book is judged by its cover." You can give examples to illustrate your point. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 2

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Optimism is the Road to a Promising Future** by commenting on the Tagore' saying, "If you shed tears when you miss the sun, you will also miss the stars." You can give examples to illustrate your point and then **explain what you will do to keep optimistic.** You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 3

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay commenting on the saying "Never give up." You can give examples to illustrate your point. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 4

Directions: For this part you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay commenting on the remark "Your present circumstances don't determine where you can go; they merely determine where you start." You can give examples to illustrate your point. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 5

Directions: For this part you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay commenting on the remark "A young idler, an old beggar." You can give examples to illustrate your point. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 6

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Online Romance**. People have different opinions on the popularity of online romance. Give your opinions and reasons. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 7

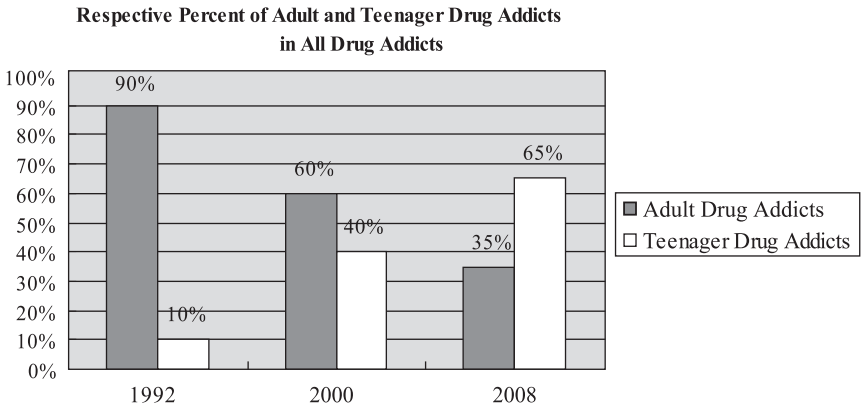
Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Expanding Enrollment in Universities**. Explain the reasons and effects of expanding enrollment, and give your opinions on it. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 8

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Double Degree in Colleges**. People have different opinions on double degree. Give your opinions and reasons. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 9

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Juvenile Drug Abuse** based on the statistics provided in the graph below. Please give a brief description of the graph first and then make comments on it. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.



热点演练 10

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **On Celebrities Worship.** Give your opinions and reasons. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 11

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay explaining **why it is necessary to get sufficient sleep**. You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 12

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Campus Dwellers**. Your essay should start with a brief description of the picture and then make comments on it. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 13

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **whether a family tutor is necessary for children**. You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 14

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **whether volunteer work is a waste of time**. You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 15

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **the popularity of second-hand goods**. You should explain main reasons for the phenomenon and then make comments on it. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 16

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **whether a face-lift surgery is a good choice**. You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 17

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **the problem of poverty stricken students in colleges**. You should give your suggestion on how to solve the problem. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 18

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write a short essay entitled **Post-holiday Syndrome among Students**. You should start your essay with a brief description of the picture and then discuss how to deal with post-holiday syndrome. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 19

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **why more and more college students start their own undertakings**. You should make comments on the phenomenon and write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 20

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **the problem of employment pressure facing college students**. You should explain main reasons for the problem and then discuss how to solve it. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 21

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **the increasing number of people riding bicycles**. You should explain the advantages of riding bicycles and then make comments on it. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 22

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **the problem of improper behaviors in public places**. You should explain main reasons for the problem and then discuss how to solve it. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 23

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **college students' education assistance to backward areas**. You should explain the meaning of the education assistance and then make comments on it. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 24

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **different work preferences: work with a person or work with a machine**? You should give your preference and explain the reasons. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 25

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **the**

popularity of adventure activities. You should explain the advantages of taking part in adventure activities and then make comments on it. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 26

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **the problems resulting from the sponsorship fee charged by schools and kindergartens**. You should make comments on this phenomenon and write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 27

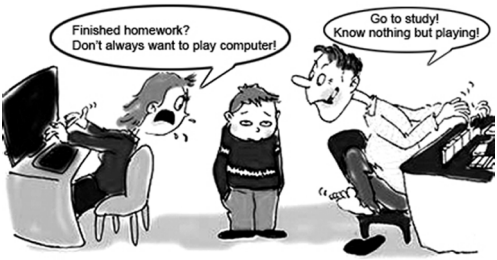
Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **whether we should help strangers in trouble**. You should give sound arguments to support your views and write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 28

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing **the phenomenon of employees' frequent overtime**. You should explain the disadvantages of working overtime and then make comments on it. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

热点演练 29

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay based on the picture below. You should start your essay with a brief description of the picture and then discuss **the impact of electronic products on young parents**. You should write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.



热点演练 30

Directions: For this part, you are allowed 30 minutes to write an essay discussing

why many college students speculate in the stock market. You should make comments on this phenomenon and write at least 150 words but no more than 200 words.

二、热点演练参考范文

热点演练 1

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇道理阐释类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段提出论点，即在现代社会，保持外表的整洁美观是十分重要的；第二段提出论据，论证该观点的正确性；第三段重申论点，强调我们应该适当注意修饰自己的外表，总结全文。

Keep a Neat Appearance

It is a well-known saying that "Don't judge a book from its cover." However, nowadays we often hear people say "Sometimes a book is judged by its cover." Indeed, they mean to show the importance of a neat appearance. In modern society, people pay much attention to one's appearance consciously or unconsciously. Therefore, it is necessary for us to keep a neat appearance.

Many facts can support this argument. Above all, when we go seeking a job, we must dress appropriately to leave a good first impression on the interviewers. Or else, the interviewers might give you a low mark even before you express your wisdom in mind. Moreover, a neat appearance represents a respect for others. If you have a dirty appearance, people around you will feel uncomfortable. Besides, an appropriate appearance will bring one a good mood and increase his confidence.

Considering the above-mentioned, we can safely come to the conclusion that we should keep a neat appearance. But just as a book with a gorgeous cover but a hollow content is by no means a good book, a person with a good appearance but a low capability is not a high-quality person. Therefore, we should pay attention to both our appearance and our capability.

热点演练 2

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇道理阐释类作文，其基本段落安排如下：第一段阐述题目中所给俗语的含义及蕴含的"乐观处事"的道理；第二段结合例子对乐观的重要作用进行论证；第三段阐述"我"如何保持乐观。

Optimism is the Road to a Promising Future

The famous poet Tagore had an enlightening saying "If you shed tears when you miss the sun, you will also miss the stars." This remark can be naturally associated with the significance of optimism. It tells us if one intends to witness a promising future, he should keep optimistic to the present situation.

Optimism, as a vital psychological quality, give people confidence, hope and courage, which will turn into a kind of power and help people overcome difficulties. For example, when trapped in the earthquake, an optimistic man will believe he will be rescued soon and can insist longer while a pessimistic man will probably believe that he must die and give up efforts. That is the difference between optimism and pessimism.

As a college student, we must cultivate and keep the spirit of optimism both in study and in life. Personally, doing outdoors activities is a good way to release stress and keep optimistic. Besides, it is very important to communicate with family members, friends, from whom you can get comfort and instructions, which naturally helps you become an optimistic person.

热点演练 3

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇道理阐释类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段提出"永不言弃"的观点，指出其中的意义所在；第二段举出论据论证该观点；第三段重申"永不言弃"的道理，总结全文。

Never Give up

"Never give up" is often said by people when they are frustrated or in depression, which means determination and encouragement. For anyone, whether in life or in work, this spirit is of great significance.

Many remarkable reasons contribute to this argument. First of all, if we give up too easily, we will rarely achieve anything. It is not unusual to fail in our first attempt, so we should not feel discouraged but should try again. What's more, if we always give up when we fail, we will not be able to develop new skills. For example, if Edison had given up his research after several failures, we might not have the electric light today. Besides, we can learn lessons and develop confidence from our failures.

All mentioned above tell us that it is important that we do not give up when working for our goals. Whether we succeed in the end or not, we will learn something and it will help us do better in the future. Therefore, there is no denying that we should have the determination of "Never give up" whatever we do.

热点演练 4

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇道理阐释类作文。根据题目要求，本文框架安排如下：第一段阐述道理——阐述题目中所给俗语的含义及蕴含的道理：未来不是由现在决定的；第二段展开论证——结合例子论证现在的成功或失败不意味着永远的成功或失败；第三段重申道理，提出建议——我们未来的成功与否是由我们自己的能力和努力决定的，而不是我们的现状。

范文	点评
It's Ourselves that Determine Our Destination （1）There is a very enlightening saying that goes "Your present circumstances don't determine where you can go; they merely determine where you start." It tells us what you are in the future is not determined by the present.（2）The truth of it is quite instructive in today's society. We often hear some people say we are a time of "Dad fight": the rich second generation can own everything they need without any effort（3）while it is very difficult for those poor children to change their destiny.（4）Undeniably, this phenomenon（5）indeed exists. However, we might neglect the fact that nothing is unchanging forever. A rich or official father can never（6）guarantee a successful future for you. In every time,（7）there were many examples of once wealthy and successful persons who went to failure in the end. Similarly, there were many people who（8）built up successful businesses from nothing. Therefore,（9）no matter what circumstances you are at present, you should have confidence in your future.（10）It is your abilities and efforts that determine whether you will succeed. What you should do is（11①）not to feel depressed or unsatisfied with your present situation（11②）but to try to improve yourself and（12）bring your abilities into full play to realize your goal.	（1）引出格言或俗语常用句式。 （2）表示"其中的道理非常有教育意义"，阐述哲理时常用句式。 （3）while 表示对比。 （4）副词使用恰当，表示"不可否认的是"。 （5）表示"确实存在"。 （6）表示"确保"。 （7）举例时常用句式。 （8）表示"白手起家"。 （9）表示"无论什么"，引导让步状语从句。 （10）强调句型，强调句子的主语。 （11）not… but 连接并列结构，表示"不是……而是"。 （12）表示"充分发挥自己的能力"。

热点演练 5

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇道理阐释类作文，其基本段落安排如下：第一段阐述题目中所给俗语的含义及蕴含的道理："少壮不努力，老大徒伤悲"提醒我们年轻时要珍惜时间；第二段结合例子对珍惜时间的重要性进行论证；第三段强调学生珍惜时间的重要性。

A young idler, an old beggar

There is a well-known Chinese saying that goes "A young idler, an old beggar." This remark is very meaningful and instructive to young people. It reminds us of the importance of making good use of time when young.

Time is fair, which gives everyone 24 hours a day. Whether you use it or waste it, elapsed time cannot be found back or be made up with. The youth is the best time of life, during which one's mental and physical states are at their peaks. Only by taking advantage of our young time can we make achievements we'd like to in the future. Those successful persons both in history and in modern times were unexceptionally the masters of time. Their achievements to a large extent should be attributed to their cherishing time and opportunities.

As students, we should value our campus time and make every effort to improve ourselves, or what is facing us in the near future will only be regretful for our wasted years.

热点演练 6

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出人们对网络恋情持不同态度；第二段对比论述两种态度各自的理由；第三段谈谈"我"的看法和理由。

Online Romance

In recent years, with the widespread of Internet, there have appeared many online romances. The lovers meet over the Internet, date on the net and finally fall in love with each other. As for this online romance, different people have different opinions.

Those people who support it believe it is an amazing thing that Internet brings together two strange persons far away from each other. In addition, they point out that compared with realistic love, online romance pays more attention to the appeal to each other in spirit and involves less material conditions. However, still others think differently. In their opinions, Internet is a virtual world, on which there impossibly exist real, enduring love. Besides, they argue that pursuing online

romance is sometimes very dangerous because there are many cheaters on the net.

Weighing up these two arguments, I am inclined to the latter one. For one thing, Internet has too many uncertainties and limits, which makes it difficult for you to understand each other completely. For another, there are many people who utilize Internet to practice deception. Taking above-mentioned factors into consideration, I suggest that you'd better not pursuit an online romance.

热点演练 7

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述各大学响应国家号召扩大招生这一现象；第二段说明大学扩招带来的影响；第三段谈谈你对扩招的看法。

Expanding Enrollment in Universities

In recent years, nearly all the universities have responded to the state policies to expand the enrollment scale. One reason is that the state wants to popularize the education among much more people to enhance the overall quality of our nationals. In addition, the state hopes this can stimulate the national consumption.

As everyone sees, expanding enrollment has brought great effect on our society. Above all, it has stimulated domestic demand. For example, with the pressure from the global economic crisis, expanding enrollment has encouraged people to spend money on education. What's more, it has cultivated many various talents for the development of our society. In addition, it has greatly improved people's overall qualities, which is essential to the stability of the society.

No doubt, expanding enrollment has benefited the people and our society. However, if handled improperly, it can also result in employment problems. It is worth noting that universities should expand enrollment on the basis of a full analysis on the social conditions. All in all, it is vital for universities to make a careful consideration before making decisions.

热点演练 8

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段阐述支持学生选择第二专业的人的观点和理由；第二段阐述反对学生选择第二专业的人的观点和理由；第三段表明自己对学生选择第二专业的观点和理由。

Double Degree in Colleges

Nowadays more and more colleges and universities are allowing students to have a double degree. Many people think this is good for students' development. They maintain that learning various subjects can extend students' scope of knowledge. Furthermore, a double degree can increase students' chances of finding a satisfactory job.

However, others hold a totally different opinion towards a double degree. In their mind, a second degree may divert students' attention away from their first major, making them good at nothing. Besides, a second degree may need students to sacrifice most of their time, because it usually is a totally new field for them.

As far as I'm concerned, a double degree is beneficial to college students. Undoubtedly, students with a double degree will be more competitive in the job market. But it is worth noting that students should not study for the sake of a degree; instead, they should study for their improvement of knowledge and ability. Only then is a double degree worthwhile.

热点演练 9

框架搭建：由图表内容和题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段根据图表简要描述吸毒者年龄分布的变化情况；第二段分析变化的原因；第三段说明变化所带来的影响。

Juvenile Drug Abuse

From the chart, we clearly learn that the number of teenager drug addicts has grown rapidly in the last seventeen years while that of adult ones has decreased greatly. In 1992, adult drug addicts and teenager drug addicts accounted for 90% and 10% respectively in all drug users. However, by 2008, the percent of adult drug addicts has declined to 35%, while that of teenager ones has increased to 65%.

Many reasons have contributed to this tremendous change. First of all, teenagers have more opportunities to be in touch with drugs due to the drug epidemic. Moreover, some public media may reveal the scenes of drug taking, which will entice teenagers to try drugs. Besides, our education on the harmfulness of drugs has been far from adequate to build teenagers' sound resistance to drugs.

As far as I am concerned, it is very disastrous for teenagers to be addicted to drugs. For one thing, drugs may not only ruin teenagers' physical and mental health, but also result in their moral degeneration. For another, teenagers may obtain money through illegal means to buy expensive drugs. Therefore, effective measures should be taken to protect teenagers from the dangers of drugs.

热点演练 10

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇论证观点类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段由很多人崇拜名人的现象引出观点：不应该盲目崇拜名人；第二段提供论据论证“我”的观点；第三段重申“我”的观点，总结全文。

On Celebrities Worship

Celebrities like actors, athletes and politicians have excelled in their respective fields and made a place for themselves in the society. So many people take them as their idols, liking whatever they do and believing whatever they say. However, I think we should not worship celebrities blindly. The following reasons can support my argument.

Countless facts have proved that not all celebrities deserve our admiration. For example, according to the revelation of some media, many entertainment stars involve themselves in drug abuse and politicians are lost in power-money deal. This suggests that celebrities are also ordinary human beings and liable to make mistakes at some point of their life. Besides, I believe “What we see is not necessarily the truth”. A celebrity may behave well to cater to the public, but he may be abominable in nature behind our back.

Considering the above-mentioned, we can conclude that celebrities should not be worshiped blindly. That is because a person’s charm is not decided by his profession, but by his overall quality, including his sense of morality and sense of justice, and so on. Therefore, we should be keen enough to judge a celebrity’s true colors.

热点演练 11

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇问题类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述很多人不注重睡眠、总是熬夜的现象；第二段说明缺乏睡眠会带来哪些危害；第三段说明应该如何解决这一问题。

It Is Necessary to Get Sufficient Sleep

In modern society, lack of sleep is more and more becoming a problem. Many people are not aware of the importance of sufficient sleep. What’s worse, some people even consider staying late at night as a fashionable lifestyle.

Indeed, insufficient sleep brings great harm to people’s health. Above all, the lack of sleep directly results in low efficiency in the daytime, which will undoubtedly

hinder one's progress and development, no matter at school or at work. Besides, insufficient sleep probably leads to the decrease of one's health, and then may make him more susceptible to viruses.

Considering the seriousness of the problem, it is an urgent thing to form a healthy sleeping habit. First of all, we should try our best to finish our work in daytime so as to get to bed early at night. Secondly, if we have difficulties in falling asleep at night, we can try listening to some light music or drink some milk. Finally, keeping a good mood can also help us sleep better.

热点演练 12

框架搭建：由图画和题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述大学生毕业后继续赖在校园里的现象；第二段分析这些学生赖在学校的不同原因；第三段谈谈“我”对学生毕业后仍赖在学校的看法。

Campus Dwellers

From the picture, we can see a student is fighting against being dragged away from college, yelling “No, I won't leave!”. But the graduation certificate in his hand shows the fact he has already graduated. The picture depicts vividly the image of “campus dwellers” who still stay at school after graduation. Most of these students neither pursue further study nor hunt for jobs, who often feel at a loss with their future.

The reasons for this phenomenon are varied. Among all these reasons, the huge employment pressure plays a critical role. Some students are not independent enough, which makes it extremely hard for them to step out of school. Secondly, the rent of school dormitories is relatively low, which is much easier for students to afford. Thirdly, some students choose to dwell on campus simply because they like the cultural atmosphere in the universities.

From my point of view, the pressure in the society is the vital reason for college graduates to be campus dwellers. However, one cannot stay at school for a lifetime. I suggest both universities and parents should teach the students to face the reality bravely. Once they can face with the reality and handle problems properly, they will be real grown-ups.

热点演练 13

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出家长给孩子请家教的现象，引出人们对其的不同看法；第二段对比论述两种看法各自的理由；第三段谈谈“我”对给孩子请家教的看法和理由。

Whether A Family Tutor Is Necessary for Children

In order to relieve the burden of students in primary and high schools, the Ministry of Education has decided to force the schools to close on weekends. However, many parents have employed family tutors for their children. This behavior has aroused heated discussion.

Some people criticize these parents strictly because they think excessive pressure will injure children both physically and mentally. They hold that health is of the first importance to children. However, many other people hold the opposite opinion. They stand by these parents. They say nowadays children are faced with great pressure from their schoolwork and employment. These parents want to help their children win in the starting line, which is a wise doing.

Weighing up the pros and cons, I don't think it advisable for parents to employ family tutors for their children. Learning is not the only thing for a child. Too heavy burden is unfavorable to his healthy growth. In my opinion, instead of placing a lot of pressure on children, parents and teachers should make sure that children make the best use of class time, leaving more free time for them to go in for other activities.

热点演练 14

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段先指出人们对志愿者工作的不理解，然后提出论点：参加志愿者工作有很多好处；第二段具体论述参加志愿者工作的好处；第三段强调大学生应该积极加入志愿者。

Whether Volunteer Work Is A Waste of Time

Nowadays there are still some people who do not understand volunteer work. In their eyes, volunteering is merely a waste of time, because the volunteers have no gains with pains… However, I believe that doing voluntary work is quite rewarding. The following reasons can support the argument.

Undoubtedly, we can benefit a lot from volunteer work. Firstly, we can put into practice what we have learnt before… For example, when a foreigner asks us the way, we have the opportunity to verify whether we can express ourselves in a foreign language correctly and clearly. Moreover, we can make friends with other volunteers and even the people we helped. In addition, it makes us happy to help others and do our part for our country. In this sense, we reap a bountiful spiritual harvest by doing voluntary work.

All mentioned above tell us that voluntary work is not a waste of time. It can return us more than we had paid. Therefore, we should actively participate in the voluntary work for the welfare of the public.

热点演练 15

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述目前二手货的交易现状以及人们对二手货的态度；第二段分析二手货交易增加的原因；第三段说明二手货交易可能带来的问题。

Secondhand Goods

In recent years, second-hand transactions have become quite common. Nowadays there are more and more secondhand goods in the market, such as secondhand books, furniture, appliances, cars, and so on. Why do so many people like to buy secondhand goods?

The following reasons can account for this phenomenon. Above all, secondhand goods are cheaper than new ones. This enables those people who do not have much money to buy the things they want. Moreover, secondhand goods transactions make it possible for people to make good use of the goods which may be useless in their hands. Besides, Internet provides a more convenient and quicker transaction platform for secondhand goods.

However, there are also some problems in secondhand goods transactions. For one thing, the quality of secondhand goods can not be promised and you can not enjoy the after-sales service. For another, secondhand goods market lacks enough supervision and management, and there exist many dishonest business activities. In a word, I think secondhand goods transaction is a good trading way, but it needs further perfection of the rules.

热点演练 16

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出对于整容现象人们存在不同的态度；第二段对比论述不同态度各自的理由；第三段谈谈你对整容的看法和理由。

Whether A Face-lift Surgery Is A Good Choice

When it comes to the phenomenon of face-lift, which is nothing new in this modern society, there is no complete agreement among people. Some people think it is beyond reproach, while others express contempt for this practice.

Those people who hold the former opinion believe that successful face-lift can increase one's self-confidence and receive a wide publicity. Besides, it can at least enhance the competitiveness of those whose profession asks for a perfect physical beauty. However, others hold a totally different idea. They argue that it can't be lasting to depend on the beauty gained from face-lift to attract others' attention. On the contrary, it is the inner beauty that could influence one person for the whole life. In addition, they hold that most professions emphasize the workers' ability more than their appearance.

As far as I am concerned, I disapprove of people receiving face-lift surgery, because it has great potential dangers. If handled improperly, they will risk disfiguring or even losing their lives. Therefore, people should take their health into consideration before they make a decision to change their faces.

热点演练 17

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述高校中的贫困生问题及主要表现；第二段指出贫困给这些学生带来的危害；第三段说明如何解决贫困生问题。

Poverty Stricken Students in Colleges

In recent years, the group of poverty stricken students has become quite a serious problem in colleges. They live under financial hardships and encounter many difficulties in finishing higher education. What's worse, some students suffer not only physical but also mental difficulties brought by poverty.

It is very clear that heavy financial burdens are bringing great harm to these students. Above all, they always worry about their tuition and living expenditure. To make money, they sacrifice a lot of time to part-time jobs, which inevitably influences their study. Furthermore, too great stress and hard life make some of them suffer mental imbalance.

Considering seriousness of the problem, we should pay more attention to these poverty stricken students. Firstly, we should care about them much but not only sympathize them. Secondly, schools should give them more tuition assistance and provide more part-time jobs. Thirdly, banks should provide them with interest-free loans and all the other social sections should give necessary financial aids. Only in this way can these students have enough energy to finish their study and develop their abilities.

热点演练 18

框架搭建：由图画和题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段结合图画描述学生的假期综合症现象；第二段说明导致这一现象的原因；第三段针对如何解决假期综合征问题提出你的建议。

Post-holiday Syndrome among Students

From the picture, we can see a student feels very depressed about returning to campus life after a holiday of playing games, sleeping late and surfing the Internet. The picture mirrors vividly a kind of phenomenon among students called post-holiday syndrome. The symptoms often include fatigue, lack of appetite, lack of concentration, and a feeling of helplessness.

The appearance of post-holiday syndrome can largely be attributed to irregular and unhealthy lifestyles during the holiday. Many students overindulge themselves in eating and playing during the holiday. They don't follow the routine schedule at school, many of whom stay up late and get up late. Even some students are addicted to computer games all day and night. These unhealthy lifestyles make it difficult for those students to adjust to the routine schedule and life pace on campus. So they feel many discomforts when the new term begins.

I have some suggestions on how to deal with this syndrome. First, try to choose more healthy and meaningful ways of relaxing during holidays, such as doing some exercises, playing ball games, and reading novels. If you feel you might lack enough self-control, you can ask your friends or parents to supervise you in case you overindulge yourself. Besides, it might be an effective way to return to the campus or the school routine schedule a few days earlier before the new semester starts. You will have time to adjust your lifestyle to campus life.

热点演练 19

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述目前许多大学生自主创业的现象；第二段分析大学生选择自主创业的原因；第三段谈谈“我”对大学生自主创业的看法。

College Students' Starting Their Own Undertakings

Nowadays there are many college students who choose to start their own undertakings instead of finding a job after graduation. The government encourages this practice, and provides many preferential policies and facilitation measures for college students. This phenomenon has aroused great concern from the whole society.

However, why do so many college students take the way of starting their own undertakings? Firstly, college students are facing severe employment situation. Many college graduates couldn't find ideal jobs, which forces them to set up their own businesses. Moreover, some ambitious college students are not satisfied with being employed by others. They want to develop and prove their talents by running their own businesses. Besides, the government's encouragement and the media's reports on college students venture stars have stimulated more college students' enthusiasm to take this way.

As to me, it is a good choice for college students to start their own undertakings. However, it is a very difficult cause, which needs firm determination, clear mind, ability to endure hardship and a feasible project. Therefore, think it over and make full preparation before you decide to start your own business.

热点演练 20

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出大学生就业难的问题；第二段分析导致该问题的原因；第三段从大学生的角度说明应该如何应对该问题。

Employment Pressure Facing College Students

About a decade ago, university students could find satisfactory and enviable jobs after their graduation. But now, things are different. Today's university students usually experience great difficulties finding satisfactory jobs. They often complain that graduation means joblessness. What is the cause of this phenomenon?

Firstly, with the enrollment expansion of universities, the supply of university graduates exceeds the social demand. This results in a decreased chance for any individual graduate to find a job. Secondly, university students tend to spend most of their time at school in studying academic subjects and lack relevant job experience. Thirdly, some students don't study hard during the college. After four years of university life, they haven't gained the knowledge those fairly good jobs or positions require.

Facing the increasingly fierce competition, we university students should try our bests to change this situation. Above all, when in school, we should make the most of our time and put our heart into our studies. What's more, we can take part-time jobs and attend social activities in our spare time to accumulate relevant practical experience. Besides, when we apply for jobs after graduation, we should attach more importance to accumulating experience than to the starting salary.

热点演练 21

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述自行车作为环保的出行方式被人们提倡的现象；第二段说明骑自行车的好处；第三段指出骑自行车出行时应注意的问题。

The Inereasing Number of People Riding Bicycles

Nowadays, more and more people prefer to choose bicycles as their traffic tool, especially in big cities. The main reason for the popularity of bicycles is the heavy traffic. In addition, environmental protection is an important factor for people's preference for bicycles.

Not only riders but also our city can benefit a lot from this kind of "green traffic". Above all, riding bicycles can free riders from many troubles when traffic is heavy. For example, riders can still go smoothly when numerous vehicles hold up the traffic. What's more, bicycling does much good to the health of regular riders. In Besides, riding bicycles not only contributes to easing the traffic pressure but also is environmentally friendly.

No doubt, riding bicycles is a good choice for many people, especially for young people. However, a boiling sea of bicycles sometimes might become a headache for causing traffic jams and accidents. Many urban drivers are complaining about bicycle riders jamming up the already tight traffic. Therefore, road building and traffic control should be improved to solve the conflict between bicycles and vehicles.

热点演练 22

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述闯红灯、随地吐痰等不文明现象；第二段分析导致这些不文明现象的原因；第三段说明如何减少这些不文明的现象。

Improper Behaviors in Public Places

Nowadays, there are still quite a few people behave badly in public places, like running the red light, spitting everywhere. As is known to all, this kind of improper behaviors can cause serious social problems. Even worse, these behaviors have stained China's name of "nation of etiquette".

Many reasons contribute to these bad behaviors. Among these, the flaw of our

education plays a critical role. Children are told to care about academic performance too much, and they haven't been given enough education on personal quality. In addition, parents and teachers lack the awareness of setting an example by their own actions, which has affected children negatively.

Considering the seriousness of this problem, I think it is high time that we paid more attention to etiquette education. Firstly, the schools should focus more on etiquette education. Secondly, the government is supposed to punish severely those who offend public morals. Thirdly, some supervisors should be arranged in the public places to prevent people from behaving badly. Only through these ways can we make our country worthy of the name "nation of etiquette".

热点演练 23

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述近年许多大学生响应国家号召到边远贫困地区支教的现象；第二段说明支教活动的意义；第三段谈谈"我"对大学生支教的看法。

College Studerts' Education Assistance to Backward Areas

Nowadays, more and more college students respond to the state policy to provide assistance to improve schooling in backward areas. To do this, they must give up many things, such as the colorful life in cities, the more decent job opportunities and the previous social circle, and so on. However, their choice is undoubtedly meaningful to both their personal life and the improvement of the education in poor areas.

For one thing, college students' personal value can be largely realized. For example, it is of great honor for a college student to impart his knowledge to children in the areas where educational resources are largely short of. For another, these students' contribution can greatly enhance the educational level in the poor areas, which is essential to improve the economic conditions.

As far as I'm concerned, China's development depends on the nationwide improvement of education, and we college students should take the lead in helping realize this goal. I'm sure that with our efforts, the children in those poor areas will become qualified adults who will in turn improve their hometowns' conditions.

热点演练 24

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落

安排如下：第一段指出两种不同的工作方式倾向：喜欢和人打交道多的工作，喜欢和机器等物品打交道的工作；第二段对比论述两种倾向各自的理由；第三段表明个人喜欢哪种工作方式，并说明理由。

Work with a Person or Work with a Machine?

When asked about their work preference, different people will give different answers. Some people like working with people. However, others prefer jobs which mainly involve machines or objects.

Those people who have the first preference believe working with people can keep one from being lonely. In addition, they maintain people can be inspired to bring forward new ideas by communicating or consulting with those around them. However, still others have different preference. In their opinions, working with machines or objects can make one enjoy more peace and quiet. Besides, they argue, under such peaceful conditions, one can do more practical work, improve his skills and make technical innovations.

Weighing up these two kinds of work, I prefer working with people. For one thing, we can progress in the process of cooperating with others. For another, we can get immediate help from people around us when we alone can not handle a matter. Considering these, I think, working with people is beneficial to our career development.

热点演练 25

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述许多人喜欢进行徒步或骑车旅行等探险活动这一现象；第二段说明探险活动有哪些积极影响；第三段谈谈个人对探险活动的看法，可指出注意事项。

The Popularity of Adventure Activities

Nowadays, adventure is gaining its great popularity. More and more people, especially young people begin to be keen on adventure activities, like going hiking, taking a cycling tour. Moreover, even there are some amateur explorers who challenge themselves by going through desolate land, the Gobi or the deserts.

People can benefit a lot from attending adventure activities. Above all, it is a good way for people to relax themselves and release their pressure. When putting themselves into the activities like hiking or cycling, people will forget their troubles and burdens temporarily. What's more, these activities can help build up one's will and strengthen his body. Besides, adventure activities can bring people new experience and unexpected pleasure.

From my point of view, modern people need some adventure activities for a change of life pace. However, it is worth noting that there are many potential dangers in these activities. For lack of enough knowledge of expedition and untimely rescue, many accidents have happened. Therefore, people should make full preparation and enhance security consciousness before they begin their adventure.

热点演练 26

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对策方法类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述学校向家长收取“赞助费”的现象；第二段说明这种现象会带来的问题；第三段要求谈谈“我”对这一现象的看法。

Problems Resulting from the Sponsorship Fee

In modern society, the sponsorship fee is charged in quite a few high and elementary schools and kindergartens. Those children whose parents refuse to pay the fee may be deprived of their rights to enter the schools or kindergartens.

This phenomenon of charging the sponsorship fee brings some problems. On one hand, it might lead to people's dissatisfaction since those who cannot afford the fee will be given unfair treatment. On the other hand, some children cannot obtain equal chances to be educated, which will influence their healthy development.

From my point of view, the sponsorship fee shows the deficiency of our education system. The reasons behind it might be varied, so it will not be a short time before the problem is solved. But I believe, as long as the whole society pay common efforts, this unfairness must be eliminated.

热点演练 27

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇对比分析类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段指出对于是否应该帮助陌生人人们存在争议；第二段对比论述不同观点各自的理由；第三段谈谈自己对于是否应该帮助陌生人的看法和理由。

Should We Help Strangers?

Most of us will not hesitate to do whatever we can to help our family and friends, but is it a good idea to do so for strangers? With respect to this question, different people will give different answers. Some people think it immoral to stand by seeing others being helpless, while others argue that it is undeserving to help others with whom we don't have any relationship.

Those people who hold the first opinion believe that helping strangers is a kind of virtue, which is essential to the construction of a harmonious society. Besides, they think what you have done to strangers will one day be reciprocated to you. However, still others don't agree this. In their mind, the human nature is a mystery and you may put yourself on the edge of risk. Moreover, helping strangers may involve you in a legal dispute.

As far as I am concerned, it is worthwhile to try our best to help strangers, despite the potential troubles. That is because when we offer our help, we can also have the feelings of self-satisfaction. But it is worth noting that we should not help a tyrant to do evil.

热点演练 28

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述很多企业加班频繁的现象；第二段说明加班的副作用；第三段谈谈“我”对加班的看法和理由。

Freguent Overtime

Many employers take it for granted that their employees should work overtime to complete their tasks within the required time. In their mind, only those employees who voluntarily work overtime are good ones. However, working overtime has great negative effects.

First of all, working overtime squeezes leisure time out of people's life, which may make them feel life tedious. This kind of feeling will in turn discourage people's enthusiasm on work. Furthermore, working overtime is a main factor that leads to sudden death. It is recorded that every year there are 60 thousand people dying suddenly, most of who die from overtime work. In addition, working overtime makes it difficult for people to have more time with their families. This can alienate family members and is not good for the construction of stable family.

From my point of view, it is acceptable to work overtime occasionally when in need. However, if it becomes a frequent phenomenon, it not only endangers people's life, but also imposes a negative influence on the development of society. Therefore, we should try every means to eliminate this phenomenon.

热点演练 29

框架搭建：由图画和题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段结合图画描述年轻父母对电子产品的痴迷现象；第二段说明年轻父母痴迷电子产品对家庭教育带来的负面影响；第三段针对这一现象提出你的建议。

The Impact of Electronic Products on Family Education

The picture describes vividly a family scene where the parents don't permit their son to play the computer and ask him to focus on his study. However, both the father and the mother are sitting in front of a computer, with their fingers knocking the keyboard even when talking with their son. The picture reflects the phenomenon of today's young parents' being addicted to electronic products.

Young people tend to have weak resistance to electronic products, and young parents are no exception, which brings some problems to family education. Parents do not permit children to spend time on electronic products lest it would affect their study, but parents themselves couldn't resist the temptation. Facing parents with a tough attitude but not being models, children generates negative feelings and are unwilling to follow parents. This leads to the conflict between parents and children.

From my point of view, qualified parents should be children's models. When parents require children do something, they should do it firstly. Besides, parents should take a wiser way to educate children instead of ordering them in a simple and tough way. As to electronic products like a computer, I suggest parents give children some chance to be exposed to them in proper time rather than absolutely ban them.

热点演练 30

框架搭建：由题目要求可知，本文应为一篇说明现象类作文，其基本的段落安排如下：第一段描述大学生炒股这一普遍现象；第二段说明大学生炒股的主要原因；第三段分析大学生炒股可能会产生的问题。

Why Many Students Speculate in the Stock Market?

Stock has been considered a fast way to make money overnight since its appearance. Inspired by this wealth effect, more and more college students involve themselves in the stock market. They even speculate in stocks at the risk of losing their basic living expenses.

There are many reasons accounting for these students' enthusiasm about stocks. First of all, some students want to make money rapidly by the way of speculating, instead of by their own hard work. Besides, other students may hope to learn stock knowledge and prepare themselves for the future larger investment by the practice in universities.

As to me, I think dealing in stocks isn't suitable for college students. For one thing, students' study may be disturbed, because speculating in stocks may take up most of their energy. For another, students may not have enough psychology-bearing capacity to endure the shock of failure in stock market. What's more, since they have no financial independence themselves, their speculation may impose greater burden on their parents. Therefore, it is unwise for college students to speculate in stocks.